

FIND THE RIGHT PLAN

WITH
ANATOLY
KARPOV

BATSFORD CHESS



ANATOLY KARPOV AND
ANATOLY MATSUKEVICH

'FINDING THE RIGHT PLAN IS THE KEY TO SUCCESS'

ANATOLY KARPOV

The legendary Anatoly Karpov has won over 250 Grandmaster tournaments, many more than any other player in chess history. His games are characterized by the gradual and patient pushing of an opponent back to the wall, before finally finishing him off with a deadly blow. In this unique book, aimed at ordinary club players, Karpov gives a wealth of tips on how to incorporate this dramatic style of play into your own repertoire, through rigorous planning and evaluation of positions: looking at the fire-power of your forces, being aware of threats to your own king and how to safeguard it, and strategic control of open lines. Warmly and accessibly written, but with Karpov's usual air of authority, this book makes you feel as if you are spending an evening with the man himself, and will help you absorb a little bit of the Karpov magic.

ANATOLY KARPOV is a living legend; he dominated the chess world for over a decade as the world chess champion between 1975 and 1985. He is considered one of the very best positional players in the history of chess and is the author of several other chess titles.

ANATOLY MATSUKEVICH is a well-respected Russian chess writer, who is noted for the careful selection of instructive and entertaining games to illustrate specific chess themes.

BATSFORD has been a leading international chess publisher since the 1960s, producing books for all players, from beginners to Grandmasters. The books are divided into the following ability levels and categories:

Universal

Beginners

Club players

Competitive

Games collections

Biography

Openings

Strategy/tactics



BATSFORD

Find the Right Plan with Anatoly Karpov

Anatoly Karpov
and Anatoly Matsukevich

Translated by Sarah Hurst



BATSFORD

First published in the United Kingdom in 2008 by

Batsford
Old West London Magistrates Court
10 Southcombe Street
London
W14 0RA

An imprint of Anova Books Company Ltd

Copyright © B T Batsford 2008

Text copyright © Anatoly Karpov, Anatoly Matsukevich

Translation copyright © Sarah Hurst

The moral right of the authors has been asserted.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the copyright owner.

ISBN 9781906388683

A CIP catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Reproduction by Spectrum Colour Ltd, Ipswich

Printed and bound by Bell & Bain Ltd, Glasgow

This book can be ordered direct from the publisher at the website:
www.anovabooks.com

Or try your local bookshop

Contents

| | |
|--|-----|
| A correct plan is the route to success | 5 |
| Chapter One. With the sources | 7 |
| Chapter Two. Evaluating a position. Reference points | 21 |
| Chapter Three. The attractiveness of a concrete goal | 35 |
| Chapter Four. Reference point – Open lines | 51 |
| Breakthrough in the centre | 51 |
| Between the centre and the flank | 56 |
| Attack on the edge of the board | 59 |
| Dangerous diagonals | 65 |
| Chapter Five. Pawn structure. Weak and strong squares | 68 |
| Chapter Six. The centre and space | 97 |
| Closed centre | 98 |
| Mobile centre | 105 |
| Open centre | 108 |
| Static centre | 114 |
| Dynamic centre | 118 |

Contents

| | |
|---|------------|
| Chapter Seven. The most important law of chess | 122 |
| Seven bases for restriction | 123 |
| A lasso for the knight | 127 |
| 'Club-12' | |
| 'A golden dozen of studies' | 135 |
| The bishop hunt | 141 |
| 'Club-12' | 154 |
| 'A golden dozen of studies' | 158 |
| How difficult it is to be a rook | 160 |
| 'Club-12' | 174 |
| 'A golden dozen of studies' | 177 |
| The queen: thorns and roses | 179 |
| 'Club-12' | 196 |
| 'A golden dozen of studies' | 202 |
| The obstinate pawn | 204 |
| 'Club-12' | 206 |
| 'A golden dozen of studies' | 209 |
| Kings under arrest | 211 |
| 'Club-12' | 214 |
| 'A golden dozen of studies' | 217 |
| Zugzwang | 220 |
| A page of studies | 232 |
| Solutions | 234 |
| A lasso for the knight | 234 |
| The bishop hunt | 237 |
| How difficult it is to be a rook | 239 |
| The queen: thorns and roses | 242 |
| The obstinate pawn | 244 |
| Kings under arrest | 247 |

A correct plan is the route to success

In chess, as in life, a plan is a general concept that unifies a series of moves and actions directed towards achieving the main aim. As Emanuel Lasker justifiably remarked, it's better to play according to a flawed plan than with no plan at all.

At the dawn of the development of chess theory the first great masters believed in only one principle of battle – a direct attack on the king. Attacks on a castled position were the bread and butter of games in those days. Only with the arrival of Wilhelm Steinitz were clear laws established, according to which the creation of a plan was exclusively based on an objective evaluation of the position. A robust plan must take into consideration the opportunities for both sides. An optimistic overestimation of your own position leads to the creation of headlong attacking plans that are doomed to failure from the very outset.

How can you find your way in every situation, even those that

are completely unfamiliar, and how can you choose the correct order of actions to accomplish the main task? How can you learn to distinguish important features from secondary ones, and if you've managed to do this, what do you do next? Our book is about all of this.

How the book is organised.

The first chapter is history. The story of how human thought gradually progressed from one landmark to the next, becoming acquainted with the positions that arose on the chess board under the fingers of the great masters.

The second chapter is the key. In it we lay out seven basic principles that will enable you to evaluate any position. This chapter and the subsequent ones are generously illustrated with examples from practical play by top grandmasters.

Chapters three through six interpret these principles in detail. Careful study of them will help you to re-examine your usual plans and learn to find new

opportunities in positions that previously seemed dull and uninteresting.

The seventh and last chapter defines what, in our opinion, is the most important rule in chess – the rule of domination, the superiority of your pieces over your opponent's, and, as a natural consequence of that, the rule of restraining the enemy pieces.

A game that is played on a deeply strategic basis will bring

great pleasure to the chess player and will impress the experts far more than a win as a result of a beautiful combination that arose by accident.

We hope that for every reader, even the most demanding ones, this book will bring pleasure and help you to understand our ancient game more deeply.

Anatoly Karpov

Anatoly Matsukevich

Chapter One

With the sources

** The novice's reflex – a strategy for centuries * Wandering in the fog **
*Philidor – 100 years ahead of his time * Comet Morphy **
*The great Steinitz – link through the ages **

Half an hour is enough to explain the rules of chess to anyone, teach them to set up the pieces on the board, describe how those pieces move, and what check and checkmate are in chess. If you suggest to the novice that you play a game after this preparation, then nine times out of ten they'll immediately move their bishop out to c4, their queen to f3 and try to dispose of you with the help of Scholar's Mate.

However, a few days will pass, perhaps a week, then two or three months, and while associating with you, your pupil will start to understand that it isn't all that simple and that such primitive methods won't achieve their goals.

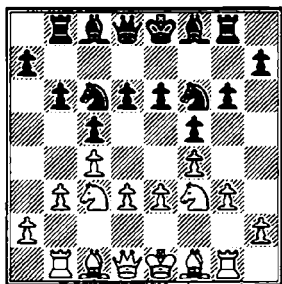
It took centuries for chess players all over the world to understand this truth at the dawn of the development of chess ...

By the 13th century, according to the historical literature, chess had entered the list of the seven knightly virtues along with riding, archery, fencing, hunting, swimming, hawking and writing poetry.

Chaturanga, chatrang, shatranj ...

A slow, hypnotic game. The rook was the strongest piece. The queen moved diagonally only to adjoining squares, and the bishop a little further, two squares away. There was no castling.

The opening was very uninteresting. The players manoeuvred for almost 20 moves in their own camps. To speed up the game the masters of shatranj developed opening positions – tabiyat with equal chances for the players. They then started from these.



'Double Mujannah' – the most popular tabiya

Chess reforms (at the end of the 15th century) led to the enlivening of the game and a flourishing of romantic tendencies. The games of that era were full of sharp sacrifices and attacks, subtle traps and bold ideas. Sacrificing and accepting sacrifices was considered a matter of chess honour.

The masters of the Italian school always saw only the enemy king clearly. It was as if the entire remainder of the board was in a fog for them. That's why the majority of tactical operations more often than not weren't positionally prepared, and impressive wins were the result of a weak defence.

Choosing open piece play as their weapon, the masters of the Italian school looked at each concrete position on the board only through the prism of forced variations. We can't claim

that positional methods were completely unknown to them, but these methods were used purely intuitively and accidentally.

The plans that the chess romantics created were chaotic, disjointed and almost never adhered to a unified logical theme. But the early Italian school accomplished its task in the history of chess.

The fantastic combinational inspiration of Leonardo, Domenico, Polerio, Salvio and especially Greco brought to light the dynamism of the chess pieces, demonstrated a huge variety of tactical ideas, and provided examples of the most effective mating attacks.

Gioachino Greco (1600-1634) was born in Calabria in southern Italy. At the age of 25 he produced his wonderful manuscript collections, which waited a long time for their moment (they were published in England only in 1656) and then were disseminated in almost all the European languages.

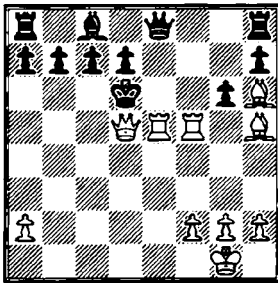
Greco's own contemporaries commented that the games he collected were "rich in subtly-placed traps and, despite the sparseness of the notes, include a multitude of easily-understood

sharp combinations". Instead of taking these contemporaries' word for it, let's have a look at the book by the famous Calabrian.

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♜c6 3 ♙c4 ♙c5
4 c3 ♖f6

In his notes Greco gives this continuation: 4 ... ♜e7 5 0-0 d6 6 d4 ♙b6 7 ♙g5 f6 8 ♙h4 g5 9 ♖xg5 fg 10 ♜h5+ ♜d7 11 ♙xg5 ♜g7 12 ♙e6+ ♜xe6 13 ♜e8+ ♖ge7 14 d5 mate.

5 d4 ed 6 cd ♙b4+ 7 ♖c3 ♖xe4 8 0-0 ♖xc3 9 bc ♙xc3 10 ♜b3 ♙xd4 11 ♙xf7+ ♜f8 12 ♙g5 ♙f6 13 ♜ae1 ♖e7 14 ♙h5 ♖g6 15 ♖e5 ♖xe5 16 ♜xe5 g6 17 ♙h6+ ♙g7 18 ♜f5+ ♜e7 19 ♜e1+ ♙e5 20 ♙1xe5+ ♜d6 21 ♜d5 mate.



A typical game, an extremely typical ending!

Another hundred years would be needed until people started playing chess differently. The father of the new movement in chess was the prominent French player François-André Danican

Philidor (1726-1795). Philidor occupies a special place in the history of chess not only as the strongest player in Europe in the 18th century, but primarily as the creator of a fundamentally new, scientific approach to chess, relying on the objective logic of a position.

Philidor used positional theory to oppose the Italian chess players who professed the cult of the combination. He expounded on his views in his work *Analysis of the Game of Chess* (first edition – London, 1749) – a book with an extremely happy fate. *Analysis* was translated into almost all the European languages and in 200 years it went through almost 100 editions. In the 18th century alone the book by the great French master was reprinted 42 times!

"My chief intention," Philidor wrote in the foreword, "is to recommend myself to the public, by a novelty no one has thought of, or perhaps understood well; I mean how to play the pawns. They are the very life of this game. They alone form the attack and the defence; on their good or bad situation depends the gain or loss of each party."

This was an unexpected and bold idea. Before this the pawns had been treated with overt

carelessness. They were blithely carried off to the sacrifice for the benefit of short-lived attacks. Philidor stood up in defence of the pawns, the most loyal adherents to the chess oath, capable only of advancing.

Philidor's strategy wasn't based on accidental attacks and tactical blows, born out of sudden inspiration or an opponent's weak play, but on a strict evaluation of stable indicators of the position (the pawn configuration), and also the security of the home front and bases for attacking. The French master readily shifted the battle to the queenside, not shying from exchanges or simplification for the sake of an advantageous endgame. Since games played according to this method rarely ended with a direct attack on the king, the goal of Philidor's idea came down to getting the pawns to reach promotion squares and exploit an advantage.

Of course, chess players were perfectly capable of turning pawn promotion squares into queens long before Philidor. Both Pietro Carrera (*The Game of Chess*, 1616) and Gioachino Greco (*Paris Notebook*, 1623) analysed the endgame, at least because without pawn promotion it was impossible to increase the material potential and consequently achieve victory.

But it was only Philidor who turned the entire game from the opening to the endgame into a single unified plan, making the movement of pieces and pawns rational, and subordinating tactics to strategy. In the opinion of Richard Réti, Philidor was "the greatest chess thinker who ever lived."

Here is one of the games cited by Philidor in *Analysis of the Game of Chess*. To the modern reader many of his rules probably look obvious and sometimes sound naïve, but for those times they were a revelation, they became important reference points in the evaluation of the most varied positions and they have retained their practical usefulness to this day.

So, over to Philidor.

1 e4 e5 2 ♖c4 ♗c5 3 c3 ♠f6 4 d4

This pawn is pushed two steps, for two reasons: the first, to hinder your adversary's King's Bishop from attacking your King's Bishop's Pawn (f2); the second, to bring the strength of your Pawns into the centre of the chess-board.

4 ... ed 5 cd

When you find your game in the present situation, viz. two Pawns in a front line, you must take care

not to push either of them, before your adversary proposes to change one for the other: which you will then avoid, by pushing forwards the attacked Pawn.

5 ... ♖b6

If, instead of being withdrawn, this Bishop gives check, you are to cover the check with the Bishop; and, in case he takes your Bishop, you must retake the Bishop with your Knight, who will then defend your King's Pawn.

6 ♖c3 0-0 7 ♖ge2

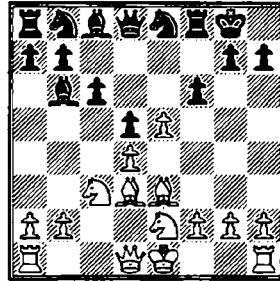
Great care must be taken not to play the Knight to his Bishop's third square (f3), before the Bishop's Pawn (f2) has been pushed two steps; because, otherwise, the Knight would prove an hindrance to the motion of the Pawn. N.B. The black, on that move, could take the white King's Pawn (e4); and afterwards push the Queen's Pawn two steps (d7-d5), which would break the centre of the white.

7 ... c6 8 ♖d3

The Bishop retires, to avoid being attacked by the adversary's Queen's Pawn (d7-d5), because you would then be forced to take his Pawn with yours, which would separate your Pawns.

8 ... d5 9 e5 ♖e8 10 ♖e3 f6

He plays this Pawn to give an opening to the Rook; and this cannot be hindered, either he or you take.



11 ♗d2

You should not take the Pawn which is offered you, because your King's Pawn would then lose its column; whereas, leaving yours to be taken, you supply its place by the Pawn of your Queen, and sustain it afterwards with your King's Bishop's Pawn: these two Pawns united will undoubtedly win the game.

11 ... fe 12 de ♖e6

He plays this Bishop, to enable him to push afterwards his Queen's Bishop's Pawn.

13 ♖f4 ♗e7 14 ♖xb6

It is always dangerous to let the adversary's King's Bishop stand on the direct line, which attacks your King's Bishop's Pawn; and, when your Queen's (d) Pawn cannot close that direction,

it is necessary to oppose him by your Queen's Bishop, and take his Bishop for every other piece, as soon as an occasion offers.

14 ... ab 15 0-0

You castle on that side, in order to sustain and strengthen your King's Bishop's (f) Pawn, which you will advance two steps (to f4) as soon as your King's Pawn (e5) is attacked.

15 ... ♖d7 16 ♜xe6 ♝xe6 17 f4
♞c7 18 ♞ae1 g6

He is forced to push this Pawn, to hinder you from playing your King's Bishop's (f) Pawn upon his Queen, which would give you two Pawns in a front line upon his ground.

19 h3

This Pawn is played to enable you to push your King's Knight's (g) Pawn two steps.

19 ... d4 20 ♜e4 h6

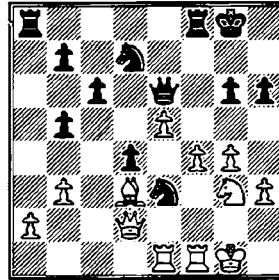
He plays this Pawn to hinder your Knight entering into his game, and forcing his Queen to remove, which would immediately make an open field for your Pawns.

21 b3 b5 22 g4 ♜d5 23 ♜g3

You play this Knight to enable yourself to push your King's

Bishop's Pawn next, which will be then supported by three pieces, the Rook, the Bishop, and the Knight.

23 ... ♜e3



He plays this Knight, in order to cut off the communication between your pieces, and break the strength of your Pawns; which he would undoubtedly do, by pushing his King's Knight's Pawn (g6-g5); but you prevent his design, by sacrificing your Rook.

24 ♞xe3 de 25 ♝xe3 ♞xa2 26 ♞e1

You play that Rook to support your King's Pawn, which would be left in the lurch, were you to push your King's Bishop's (f) Pawn.

26 ... ♝xb3 27 ♝e4 ♝e6 28 f5 gf
29 gf ♝d5

The Queen offers to be exchanged with the other Queen, in order to break the scheme of a check-mate, by the Bishop and the adversary's Queen.

30 ♖xd5 cd 31 ♙xb5 ♘b6 32 f6

You are to observe, that when your Bishop runs upon the white squares, you must put your Pawns upon the black ones; or, if your Bishop runs upon the black, you must have your Pawns upon the white; because, then, your Bishop may prevent the adversary's pieces getting between your Pawns. This rule is hardly ever to be dispensed with, in case you attack, and have some Pawns advanced; but in case of a defence, the rule must be reversed, and the Pawns set upon the Bishop's colour.

32 ... ♞b2 33 ♙d3 ♜f7 34 ♙f5

Here is an example of the above-mentioned note: if your Bishop was black, your adversary's King might get in between your two Pawns.

34 ... ♘c4 35 ♘h5 ♞g8+ 36 ♙g4
 ♘d2 37 e6+ ♜g6 38 f7 ♞a8
 39 ♘f4+ ♜g7 40 ♙h5

Black plays anywhere: the white pushes (e6) to Q.

If we acknowledge the great Steinitz as the founder of the modern positional game, then unquestionably it came into being in the work of Philidor. For a whole century – right up to Morphy – there was no one who

had a greater influence on the progress of chess thought than Philidor.

Paul Morphy appeared on the European chess scene in June 1858. His sensational performances continued for about 10 months in all, but in that time he was able to defeat virtually all the masters in the Old World.

Philidor and Morphy ... What could they have in common? At first glance only their place in chess history, where the names of these prominent players will always remain side-by-side, and also, most likely, the fact that their contemporaries couldn't understand the reason for their wins and left the solving of this mystery to later generations.

Reflecting on the phenomenon of Morphy, future world champion Alexander Alekhine wrote in 1913: "His strength ... consisted of deeply thought-out positional play, chiefly of an aggressive character."

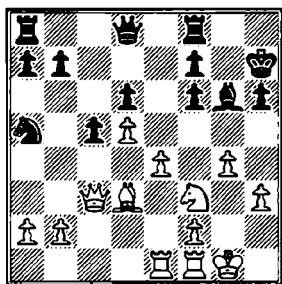
At a time when the majority of commentators were impressed by the superficial tricks that were abundant in Morphy's games, Alekhine precisely pointed out the fundamental feature in the creativity of the famous American, he was able to dig

down into the real reasons for his victories.

Positional play requires a deeply thought-out plan and precise placement of pieces and pawns. Moreover, in the implementation of his ideas Morphy had a very good sense of the time factor. The pawn chain – a formidable weapon, Philidor’s discovery – in Morphy’s games acquired a new quality: speed.

Morphy – Boden

London, 1858



21 $\text{d}4$ $\text{b}6$ 22 $\text{f}4$ $\text{g}7$

The key moment. Here 23 $\text{f}5$ suggests itself, excluding the bishop from play forever. (These methods will be studied in detail in the last chapter of the book) Yes, after 23 $\text{f}5$ White certainly must win, preparing an opening-up of play on the queenside. However, in that case the battle would drag on, and Morphy makes a different decision.

23 $\text{d}6$! $\text{f}g$ 24 $\text{e}5$

Black must perish due to the weakness of the $\text{g}6$ pawn. No help, for example, is 24 ... $\text{d}e$ 25 $\text{f}e$ $\text{d}5$ due to 26 $\text{ef}+$ $\text{c}f7$ 27 $\text{d}6$ $\text{d}6$ +. So Black tries to block the position.

24 ... $\text{d}e$ 25 $\text{d}6$! $\text{c}f7$ 26 $\text{e}6$ $\text{g}7$ 27 $\text{d}3$ $\text{f}5$ 28 gf $\text{f}6$ 29 fg $\text{xb}2$ 30 $\text{f}5$ $\text{f}6$ 31 $\text{e}7$

The last stroke. On 31 ... $\text{d}e$ decisive is 32 $\text{d}e7+$ $\text{d}e7$ 33 $\text{f}6$ +

31 ... $\text{c}4$ 32 $\text{g}3$ $\text{c}3$ 33 $\text{d}e$ $\text{d}4$ 34 $\text{f}2$ $\text{d}5$ 35 $\text{f}6$ +

Black resigned.

Morphy had a keen awareness of tempo. He considered the principle of fastest development an immutable rule of the game in the opening: every move in the game must bring in a new piece! Today this rule seems like a truism, but someone had to come up with it first. That person was Morphy.

Outstripping his opponent in the mobilisation of forces, the American master boldly sent pawns into the fray to open up the game and breach the enemy fortifications. For good reason the well-known wit Savielly Tartakower remarked ironically:

“Pawns! According to Morphy they’re the main instrument of victory.”

Hungarian grandmaster Géza Maróczy, the author of the best book about Morphy, had the same opinion:

“One of the characteristic features of his work is the timely advancing of pawns in preparation for an attack by the pieces.”

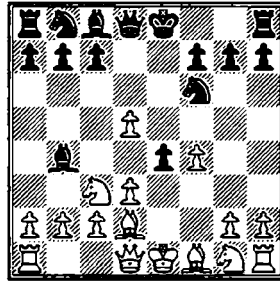
Generalising, we can say that Morphy wasn’t the best at combinations of his contemporaries, but he was the best at preparing combinations. The principle of speedy development was also known before Morphy, but only he brought it to a stable form. And before Morphy many people sacrificed pawns to open lines, but Morphy did this only if calculation or intuition promised him a material advantage (in other words, success!) in that part of the battle.

Falkbeer Counter Gambit

Schulten – Morphy

New York, 1857

1 e4 e5 2 f4 d5 3 ed e4 4 dxc3 dxf6
5 d3 dxb4 6 d2



6 ... e3!

By sacrificing a second pawn, Black opens a central file. This blow was subsequently included in all the opening books.

7 dxe3 0-0 8 d2 dxc3 9 bc
e8+ 10 e2 dg4 11 c4

A carefree life. It was time to think about freeing himself from the pin – 11 f2.

11 ... c6

Philidor also recommended this kind of undermining move.

12 dc dxc6 13 f1 xe2!
14 xe2 dd4 15 b1 xe2+
16 f2 dg4+ 17 g1

Now – mate in seven moves.

17 ... df3+ 18 gf wd4+ 19 g2
wf2+ 20 fh3 wf3+ 21 fh4 de3
22 g1 df5+ 23 g5 wh5 mate.

Dazzled by the combinations, Morphy’s contemporaries couldn’t see the essence of the American champion’s deep positional play.

But Morphy was viewed by later generations as a great strategist of open positions.

Mikhail Botvinnik: "To this day Morphy is the unsurpassed master of open games. We can see just how hugely significant he is from the fact that nothing substantially new in this field has been created since Morphy."

Four Knights Opening

Paulsen – Morphy

New York, 1857

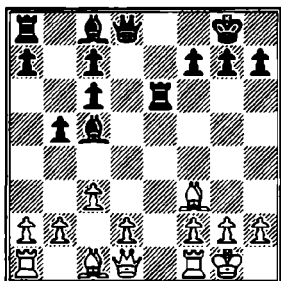
1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♘c3 ♘f6
4 ♗b5 ♗c5 5 0-0 0-0 6 ♘xe5 ♞e8
7 ♘xc6

Stronger is 7 ♘f3, but this became clear only after several decades had passed.

7 ... dc 8 ♗c4 b5

Losing, of course, is 8 ... ♘xe4 because of 9 ♘xe4 ♞xe4 10 ♗xf7+.

9 ♗e2 ♘xe4 10 ♘xe4 ♞xe4
11 ♗f3 ♞e6 12 c3

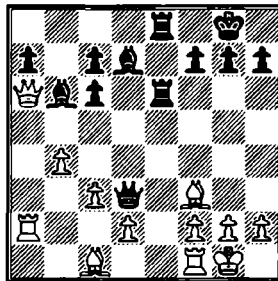


The pawn structure decides the fate of the game – Philidor’s fundamental idea. White has carelessly weakened his pawn chain (correct was 12 d3), and his opponent’s queen immediately strives to enter the resulting breach.

12 ... ♛d3!

It’s important not only to bring out his own pieces, but at the same time also to restrain the development of the enemy forces. White’s queenside is temporarily paralysed.

13 b4 ♗b6 14 a4 ba 15 ♛xa4
♗d7 16 ♞a2 ♞ae8 17 ♛a6



17 ... ♛xf3!!

For many people at the time this sacrifice seemed to be the main element of an impressive game. And only the most sagacious of his contemporaries and of later generations were able to evaluate the precise preparatory work that Morphy had done.

José Raúl Capablanca (referring to Morphy's matches with Anderssen and Harrwitz): "Contrary to the general belief, which is the result of ignorance, Morphy's main strength was not his combinative power but his positional play and his general style. The truth is that combinations can be made only when the position permits it. The majority of the games in these two matches were won by Morphy in direct and simple fashion and it is this simple and logical procedure which is the basis of true beauty in chess, from the point of view of the great masters."

18 g f ♖g6+ 19 ♜h1 ♙h3 20 ♜d1 ♙g2+ 21 ♜g1 ♙xf3+ 22 ♜f1 ♙g2+ 23 ♜g1

Later it was found that on the previous move 22 ... ♖g2 led to mate in four, but now the shortest route to mate was 23 ... ♙e4+ 24 ♜f1 ♙f5 25 ♜e2 ♙h3+ 26 ♜e1 ♖g1 mate.

23 ... ♙h3+ 24 ♜h1 ♙xf2 25 ♜f1 ♙xf1 26 ♜xf1 ♙a2 27 ♙a1 ♖h6 28 d4 ♙e3

White resigned. After 29 ♙xe3 he faced 29 ... ♜hxh2+ 30 ♜g1 ♜eg2 mate.

In his actions at the chess board, Morphy superbly planned his

play and foresaw the course of events a long way ahead. A different fate lay in store for his plans in life ...

When Morphy unexpectedly gave up chess, its leadership again transferred for a time to Anderssen, who won the second London International Tournament of 1862.

But at the same tournament sixth place was taken by the 26-year-old Wilhelm Steinitz, the future first world champion and leading chess thinker, with whom a new era in chess art began.

Four years later Steinitz defeated Anderssen 8:6 in a match and in practice became the strongest chess player in the world from that moment on. Here is one of the games from that uncompromising duel (there wasn't a single draw in it!) with the characteristic notes of Emanuel Lasker.

Ruy Lopez

Anderssen – Steinitz

London, 1866

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♙b5 ♘f6 4 d3 d6 5 ♙xc6+

White here without necessity abandons a small advantage: the

pinning of a Knight (c6) by a mobile Bishop (b5). By the exchange Black's QR (a8) and QB (c8) gain in mobility, presenting Black with another small advantage.

5 ... bc 6 h3

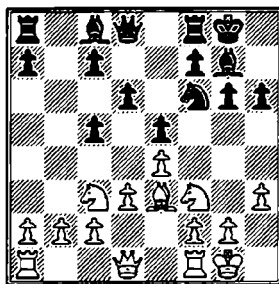
Loss of time incurred in order to prevent B-Kt5 (♗c8-g4). Anderssen seems to have considered the Knight stronger than the Bishop, a valuation for which no motive can be adduced. The Pawn move weakens the phalanx of the White King's side Pawns as will be explained shortly. Perhaps this game was the historical event which caused Steinitz to conceive his theory of the phalanx.

6 ... g6

Preparation for an assault by a mass of Pawns as taught by Philidor. For this purpose it is essential to maintain many obstructions in the centre. The Bishop which aids the centre from Kt2 (♗f8-g7) is there well placed (to put pressure on d4).

7 ♖c3 ♗g7 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♗g5 h6
10 ♗e3 c5

To prevent P-Q4 (d4) which would open the centre and give White a fighting chance.



11 ♖b1

White has certainly no advantage on any part of the board, yet he resolves upon an attack. That was the style of the time. Anderssen should have tried to anticipate Black's attack and to take up a firm position, to retire the somewhat exposed Knight B3 (f3) to KR2 (h2) and possibly to KB1 (f1) and to await developments.

11 ... ♗e8 12 b4 cb 13 ♖xb4 c5
14 ♗a4 ♗d7 15 ♗a3 f5

The phalanx marches.

16 ♖b1 ♗h8 17 ♖b7 a5 18 ♖b1
a4

There are no more targets in sight. White's troops are wholly disarranged.

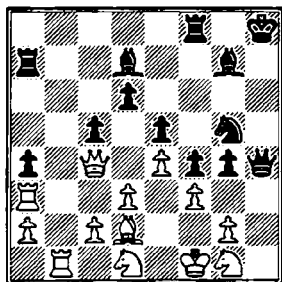
19 ♖d5 ♖c8 20 ♖b6 ♗a7

Now Black is opening the attack in earnest. He threatens P x P (21 ... fe) followed by B x P (♗d7xh3).

21 ♖h2 f4 22 ♙d2 g5 23 ♜c4
 ♜d8 24 ♚b1 ♘f6 25 ♖g1 ♘h7

The KtP (g5) having been protected (giving Black the opportunity to move the h pawn), the phalanx can set itself again into motion.

26 ♜f1 h5 27 ♘g1 g4 28 hg hg
 29 f3 ♜h4 30 ♘d1 ♘g5



The pieces post themselves behind the phalanx menacingly. Soon the lines will be opened, which will allow the major pieces to approach the White King.

31 ♙e1 ♜h2 32 d4

Desperation! The Rook on R3 (a3) shall be thrown into the fight even at the expense of an important Pawn. But it is too late. Black is not to be deterred by a trifle like this.

32 ... gf 33 gf ♘h3 34 ♙f2 ♘xg1
 35 dc ♜h3+ 36 ♜e1 ♘xf3+ 37 ♚xf3
 ♜xf3 and Black won easily.

Steinitz went down in chess history as the creator of a new doctrine of positional play, the essence of which was the following: any plan in a chess game must have a justification; it should be sought not in the personality or desires of the player who is able to find the correct move or direction of attack in some kind of flash of inspiration, but in the actual position on the board, in its evaluation.

Consequently, a plan must have its own positional premise, and any attack must be justified. That's why it can't be predicated on a mistake by the opponent. Thus, a plan must always be based on a concrete and realistic evaluation of the position. What are the reference points for such an evaluation, then?

When forces are materially equal, according to Steinitz the most important thing is to accumulate slight advantages. Steinitz determined the following indicators:

- 1) advantage in development and control of the centre, which enables the mobility of the pieces;
- 2) possession of supporting points and open lines;

3) material superiority (even if temporary), forcing your opponent to lose tempi to achieve equivalent compensation (in this time you must try to seize the initiative or obtain some kind of advantage in the position);

4) an advantageous pawn configuration;

5) the presence of weaknesses in your opponent's camp, creating a target for an attack.

Only at the point when the equality of forces has been upset can the side which has obtained a positional advantage take active

measures. And not only can, but must immediately look for energetic attacking routes. Otherwise the acquisition of an advantage will reverse itself and become an advantage for your opponent.

Emanuel Lasker: "[Steinitz] was a thinker worthy of a seat in the halls of a university. A player, as the world believed he was, he was not; his studious temperament made that impossible; and thus he was conquered by a player and in the end, little valued by the world, he died."

Chapter Two

Evaluating a position: reference points

** Seven timeless reference points * Chess accounting * A threat on every move * Deflect in order to save * Big consequences of small manoeuvres **

Steinitz found the method. He divided the position into its elements, compared them and made a diagnosis – he evaluated this position. Depending on that he also chose the further plan of play.

Generations of chess players working in the 20th century have improved on and corrected the first world champion's method and have gradually established seven basic principles, or reference points, according to which the study of any position should be undertaken.

- 1 Material relationship between the forces.
- 2 Presence of direct threats.
- 3 Position of the kings, their safety.
- 4 Possession of open lines.
- 5 Pawn structure, weak and strong squares.

6 The centre and space.

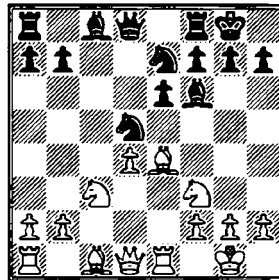
7 Development and the position of pieces.

As a result of comparing these elements the chess player makes a statistical evaluation of the position, selects a plan of action and begins searching for specific moves and calculating variations.

Stage one – comparing reference points.

Anand – Karpov

4th Match Game, Lausanne, 1998



Evaluating a position: reference points

Comparative analysis.

1 There is material equality on the board.

2 There are no dangerous threats.

3 The position of the kings doesn't yet have serious significance for the evaluation, as there are no opportunities for creating an attack on either of them. True, from the point of view of the initiative it's a little more feasible for White on the kingside.

4 There is only one open line in the position, the c-file. No one controls it yet. White has obtained pressure on the half-open e-file.

5 White has the isolated d4 pawn, which traditionally hands the point d5 to the opponent, giving away the e5 square and some initiative on the kingside.

6 Influence in the centre and possession of space are approximately the same.

7 The players' pieces are harmoniously placed. Their location doesn't yet give either of the players an advantage.

General conclusion

The position is roughly equal. White has a slight advantage, as he can start an attack on the kingside sooner.

12 h4!?

The purpose of this move becomes clear in the aggressive variation 12 ... ♔d7 13 ♚d3 h6 14 ♘g5!? g6 15 ♘f3 ♙g7 16 h5 g5 17 ♘xg5!! hg 18 ♙xg5 with an attack.

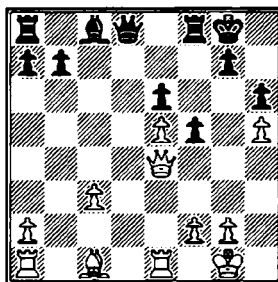
12 ... ♘f5!? 13 ♚d3

Counting on 13 ... g6 14 h5 with the initiative.

13 ... ♘xc3 14 bc h6 15 h5 ♘d6

By exchanging the dangerous bishop Black weakens his opponent's attack.

16 ♘e5 ♘xe4 17 ♚xe4 ♙xe5 18 de f5!



19 ♚e2?!

Overestimating his chances. It was time to play for equality - 19 ef ♚xf6 20 ♚d4.

19 ... ♖d7 20 ♜d1 ♗b5! 21 ♜f3
 ♜e8 22 ♗f4 ♜c8 23 ♜d4 ♜c4
 24 ♜ad1 ♜f7!?

With the idea of 25 ... ♜fc8.

25 ♜xc4 ♗xc4 26 a3 ♜c8

Black has exploited his chances in the best way possible. He has precise targets for his attack and complete justification to look to the future with optimism. White has no counterplay, and the pawn weaknesses at a3, c3 and h5 make their defence extremely unpleasant.

27 ♜d4 ♗h7 28 ♗d2 ♗d5 29 ♜h3
 b5 30 a4 ba 31 ♜xa4 ♜c4! 32 ♜xc4
 ♗xc4 33 ♜h4 ♗b5 34 c4 ♗e8 35 c5
 ♜d7 36 ♗c3 ♜d3 37 ♜d4 ♜xd4
 38 ♗xd4 a5

Despite the opposite-coloured bishops, the endgame is very difficult for White, and he couldn't hold it.

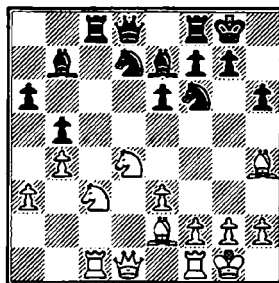
39 c6?!

He could have put up more stubborn resistance by 39 ♗c3 a4 40 ♗b4, although with 40 ... ♗xh5! 41 c6 ♗e2 42 c7 ♗a6 Black still has excellent chances for success.

39 ... ♗xc6 40 f3 f4! 41 ♗b2 ♗e8
 42 ♗c1 a4 43 ♗xf4 a3 44 ♗e3
 ♗xh5 45 ♗f2 ♗e8 46 ♗d4 ♗c6
 47 ♗c3 a2 48 g3 h5! 49 g4 h4!

White resigned.

Capablanca – Alekhine
 21st Match Game
 Buenos Aires, 1927



Comparative analysis.

1 There is material equality on the board.

2 There are no concrete threats.

3 The kings are well covered after castling short, their position doesn't yet influence the evaluation of the position.

4 The two open lines are under the players' mutual control.

5 The pawns are positioned symmetrically, which enables equal possession of the strong points. White has d4 and c5, and Black has d5 and c4.

6 In the centre the players' chances are about equal.

7 The major pieces are positioned symmetrically. White's knights are slightly more active, as are Black's bishops.

General conclusion.

The position gives the players equal opportunities in the battle. Any attempt at reinforcement is associated with occupying the important c5 and c4 squares. Black is already prepared for the manoeuvre ♞d7-b6-c4 , but White should also prepare equivalent counter-chances.

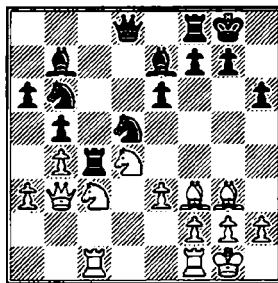
16 ♙g3

Reflects only one of the possible knight manoeuvres. Both routes would neutralise the counter-manoeuve ♞d4-b3-a5 .

16 ... ♞b6 17 ♚b3 ♞fd5

Everything is thrown into the battle for the c4 square. After the exchange 18 ♞xd5 ♙xd5 the bishop also gets the chance to attack the important square. Moreover, the positional threat 18 ... ♞xc3 19 ♙xc3 ♙d5 20 ♚b2 ♙xc3 21 ♚xc3 ♚a8 has been created and then 22 ... ♙c8 , seizing the long diagonal and the c-file.

18 ♙f3 ♙c4!



By comparison with the initial position much has changed in Black's favour. His pieces have occupied the strong points and an exchange on d5 would allow him to quickly occupy the c-file. Now, evidently, it made sense to return the bishop to e2.

19 ♞e4 ♚c8 20 ♙xc4

And this is already a concrete mistake. The struggle for the file would continue after 20 ♚b2 .

20 ... ♞xc4 21 ♙c1 ♚a8!

Threatening 22 ... ♞xb4 or 22 ... ♞dx3 .

22 ♞c3 ♙c8 23 ♞xd5 ♙xd5
24 ♙xd5 ♚xd5

Black's advantage reveals itself even more clearly. The threat is 25 ... e5, expanding his space.

25 a4 ♙f6 26 ♞f3 ♙b2!

For a concrete evaluation of this position the insecure position of the white king has important

significance – he has no ‘window’ h2-h3 like his opponent has. That’s why on 27 ♖b1 possible is 27 ... ♘a3!, and in the event of 27 ♖d1 follows 27 ... ba 28 ♗xa4 ♘b6 29 ♖xd5 ♘xa4 30 ♖d1 ♘c3 31 ♗e1 ♖c4, taking a pawn.

27 ♗e1 ♖d8 28 ab ab 29 h3 e5 30 ♖b1 e4 31 ♘d4 ♗xd4 32 ♖d1 ♘xe3 White resigned.

These examples demonstrate that even when top-class opponents play each other the more correct evaluation of the position is one of the deciding factors in success.

Stage two – choosing a plan.

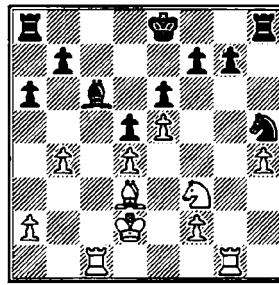
The choice of an attacking or defensive plan in any situation is determined by an objective evaluation of the position. And although these positions are different in terms of their specific features, for each of them there are defined rules about the methods of battle in better (1), worse (2) and equal (3) positions.

1 *In better positions* – with an advantage in development – you should try to prevent your opponent from completing the mobilization of his forces. To achieve this you should choose, as the opportunity arises, moves that present concrete threats, forcing

your opponent to waste time and energy deflecting them. Often such moves are associated with tactical blows that help you to open up the game and get to the enemy king more quickly.

Kramnik – Leko

14th Match Game for the World Championship, Brissago, 2004



Comparative analysis.

- 1 There is material equality on the board.
- 2 At first glance it appears that all of White’s threats have been successfully rendered harmless.
- 3 The white king is ideally placed, the black king should preferably be on e7 or move away to the flank after it has castled.
- 4 White is exerting pressure along the c- and g-files, but without additional efforts this doesn’t promise anything.

5 Neither side's pawn chain has obvious defects. However, White has an opportunity for a pawn attack on the queenside that isn't immediately obvious.

6 The centre is firmly blocked.

7 White's pieces are excellently placed, but the position of Black's pieces requires improvement.

General conclusion.

White has a clear advantage, but additional efforts are needed in order to exploit it

22 a4!

This pawn sacrifice throws Black's incomplete defensive line into confusion.

22 ... ♖d8

If he takes the pawn then the rook penetrates to the seventh rank. An approximate variation for the development of events is: 22 ... ♗xa4 23 ♖c7 ♗c6 24 ♘g5 0-0 25 ♕e3 with the threat of 26 ♗e2.

23 ♘g5 ♗e8 24 b5 ♘f4

More stubborn is 24 ... ab 25 ♗xb5!? b6. Then again, here too after 26 ♗xe8 ♖xe8 27 ♘xf7+ ♖d7 28 ♘d6 Black's position gives cause for alarm.

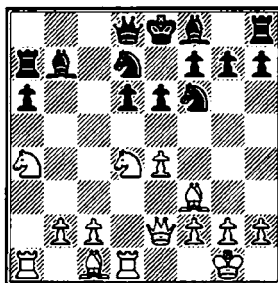
25 b6!

Black's position is now hopeless. In order to win White only has to organise a breach on the kingside and adds the b6 pawn to the reserve forces breaking through.

25 ... ♘xd3 26 ♗xd3 ♖c8
27 ♖xc8+ ♗xc8 28 ♖c1+ ♗c6
29 ♘xf7 ♖xh4 30 ♘d6+ ♖d8
31 ♖g1 ♖h3+ 32 ♕e2 ♖a3 33 ♖xg7
♖xa4 34 f4! ♖a2+ 35 ♖f3 ♖a3+
36 ♖g4 ♖d3 37 f5 ♖xd4+ 38 ♖g5
ef 39 ♖f6 ♖g4 40 ♖c7 ♖h4 41 ♘f7+

The king didn't have much longer to live: 41 ... ♕e8 42 ♖c8+ ♖d7 43 ♖d8 mate. Black resigned.

Smyslov – Kottnauer
Groningen, 1946



Opening mistakes have led to Black being two tempi behind in development: ♗e7 and 0-0. If he can manage to make these two moves without any particular concessions, the position will become much more equal. That's

why White starts a tempo battle, trying to create a concrete threat.

13 e5! ♖xe5 14 ♙xb7 ♜xb7
15 ♜xa6 ♜b8 16 ♖c6! ♖xc6
17 ♜xc6+ ♖d7 18 ♖c5!! dc

On 18 ... ♜a7 would have followed 19 ♖xd7 ♜xd7 20 ♜a8.

19 ♙f4! ♙d6

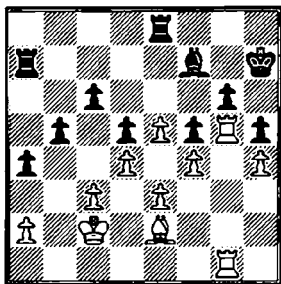
Or 19 ... ♜xf4 20 ♜c8+ ♖e7
21 ♜xb7 ♖f6 22 ♜xd7 with a win.

20 ♙xd6 ♜b6 21 ♜xd7+!

Black resigned. He never did manage to complete his development.

Averbakh – Hug

Palma de Majorca, 1972



Comparative analysis.

1 There is material equality on the board.

2 White has only one chance to play for a win – sacrificing the bishop on h5. But this sacrifice has to be prepared.

3 As yet the position of the kings doesn't have any particular significance for the evaluation of the battle.

4 White is exerting pressure along the half-open g-file, but without additional efforts this doesn't in itself promise anything.

5 Neither side's pawn chain has obvious defects. White has retained the possibility of infiltrating with his king to the opponent's camp via the dark squares on the queenside.

6 The centre is firmly blocked. Despite the passed pawn on e5, the players' have equal opportunities in the centre.

7 The placement of both players' pieces requires improvement. However, White only needs one king move to prepare the blow ♙xh5, while Black needs two moves to prevent it: ♜f8 and ♙e8.

General conclusion.

White has an indisputable advantage, but he can only exploit it if he acts boldly and strictly according to a plan.

51 ♖d2

Losing immediately was 51 ♖xh5? due to 51 ... gh 52 ♜xf5 ♙g6.

51 ... ♜e6 52 ♖xh5! gh 53 ♜xf5 ♙g6 54 ♜f8 ♖g7 55 ♜c8 ♜f7 56 ♖c1

Black has managed to stop the f4 pawn, and White's last reserve is coming into the game – his king.

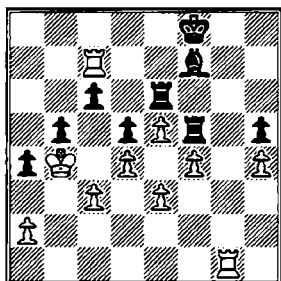
56 ... ♖h6 57 ♜g5

Suggesting that he should play 57 ... ♜f5?, against which 58 ♜h8+ ♖g7 59 ♜hxh5 wins.

57 ... ♖h7 58 ♖b2 ♜f5 59 ♜g1

An exchange of pieces is favourable to the defender. That's why White immediately pulls back.

59 ... ♜f7 60 ♜g5 ♜f5 61 ♜c7+ ♖g8 62 ♜g1 ♖f8 63 ♖a3 ♖f7 64 ♖b4



64 ... ♖e8

Apparently more stubborn is 64 ... ♖e8, but then 65 ♖c5 ♜f7 66 ♜xf7+ ♖xf7 67 f5 ♜h6 68 f6 ♜g6 69 ♜xg6 ♖xg6 70 ♖d6 ♖f7 71 a3!, and Black is in zugzwang.

65 ♖c5 ♖d8 66 ♜a7

Of course, 66 ♜xc6 was also winning.

66 ... ♙g6 67 a3 ♖c8 68 ♜g7 ♖e8 69 ♜h7 ♜f8 70 ♜gg7 ♖b8 71 ♜b7+ ♖a8 72 ♜a7+ ♖b8 73 ♜hb7+ ♖c8 74 ♜b6

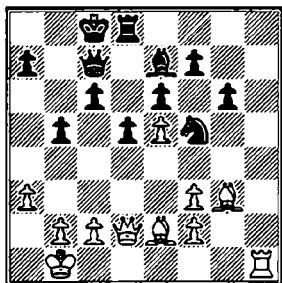
Threatening 75 ♜a8+ ♖c7 76 ♜ab8.

74 ... ♜g6 75 f5!? ♜xf5 76 ♜a8+ ♖c7 77 ♜ab8

Black resigned.

2 The main task of the game in *worse positions* is to slow down your opponent's attack. The best method for this is to simplify the position with the help of exchanges of the attacking pieces. Moreover, you should always remember that attack is the best form of defence. That's why, when you've beaten off the first wave of the attack, you should prepare a counter-attack at the first opportunity.

Tal – Botvinnik
3rd Match Game
Moscow, 1960



Black is a pawn up, for which White has virtually no compensation. The correct plan for Black is to develop the initiative in the centre and on the queenside with the help of ♖c5, then ♖b6 and a pawn advance.

White constructs a defensive plan based on kingside counter-play so as to distract his opponent from carrying out his plan.

27 ♖h7 ♖f8

Better is 27 ... ♖c5 and 28 ... ♖d7.

28 ♖f4 ♖d8 29 ♖d3 ♖h8
30 ♖xh8

Impossible, of course, is 30 ♖xf7 because of 30 ... ♖e8.

30 ... ♖xh8 31 ♖a5!

Black's queen has gone off to the kingside and so White urgently organises counterplay on the queenside. Now on 31 ... ♖b7

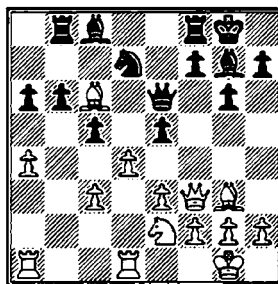
follows 32 ♖xb5! cb 33 ♖xb5+ ♖c7 34 ♖a5+ ♖c8 35 ♖xa7 with real counter-chances.

31 ... ♖h1+ 32 ♖a2 ♖xf3 33 ♖a6+ ♖b8 34 ♖xc6! ♖xf4 35 ♖xb5 ♖xe5 36 ♖e8+ ♖b7 37 ♖c6+

Half a point saved: White has secured a perpetual check.

Taimanov – Uhlmann
Belgrade, 1970

White has just played 19 ♖g3. Black can't avoid losing a pawn.



19 ... ♖d8 20 de ♖xe5 21 ♖d5 ♖e7 22 ♖xf7+ ♖xf7 23 ♖xf7+ ♖xf7 24 ♖xe5 ♖b7 25 ♖f4 ♖e8 26 f3

Intending to consolidate his advantage after 27 e4.

26 ... c4!

Looks like a desperate move. Now it seems that White can win this pawn with impunity, as after 27 ♖d4 bad is 27 ... b5 due to 28 ab ab, and White seizes the edge file.

Evaluating a position: reference points

However, in actual fact the move 26 ... c4 is a cunning attempt to distract White from the correct plan.

27 ♖d4 ♗c5 28 ♜xc4 ♙e6 29 ♜b4 a5 30 ♜b2 ♙d7 31 ♜ba2 ♗b3 32 ♖d1 ♗c5 33 ♖d4 ♗e6 34 ♜c4 g5

White has indeed won a second pawn, but some chaos has already been introduced into the harmony of his actions.

35 ♙d6 ♗c5 36 ♗d4

On 36 ♙xc5 Black would have succeeded in playing 36 ... ♙e6.

36 ... ♗xa4! 37 ♜cx4 ♙xa4 38 ♜xa4 ♜xe3 39 ♗b5 ♜e1+ 40 ♖f2 ♜b1 41 c4

Having created unstable conditions on the board, Black has provoked his opponent into playing inaccurately. 41 ♗d4 was much better.

41 ... ♜d7 42 ♙e5 ♜d2+ 43 ♖e3

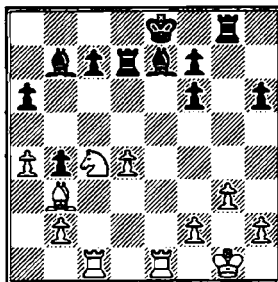
He might already get himself into trouble: 43 ♖g3 ♜g1 44 ♖g4 ♖g6, surrounding the king.

43 ... ♜xg2 44 ♖e4 ♜b4!

Having obtained a passed pawn, Black has secured counter-chances and achieved a draw on the 64th move.

Kramnik – Leko

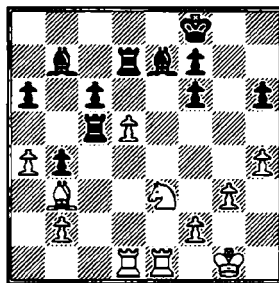
10th Match Game for the World Championship,
Brissago, 2004



Comparative analysis.

- 1 There is material equality on the board.
- 2 All of Black's pawns are broken up or separated and need to be defended.
- 3 Black's king is interfering with the usual coordination of his rooks.
- 4 The white rooks dominate the open e-file and the half-open c-file. In Black's position there is only the half-open g-file.
- 5 White has the isolated d4 pawn, but Black's pawns are in even more disarray.
- 6 Influence in the centre has no decisive significance here, as concrete threats have come into the situation.

7 White's pieces are quite harmoniously placed whereas Black's attempts at coordination have disrupted his own king.



General conclusion.

Black's position is alarming. He is now facing a difficult defence.

21 ... ♖g5!

Not allowing the knight to get to a5 and taking the opportunity to activate the rook.

22 ♘e3

Most likely, more concrete was 22 f4 ♖g5 23 ♙c2!, destroying Black's defence. For example, 23 ... ♜xd4 24 ♙f5 ♜d8 25 ♘a5 or 24 ... ♜7d5 25 ♙e4.

22 ... ♜f8 23 h4 ♜a5!?

Successfully dealing with the tasks of defence and development. The rook remains in the centre and doesn't let the knight get to a5.

24 d5

Possibly missing the last chance to activate the bishop – 24 ♙d1.

24 ... ♜c5 25 ♜cd1 c6!

Black's situation has noticeably improved. But he still has to play carefully and accurately.

26 ♘f5! cd 27 ♜d4 ♜dc7

An attempt to get the pawn out of trouble – 27 ... h5 allowed 28 g4!, and White would get a dangerous outside passed pawn.

28 ♜ed1 ♜c1 29 ♙xd5 ♜xd1+ 30 ♜xd1 ♙c8!

Obviously it didn't make sense to exchange on d5: White would be left with a powerful knight against Black's passive bishop.

31 ♙e4 ♙xf5 32 ♙xf5

If White could get his bishop to c4 and strengthen his b3 pawn, his rook would obtain the possibility of attacking the black pawns on both sides. But ...

32 ... b3! 33 ♜d3 ♜c4 34 ♙d7

34 ♜xb3 ♜xa4 35 ♜b8+ ♜g7 36 ♜b7 ♜f8 achieves nothing.

34 ... ♜b4

Evaluating a position: reference points

Black intends to transfer his bishop to d4 via c5.

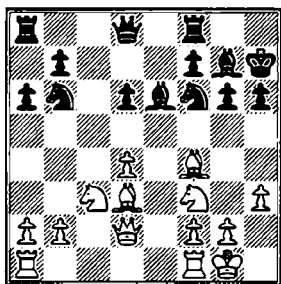
35 ♖c6

Draw agreed.

3 In equal positions the battle, as a rule, goes peacefully: unnecessary aggressive actions might only ruin everything. Usually a long period of manoeuvring starts, during which both sides strive to avoid weaknesses in their position and try to create them in their opponent's camp.

Alekhine – Feigin

Kemer, 1937



The players have come out of the opening with an equal position: neither of them has noticeable weaknesses. From here the plans of both sides are: with the help of manoeuvres to create at least some kind of weakness in the opponent's camp or to introduce disorder in the position of his pieces.

15 ♖fe1 ♗d7 16 ♖h2 ♜fd5
17 ♜e2 ♜fd8 18 ♜f4 ♖f5

Better was 18 ... ♜xf4 19 ♗xf4 ♜d5 and 20 ... b5, confidently holding on to equality.

19 ♜xd5 ♜xd5 20 ♖c4! ♖e6
21 a4 ♜ac8 22 ♖b3 ♗c7 23 a5

While Black's manoeuvres look somewhat unplanned, every one of White's moves was subordinate to a general idea. The result being that White has managed to constrain his opponent.

23 ... ♗d7 24 ♖a4 ♗e7 25 ♖g3
♜c7 26 ♖b3 ♗d7 27 ♖h4 ♜b8
28 ♖a4 ♗c8 29 ♜ac1

A new series of manoeuvres – and another small achievement: Black's major pieces have left the central files, and the rook on b8 is inconveniently situated. Then again, after 29 ... b5 the position still remains almost equal.

29 ... ♜c4 30 ♖g3 ♖f8 31 h4

Taking advantage of the deflection of the black pieces to the queenside, White intends to open up the position of the enemy king.

31 ... ♜f6 32 ♖b3 ♜xc1 33 ♜xc1
♗d7

The king is safe, but White's manoeuvres have led to a new

success: Black's pieces are even more restrained, White has the c-file, and the b6 square is weak.

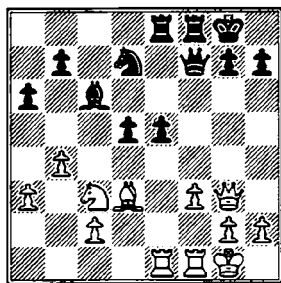
34 d5 ♟f5 35 ♖b4 ♟e4 36 ♗d4! ♗f5 37 ♘d2 ♟xd5 38 ♟xd5 ♘xd5 39 ♘e4 ♟g7

The threat was 40 ♗xd5.

40 ♘xd6 ♗e6 41 ♗d2 ♘f6 42 ♗c2 b6 43 ♗c7 ♘d7 44 ♘xf7 ♟f8 45 ♘d8 ♗f6 46 ♗d1

Black resigned. So, despite the absence of obvious mistakes on the part of his opponent, White's apparently peaceful manoeuvres gradually led to a significant advantage and in the end to a win.

Spassky – Petrosian
19th Match Game
Moscow, 1966



Black has completely equalised the game. The correct plan for him was to double the rooks on the e-file and advance the e5 pawn – with a long battle ahead. But

Petrosian decides to go into an endgame.

21 ... ♗f4 22 ♗xf4 ♟xf4 23 ♟f2

The aim of this initiated manoeuvre is to force Black to advance one of his central pawns and then to attack the one that remains behind.

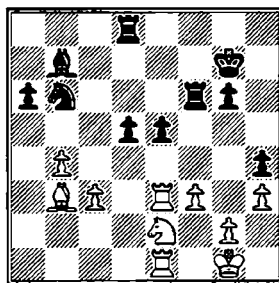
23 ... g6 24 ♗d2 ♘b6 25 ♗de2 ♘d7 26 ♘d1

Justifiably declining a repetition of moves.

26 ... b5 27 c3 ♟f7 28 ♟c2 ♟g7 29 ♟b3 h5 30 ♘e3 ♘b6 31 ♘c2 ♘d7

Most likely, more accurate was 31 ... ♟fe7. For example, 32 f4 e4 33 ♘d4 ♟d7, and it isn't easy for White to increase the pressure on the backward d5 pawn.

32 ♟e3 h4 33 h3 ♟f6 34 ♘d4 ♟b7 35 a4! ♗d8 36 ♘e2 ba 37 ♟xa4 ♘b6 38 ♟b3



38 ... e4

A forced advance. No help was
38 ... ♖e8 due to 39 ♖d4 ♖d7
40 ♗a4.

39 ♖d4 ♗h6 40 ♗d1 ♗c8

More stubborn nevertheless
was 40 ... ♗d7.

41 fe de 42 ♖e6!

Threatening 43 ♖c5, and
42 ... ♗d5 isn't good because of
43 ♗xd5 ♖xd5 44 ♗xe4.

42 ... ♖c4 43 ♗xc4 ♗xc4 44 ♖c5
♗f7 45 ♗a1 ♗g5 46 ♗a5! ♗f4
47 ♗f2 ♗d5 48 ♖b3!

Now if the bishop retreats to b7,
the opportunity arises for
49 ♖d4 and 50 ♖e2 mate. White's
advantage is growing and
growing, and he won on the 68th
move.

Chapter Three

The attractiveness of a concrete goal

** The unstable sum of the evaluation * Unusual chances to save yourself *
Attentiveness – until the last move * The king in your sights! **

In the previous chapter we described the seven basic reference points, according to which any position is evaluated. It goes without saying that in every specific case the sum of all the seven elements gives you an accurate evaluation. Comparing them isn't easy and in essence that ability is the most important indicator of the class of a chess player

In this and the following chapters we'll look at each of the seven evaluation elements in more detail, isolating them from the others. The first three are the most specific and therefore the simplest to discuss.

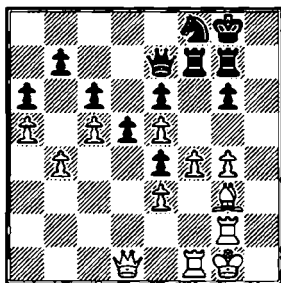
1 Material relationship

The evaluation of any position starts with a calculation of material strength. In an equal

situation the accent shifts to other reference points. If the material equality is destroyed, though, then **under stable equal conditions** the side that has obtained an advantage absolutely must win. To this end most often systematic exchanges take place, reducing the number of active pieces and making the material superiority even more noticeable. In the end the situation gradually reaches one of the theoretical endgames, which you should be able to handle rather confidently. As Philidor himself even stated, "the ability to play the end of the game is the ability to play."

The defending side usually strives to organise tactical complications, to take the battle into irrational positions in which the opponent's material superiority would lose its significance.

Alekhine – Euwe
The Hague, 1927



Black's situation is very complicated. He clearly has less space. Moreover, ♖d1-e1 and ♔g3-h4 are threatened. Trying to prevent this with the help of 36 ... ♖h7 is impossible: the vis-a-vis of the rook on g2 and the king on g8 is at work here, and White can play 37 f5! Euwe switches to looking for tactical chances.

36 ... ♖h8!

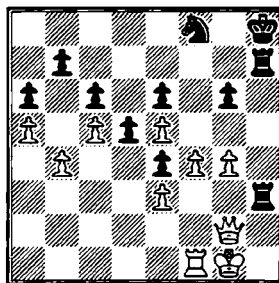
Here White should probably have played 37 ♖h2+ ♖h7 38 ♖xh7+ ♖xh7 39 ♖g2 followed by ♖h1 and ♗e1, securing an outlet for his bishop on h4. But why not exploit the chance that has cropped up?

37 ♔h4 ♗xh4!

Here's the cleverness! Black loses material but occupies the only open line, via which he will penetrate his opponent's camp.

38 ♖h2 ♖h7 39 ♖xh4 ♖xh4
40 ♗e2 ♖fh7 41 ♗g2 ♖h3

The situation has completely changed, and now White has to worry about defence. Active play also helps him.



42 f5!

Passive defence by 42 ♖e1 leads to gradual ruin: 42 ... ♖f3 43 ♗e2 ♖hh3 44 g5 ♖g7 45 ♖g2 ♖fg3+ 46 ♖f2 ♖f7 47 ♖f1 d4! 48 ed e3 49 ♗c4 ♖h2!

42 ... gf 43 gf ♖g7 44 fe

A counter-trick with a reciprocal queen sacrifice.

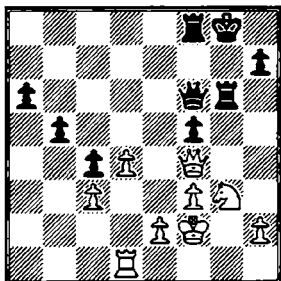
44 ... ♖xe6 45 ♖f6 ♖hg3 46 ♗xg3 ♖xg3+ 47 ♖h2 ♖xe3 48 ♖xe6 d4

He would have retained chances of a win with 48 ... ♖f3.

49 ♖g6!

And a draw agreement soon followed.

Capablanca – Nimzowitsch
Bad Kissingen, 1928



Black has more material and a formidable pawn phalanx on the queenside. The game won't be saved by simple means.

31 d5! ♖xc3

More circumspect was 31 ... ♗d6. For example, 32 ♗xd6 (or 32 ♗d4 ♗b6, and not 33 d6 due to 33 ... ♗xd6) 32 ... ♗xd6 33 e4 fe 34 ♗xe4 ♗h6 35 d6 ♗f7 with good chances for a win.

32 d6 ♗f6 33 d7 c3

A tactical struggle begins, in which Black's material advantage loses its decisive significance.

34 ♗xf5 c2 35 ♗d6 ♗d8

A roughly equal position was promised by the eye-catching variation 35 ... ♗xd6 36 ♗xd6 ♗xf4 37 d8♗+ ♗f8 38 ♗c7 ♗xd6 39 ♗xc2.

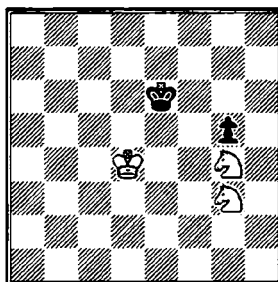
36 ♗e5! ♗xf5

No help either was 36 ... ♗g2+ 37 ♗xg2 ♗g5+ 38 ♗f2 c1♗ due to 39 ♗d5+ with perpetual check.

37 ♗e8+ ♗f8 38 ♗xg6+ hg 39 ♗xg6+ Draw.

True, other attempts to save a game also exist, associated mainly with the search for and use of unique situations on the chessboard. Here are some of them:

Mikhalchishin – Frois
Lisbon, 1986



Having just given away two pieces in a row for his opponent's pawns, Black took the game into a sharp ending.

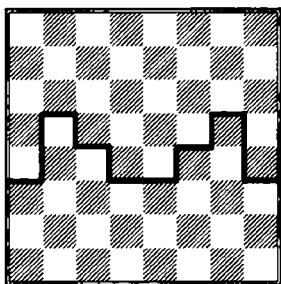
Win or draw?

Everyone knows that two knights can't mate the enemy king. But the remaining pawn considerably worsens the chances for the pursued king. With the

The attractiveness of a concrete goal

help of the free knight it can be chased into the corner, then the blockading knight can move up. While the released pawn hurries to the promotion square, a checkmate is possible.

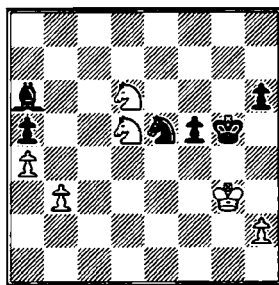
Mikhailchishin tried to do something along these lines up to the 97th move, but then, when the 50-move sequence was up, the game was declared drawn. Then again, White's attempts were almost certainly doomed. A group of drawn positions exists, described by the Troitsky line.



If Black's pawn is over the line, White can count on a win. If the pawn has come out of the danger zone (as in our case) – it's a draw.

This is also one of the unique, exceptional situations.

A curious case on this theme occurred in 1949 in the Moscow-Budapest match.



The game **Bronstein – Barcza** was adjourned in this position. White has a slight advantage. He can create quite a dangerous outside passed pawn.

On the day of the resumption there came:

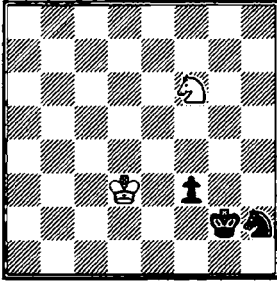
41 ... ♖c6 42 h4+ ♔g6 43 ♕f4
♙d3 44 ♗b7 ♙c2 45 ♖c5 ♗d4
46 b4 ab 47 ♗xb4 ♙xa4

The simplest route to a draw.

48 ♗xa4 ♕h5 49 ♗d3 ♕xh4
50 ♖c3 ♗e6+ 51 ♕xf5 ♗g7+
52 ♕g6 ♗e8 53 ♗e4 ♕g4 54 ♕xh6
♗f6 55 ♗xf6+, and White was left
with two useless knights.

After a 15-minute break the game **Benko – Bronstein** was all set for its final phase.

And here Bronstein was right to play for a win.



White is a pawn up and has more active pieces. Black is saved by the fact that it's his turn to move and he has a brilliant idea.

37 ... ♖d7+ 38 ♔e4 ♜c6+ 39 ♔f5

What next, then?

39 ... ♟g7+ 40 ♙xg7 ♜g6+!!

After any capture of the queen – it's stalemate!

Another straightforward example.

89 ♖e4 ♟g4 90 ♜d2 ♖e5 91 ♔e3 ♜c4+ 92 ♜d4 ♖a3 93 ♜d3 ♖b5 94 ♜d2 ♖d4 95 ♜d3 ♖e6 96 ♔e3 ♜c7 97 ♜d3 ♖d5 98 ♜c2 ♖e3+ 99 ♜c3 ♖f5 100 ♜d2 ♟g3

Having taken a long route, the black knight drives its opponent back, and the pawn moves forward.

101 ♖f6 f2 102 ♟g4 f1♖+

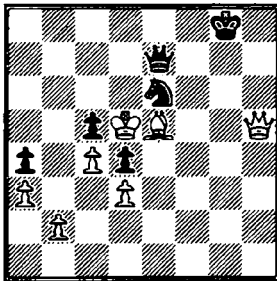
Promotion to a queen is useless – there is a check on e3.

103 ♜c3 ♜f3 104 ♖h2+ ♖xh2

Alas, a draw.

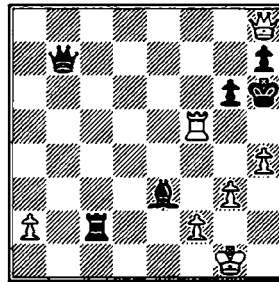
Pietzsch – Fuchs

Berlin, 1963



Smyslov – Vasyukov

Moscow, 1961



It seems that it's time for White to resign, but ...

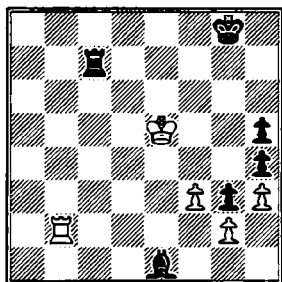
43 ♜f8+ ♜g7 44 ♚h5+!! gh 45 ♜d6+ ♜g6 46 ♜f8+

Draw by perpetual check.

And now for a very surprising case.

Polugaevsky – Zakharov
Leningrad, 1963

The usual method in these situations: the side that has the material advantage should strive for exchanges. And Black does so here.

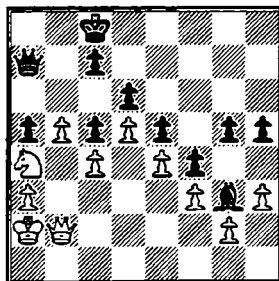


53 ... ♖c3+ 54 ♔d6 ♖xb2?
55 ♗xc7 ♕f7 56 ♔d6! ♕f6 57 ♔d5!
♕f5 58 ♔c4!

Draw agreed. The king makes it to the fortress on f1, out of which no army can entice him.

Black, of course, can take the square g1 under his control, prevent White's king from moving off f1, force him to move the f3 pawn forward and win it. So what? In the evaluation of the position these actions don't change anything – it's a draw!

A. Petrosian – Hazai
Hungary, 1971



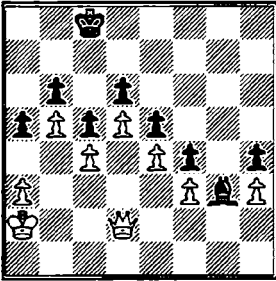
Black's position is very difficult. Both he and his opponent clearly see the plan: ♗d2, ♕b3, ♘b2, ♔a4, and if Black moves his king to b6 during this time, then the knight transfers to b3, and the pawn still perishes.

Black obviously doesn't have the power to prevent this, which is why the trappy move 37 ... ♗b6! is completely justified. White should have continued his considered restructuring, but here he made a mistake, probably of a psychological nature. It's easy to understand what Black is counting on. His idea is ingenious, you involuntarily want to refute it, and ...

38 ♘xb6?? cb 39 h4!?

Here's the disguised counter-chance. Now at first glance the queen easily breaks through the cordon via the h3 square.

39 ... gh 40 ♚d2 h3!! 41 gh h4!



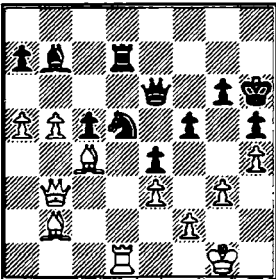
That was it. Draw. A unique fortress.

2 Presence of direct threats

“What is threatening me? What else can my opponent do? What else can I do?” – these questions should be asked constantly during an evaluation of any position – better, equal or worse. You can’t play chess successfully without constant, concentrated attention during the game.

Euwe – Keres

The Netherlands, 1938



Black’s position is critical: the white queen is also about to occupy the a1-h8 diagonal. Tactics are called in to the rescue.

35 ... f4! 36 ef

Carelessness. Transition to the endgame with opposite-coloured bishops led to victory: 36 ♖xd5! ♗xd5 37 ♗xd5 ♚xd5 (otherwise 38 ♚c3!) 38 ♚xd5 ♖xd5 39 gf. Then White carries out the plan ♕g1-g2-g3, f4-f5!, ♕g3-f4 with a win.

36 ... e3!

Opening a path for the bishop. If now 37 fe, then 37 ... ♗h3 38 e4 ♘xf4! 39 ♖g7+ ♗xg7 40 gf ♗g4+ with a decisive counterattack. Now it’s White who has to seek salvation.

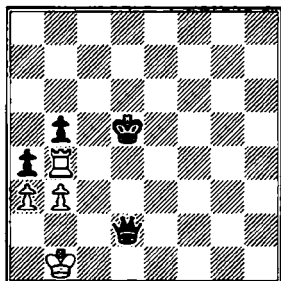
37 ♖xd5! e2! 38 ♗e1 ♗xd5

But not 38 ... ♖xd5 39 ♗c3 ♗e4 due to 40 ♗h8+ ♗h7 41 ♖g7 mate.

39 ♗xd5 ♗xd5 40 f3 ♗d1

Draw agreed. On 41 ♕f2 follows 41 ... ♖xf3!

Yates – Tartakower
Hamburg, 1927



Thinking that the pawn ending was easily won, Tartakower played 56 ... ♖xb4?

Then followed:

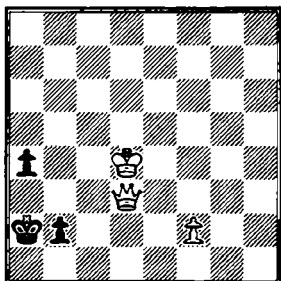
57 ab ab 58 ♖b2 ♗c4 59 ♗a3 b2

Now after 60 ♖xb2 ♗xb4 the win is simple.

60 ♗a2!!

Brilliant! In the event of 60 ... ♗xb4 61 ♗xb2 it's Black who has to move, and 60 ... ♗c3 61 ♗b1 ♗b3 leads to stalemate – draw.

Marshall – Yates
Carlsbad, 1929



White would easily have won by continuing 58 ♖c2! a3 59 ♗c3 ♗a1 60 ♖b3, but ...

58 ♗c4? b1♖ 59 ♖xb1+ ♗xb1 60 ♗b4

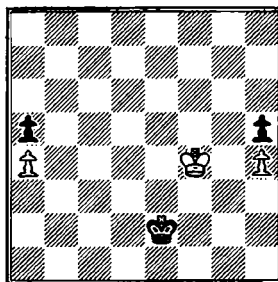
Surely everything here is clear?

60 ... ♗b2!

No, not everything. A draw is evident.

Of course it's very painful to suddenly let the win slip from your hands when everything has already been done. But it's much less pleasant when an incorrect evaluation of a position leads to even more moral damage.

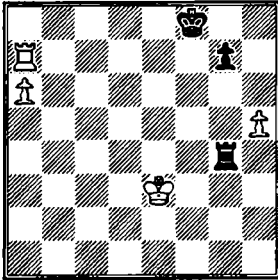
Colle – Grünfeld
Carlsbad, 1929



Here Grünfeld resigned, although by continuing 77 ... ♗d3 78 ♗g5 ♗e4 79 ♖xh5 ♗f5 80 ♗h6 ♗f6 81 h5 ♗f7 82 ♗g5 ♗g7 83 ♗f5 ♗h6 84 ♗e5 ♖xh5 85 ♗d5 ♗g6

86 ♖c5 ♜f7 87 ♜b5 ♜e8 88 ♜xa5 ♜d8 89 ♜b6 ♜c8, Black would have succeeded in saving the half-point.

Polugaevsky – Parma
USSR-Yugoslavia match, 1967



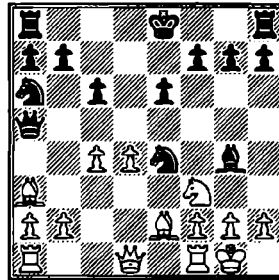
Examining the natural variation 60 ... ♖a4 61 ♖a8+ ♜f7 62 a7 ♖a1 63 h6, Parma decided that nothing could save him, and resigned the game. Little did he know that he'd miscalculated by just half a move: 63 ... ♜g6! would save the game.

3 Position of the kings

The position of the king is one of the most important, and in many cases *the* most important reference point of the evaluation. Obviously a successful attack on the king can wipe out many of the pluses in a position, leading to the biggest material losses of all kinds.

An attack on the king is really a specialised topic. So we're restricting ourselves to illustrating the basic types of such attacks: with uncastled king, and with castled kings on opposite sides and on the same side.

Chigorin – Znosko-Borovsky
Nuremberg, 1906



The overall evaluation of the position is clearly in White's favour. The position of the kings is the deciding factor in this conclusion: the white king is much safer than the black king.

Black was undoubtedly deliberating over the move 13 ... 0-0-0 more than any other. If castling long was possible, the worst of it would be behind him. His rooks would be able to cooperate and the d4 pawn could become a target for an attack.

However, after 13 ... 0-0-0 White could play 14 ♗e5! ♙xe2 15 ♗xe2,

The attractiveness of a concrete goal

and material losses for Black are unavoidable (15 ... ♖xd4 16 ♘f3). So Black first removes the knight.

13 ... ♗xf3 14 ♗xf3 ♘d2

Looks like a successful sortie – after 15 ♖e1 ♘xc4 Black will feel great – but here again the poor position of the black king comes to the fore.

15 d5!

A typical method. When the enemy king is kept in the centre – you have to open lines!

15 ... cd

On 15 ... ♘xf1 would have followed 16 dc ♘d2 17 cb ♘xf3+ 18 ♗xf3 ♖d8 19 ♗c6+ ♖d7 20 ♗xa6 ♗xa6 21 b8♗+ ♖d8 22 ♗g3, and White's superiority is unquestionable.

16 cd 0-0-0

In this situation there's no peace on the queenside either. On 16 ... ♘xf1 Chigorin suggested this variation: 17 de ♘d2 18 ♗xb7 ♖b8 19 ♗c6+ ♗d8 20 ♖c1! fe 21 ♗g4 with the threats of 22 ♗xg7 and 22 ♗d4+.

17 ♖e1 ♘c7 18 de fe 19 ♗g4 ♖he8

By repelling the threats to the king, Black was able to castle and connect his rooks. But he paid a

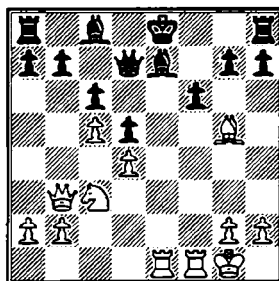
high price for this: the d2 knight got cut off from the main forces.

20 ♗e2! ♗b8 21 ♖ac1 ♖d5 22 ♗e3 g5 23 ♗c5! e5 24 a3 ♘b5 25 ♗b4 ♗d8 26 ♗xd2

Black resigned. If 26 ... ♖xd2, then 27 ♖c8+.

Steiner – Colle

Budapest, 1926



Black has just played 20 ... f6 and hopes that after the bishop retreats he can castle and gradually finish mobilising his forces.

White is a pawn down and he must act decisively.

21 ♖xf6! gf 22 ♗xf6 0-0

The king finally slips away, but now a white rook appears on the seventh rank.

23 ♖xe7 ♖xf6 24 ♖xd7 ♗xd7 25 ♘e4!

On 25 ♖xb7 Black would reply 25 ... ♖af8, and after 26 h3 ♖6f7 a tough battle would ensue.

25 ... ♖f7

The correct decision would have been 25 ... ♖g6.

26 ♖g3+ ♖g7 27 ♖f6+ ♖h8

No more comforting is 27 ... ♖f7 28 ♖f4. The bad position of the king has become the decisive factor in the evaluation.

28 ♖e5! ♖h3 29 ♖h5

Black resigned.

The kings were also the main characters in the following fairytale game.

Sicilian Defence

Kopylov – Korolev

By correspondence, 1981-82

1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 ♖f6 3 e5 ♖d5 4 ♖c3 e6 5 ♖e4 ♖c6 6 c4 ♖db4?!

A deviation from the usual continuations. It soon leads to surprising events.

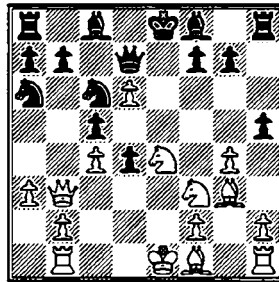
7 a3 ♖a5 8 ♖b3

If immediately 8 ♖b1, then 8 ... ♖a2! Now, though, Black has to act energetically.

8 ... d5 9 ed e5 10 ♖b1 ♖a6 11 g4!?

White's task is to hold onto the outpost at d6 at all costs, as it's essential to prevent 11 ... f5.

11 ... ♖d8 12 d4 ed 13 ♖f4 ♖d7 14 ♖g3 h5!



On 15 g5 Black intends to play 15 ... h4, and 15 gh allows 15 ... f5.

15 ♖d2! hg 16 ♖e1 ♖d8 17 ♖e5 ♖xe5 18 ♖xe5 ♖c6 19 ♖g5 ♖h5 20 ♖xg7!

After 20 ♖xf7+ ♖e8 White's attack would have entered a cul-de-sac. Now, though, let's say, on 20 ... ♖xh1 follows 21 ♖xf7+ ♖d7 22 ♖xf8 with the irrefutable threat of 23 ♖e7+.

20 ... ♖xd6 21 ♖xf7+ ♖c7 22 ♖xd6 ♖xd6 23 ♖g2 ♖g5 24 ♖h8 ♖h6

White's initiative seems to have subsided. Moreover, the bishop is endangered. But when kings

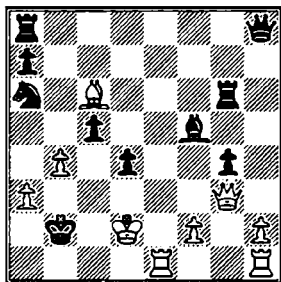
The attractiveness of a concrete goal

are under attack you can't evaluate the situation from general considerations. Concrete calculation decides everything.

25 ♖g3+ ♜b6 26 ♔d1! ♜xh8
27 ♜d6+ ♜a5 28 ♔d2!

White's king is jogging on the spot, but this isn't a sign of indecisiveness, it's the wisdom of a commander. The threat is 29 b4+ ♜a4 30 ♙c6+! bc 31 ♜xc6+ ♜b3 32 ♜b5.

28 ... ♙f5 29 ♙xb7 ♜g6 30 b4+
♜a4 31 ♙c6+ ♜b3 32 ♜g3+ ♜b2



The duel of the kings enters its final phase.

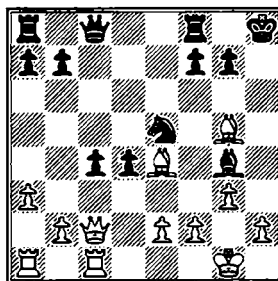
33 ♜b1+! ♙xb1 34 ♜xb1+ ♜xb1
35 ♜b3+ ♜a1 36 ♔c1!

The white king has the last word. After 36 ... ♜h6+ 37 ♔c2 d3+ 38 ♜xd3 Black has no defence, and he resigned.

With same-side castling one of the main methods of getting to the enemy king is to exploit a weakness in its pawn cover.

Stahlberg – Keres

Stockholm, 1967



The important f3 square is defended only by the e2 pawn. If it is taken, Black's attack gains a new impetus.

20 ... d3! 21 ed

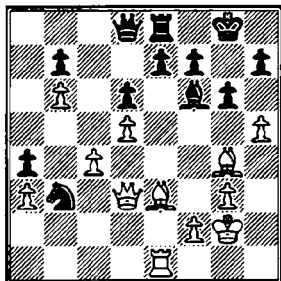
For now nothing looks particularly intimidating. In the event of 21 ... ♔f3+ 22 ♙xf3 ♙xf3 he can calmly play 23 ♜xc4, intending after 23 ... ♜h3 the reply 24 ♜h4+, but ...

21 ... ♙f3! 22 ♙xf3 ♔xf3+
23 ♔g2 ♔xg5 24 f4 ♜c6+ 25 ♔f2
♜f3+ 26 ♔e1 ♜fe8+

White resigned.

Uhlmann – Boensch

Halle, 1976



The approach of White's rook's pawn has prepared the opening of an outside file. First the final preparations are made.

38 ♞h1 ♜c5 39 ♜b1 !

The queen intends to go off to the kingside, but for now retreats in order to keep the central squares under control.

39 ... ♞f8 40 hg

We note that the advanced enemy g-pawn, defending the king, has helped to open this file.

40 ... ♜g1 ♞g7 42 ♜h2 f5

In the event of 42 ... ♞e8 the battle would end with 43 ♜h7+ ♜f8 44 ♞h6 .

43 ♜h7+ ♜f7 44 ♞xf5

The final stage. White's bishop sacrifice completely clears the

space around the black king.

44 ... gf 45 ♜xf5+ ♞g8 46 ♜h7+ ♜f7 47 ♞h5! e6

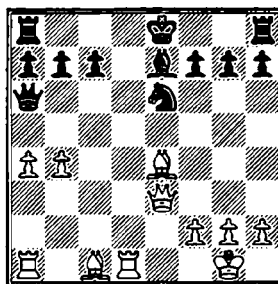
Or 47 ... ♞d7 48 ♞h6 ♞g8 49 ♞g4 ♜f8 50 ♜g6 mate.

48 ♞g5 ♞g8 49 ♜g6+ ♞e7 50 ♞xc5

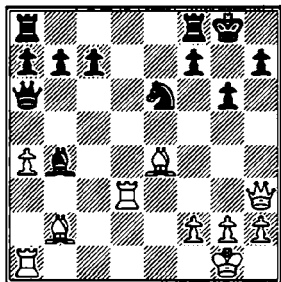
Black resigned.

Kasparov – Karpov

6th Match Game of the World
Championship
London, 1986



White has just played 17 b4 and although Black's king hasn't castled yet and there are no pawn weaknesses on Black's kingside, this example is nevertheless an illustration of the topic we are studying. The fact of the matter is that on 17 ... ♞xb4 possible is the variation 18 ♞b2 and if 18 ... 0-0, then 19 ♜h3 g6 (here it is – the important weakness in the king's cover!) 20 ♞d3 !



Threatening 21 ♖xh7+! ♕xh7
22 ♜h3+ ♕g8 23 ♜h8 mate, and on
20 ... h5 possible is 21 ♖xh5!

17 ... 0-0 18 ♖h3 g6 19 ♗b2

And now 19 ... ♗xb4 is dangerous because of 20 ♜d3 with the same idea.

19 ... ♖c4! 20 ♜d7 ♜ae8

A new wave of attack would arise after 20 ... ♖xe4 21 ♖c3! Now 21 ... f6 22 ♜xe7 would lead to a clear advantage for White, and upon 21 ... ♘d4 22 ♜xd4 ♖e6 23 ♜e1 ♖f6 winning is 24 ♜xe7! ♖xe7 25 ♜e4.

21 ♗d5 ♖xb4 22 ♗c3 ♘f4!

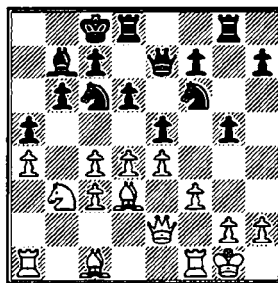
Provokes a crisis in the game. The attack stops, as White has to accept a slightly worse endgame (23 ♖f3? ♖xc3), which then again is quite safe.

23 ♗xb4 ♘hx3+ 24 gh ♗xb4
25 ♜xc7 b6 26 ♜xa7 ♕g7 27 ♜d7
♜d8 28 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 29 ♜d1 ♜d6

30 ♜d3 h5, and the game ended uneventfully in a draw.

If the kings castle on opposite sides, the number of attacking methods increases significantly. Not only the pieces, but also the pawns directed towards the position of the enemy king, play an active role in the onslaught. A pawn storm is considered a typical plan of attack with opposite-side castling. The task consists of destroying the pawns that are covering the black king and opening lines for a decisive attack by the pieces. Lines can be opened much more easily when there are advanced pawns in front of the opponent's king.

Gligoric - Larsen
Manila, 1973



Both sides are prepared for a pawn assault, but White starts his sooner.

15 c5! ed 16 cb dc 17 ♖e3

Moments before, this bishop didn't have any prospects, but now that the lines are open, it has become active and dangerous.

17 ... g4

An attempt to at least somehow distract his opponent from the action on the queenside.

18 bc ♜xc7 19 ♞ac1

The enemy king's pawn cover has been destroyed, and the pieces come into the battle.

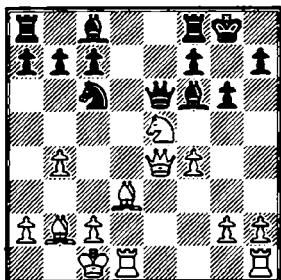
19 ... d5 20 ♞xc3 gf 21 ♜xf3 d4
22 ♜f5+ ♞d7 23 ♖f4 ♜b6
24 ♞xc6+!

The final stage of the attack.

24 ... ♖xc6 25 ♘c5 ♘g4 26 ♞b1
♜a7 27 ♘xd7 ♖xd7 28 ♜c5+!

Black resigned.

Keres – Petrov
Moscow, 1940



White must hurry. His task is complicated by the fact that in the prior battle he brought his pawn out to b4, which offers his opponent good counter-chances.

15 h4

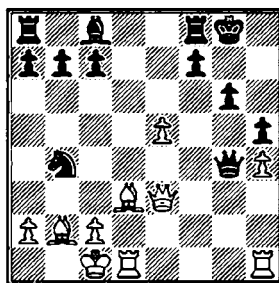
Threatening h4-h5xg6, opening a dangerous file.

15 ... h5 16 g4!

Now on 16 ... hg follows 17 h5. That's why, in order to destroy the dangerous pawn, he has to exchange off the bishop that is important to the defence.

16 ... ♖xe5 17 fe ♜xg4 18 ♜e3
♘xb4

Taking the pawn with the queen is bad because of 19 e6 ♖xe6 20 ♜h6, and upon the attempt 18 ... ♖e6 unpleasant is 19 ♞dg1 ♜xb4 20 ♜h6.



19 e6!

In this position pawns aren't enough. It's important to clear a path for the pieces.

The attractiveness of a concrete goal

The main variation that Keres had in mind was 19 ... ♖xd3+ 20 cd fe 21 ♜df1! ♜f5 22 ♜hg1 ♜f7 23 ♜xg4 ♜xf1+ 24 ♜c2 hg 25 ♜e5! with a win.

19 ... ♖d5 20 ef+ ♜xf7

In the event of 20 ... ♜h7 possible is 21 ♜xg6+! ♜xg6 22 ♜xd5. For example, 22 ... ♜g4 23 ♜g5 ♜xf7 24 ♜g7+, and White should win.

21 ♜c4! c6 22 ♜xd5 ♜xc4

Or 22 ... cd 23 ♜e8+ ♜f8 24 ♜xd5+.

23 ♜e8+

Black resigned.

Different kinds of attacks on the king can be found in many of the examples used in this book.

In the next chapters we examine in detail four more indicators that are used to evaluate a position.

Chapter Four

Reference point – Open lines

* Breakthrough in the centre * Between the centre and the flank *
 Attack on the edge of the board * Dangerous diagonals *

Control over important lines – files, ranks and diagonals – has considerable influence on the evaluation of a position and when all else is equal usually leads to a better game.

Let's examine some typical strategic plans based on fighting for different types of open lines.

Breakthrough in the centre

First – an example from the classics.

French Defence

Steinitz – Showalter

Vienna, 1898

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 c5 4 dc ♖c6
 5 ♟f3 ♙xc5 6 ♙d3 ♟ge7 7 0-0 ♟g6
 8 ♚e1 ♙d7 9 c3 a5 10 a4 ♜b8
 11 ♜e2 ♙b6 12 ♟a3 0-0 13 ♟b5
 14 ♟a7 14 ♙e3 ♙xe3 15 ♜xe3 ♟xb5
 16 ab b6 17 ♟d4 f5 18 f4 ♟e7
 19 ♜d2 ♜d8 20 ♚e3 g6 21 ♚h3 ♚f7
 22 ♟h1 ♟g7 23 ♟f3 h6 24 ♚g1 h5

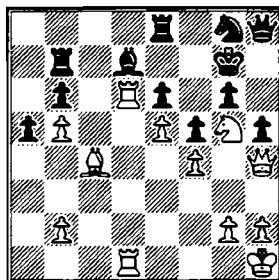
25 ♜f2 ♜h8 26 ♟g5 ♚ff8 27 ♜h4
 ♟g8

Black has managed to defuse the attack on the flank. However, as a result his pieces are stuck in the corner of the board, and the connection between the two sides has been broken. At the same time White has preserved the opportunity to quickly throw his major pieces at any part of the board via the free ranks.

28 c4!

Forcing an opening of lines.

28 ... dc 29 ♙xc4 ♚fe8 30 ♚d3
 ♚a7 31 ♚d6 ♚b7 32 ♚g1



In five moves everything has completely changed. White is the boss in the centre and his opponent can't avoid defeat.

32 ... ♙c8 33 ♜xe6+ ♙xe6
34 ♙xe6 ♜h7 35 ♞d7+ ♞e7
36 ♞xe7+ ♜xe7 37 ♜f6+ ♝h6
38 ♞d8 ♞c7 39 h3

Black resigned.

And now examples from a more recent time.

Nimzo-Indian Defence

Furman – Lipnitsky

Kiev, 1951

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♘c3 ♙b4 4 e3
0-0 5 ♙d3 d5 6 ♘f3 dc 7 ♙xc4 ♘c6
8 0-0 ♙d6 9 ♙b5 e5!

By attacking the knight, White seemed to have prevented this move. But the break in the centre takes place nevertheless: Black sacrifices a pawn for the initiative.

10 ♙xc6 ed 11 ♙xb7 ♙xb7
12 ♘xd4 ♜d7

Both sides' plans have been determined. Having given up a pawn and aimed his pieces in a definite way, Black has taken precise responsibilities upon himself: to attack the kingside. White's task is to use the e-pawn to neutralise his opponent and try, whenever possible, to exchange off at least one of the dangerous bishops.

13 ♘bd5 ♜c6 14 f3 ♙e5 15 ♜c2
♞fd8 16 a4 ♜c4

Threatening 17 ♜h4 or
17 ... ♙xh2+.

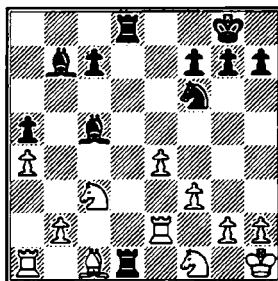
17 ♜f2 ♞d3 18 ♝h1 ♞ad8

Winning the pawn has cost White dearly. He couldn't complete his development, the c1 bishop is cut off from the sides, and the pieces aren't connected properly.

19 e4 a6 20 ♘a3 ♜b3 21 ♘ab1
♙d4 22 ♜e2 ♙c5 23 ♞e1 a5!

White has covered all the squares of encroachment. But now the b7 bishop also joins the attack. The threat is 24 ... ♙a6.

24 ♘d2 ♜c2 (the invasion has begun!) 25 ♘f1 ♜xe2 26 ♞xe2 (on 26 ♘xe2 unpleasant is 26 ... ♙f2) 26 ... ♞d1!



A complete triumph of the central strategy. The game has been decided.

27 ♘xd1 ♞xd1 28 h3 ♞xf1+
29 ♝h2 ♙g1+ 30 ♝g3 ♘h5+

31 ♖g4 g6 32 b3 ♙c8+ 33 ♖g5
 ♙d4 34 ♙b2 ♙xb2 35 ♜xf1 ♙f6+
 36 ♖h6 ♙g7+ 37 ♖g5 h6+ 38 ♖h4
 ♙f6 mate

Réti Opening

Smyslov – Polugaevsky

Palma de Majorca, 1970

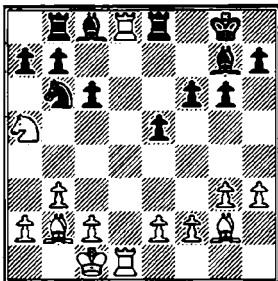
1 ♖f3 ♖f6 2 g3 g6 3 b3 ♙g7
 4 ♙b2 d6 5 d4 0-0 6 ♙g2 e5 7 de
 ♖g4 8 h3 ♖xe5 9 ♖xe5 de
 10 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 11 ♖d2 ♖d7
 12 0-0-0 ♜e8 13 ♖c4 ♖b6 14 ♖a5
 ♜b8

The opening struggle has ended in White's favour. His pieces are developed more harmoniously, and although his knight has gone off to the edge, the pressure on the b7 pawn has kept the b8 rook tied down to its defence for a long time. This also gives White time to seize a central file.

15 ♜d2 c6 16 ♜h1 f6

He would like to play 16 ... ♙e6, but – 17 ♖xb7 ♜xb7 18 ♙xc6 ♜bb8 19 ♙xe8 ♜xe8 20 ♜d8 with a win.

17 ♜d8



Comparing this with the previous diagram, we can find considerable similarity. Now no good is 17 ... ♙e6 – 18 ♜xe8+ ♜xe8 19 ♖xb7.

17 ... ♖f7 18 ♜xe8 ♖xe8 19 ♙a3 ♖d5

Again bad is 19 ... ♙e6 due to 20 ♖xb7, and on 19 ... ♙f8 possible is 20 ♙xf8 ♖xf8 21 ♜d8+ ♖f7 22 c4 – and Black has no useful moves.

20 ♙d6 ♜a8 21 c4 ♖e7 22 ♙c7

And the second rook penetrates to d8. It's getting more and more difficult for Black to hold the line.

22 ... ♖f7 23 ♜d8 f5 24 c5 ♖d5 25 ♙d6

It was possible to win a pawn, but White thinks that maintaining pressure on the queenside is a bigger prize.

25 ... ♙f6 26 ♜f8+ ♖g7 27 ♖c4

White has achieved obvious superiority. Exploiting this requires accuracy and attention, however.

27 ... e4 28 f3 ef 29 ♙xf3 ♙g5+ 30 ♖d1 ♖c3+ 31 ♖e1 ♖b5 32 ♜e8 ♖f7 33 ♜h8 ♙f6 34 ♖e5+ ♖g7 35 ♜e8 h5 36 e3 ♖c3 37 ♖xc6! bc 38 ♙xc6 ♙b7 39 ♜xa8 ♙xc6 40 ♜xa7+ ♖g8 41 ♜a6 ♙d5 42 c6 ♖e4 43 c7 ♙b7 44 ♜a8+ ♖f7 45 ♙b4

Black resigned.

Philidor Defence
Evenson – Alekhine
 Kiev, 1916

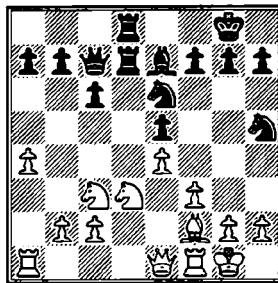
1 e4 e5 2 d3 d6 3 d4 dxf6 4 dxc3
 dbd7 5 dxc4 dxe7 6 0-0 0-0 7 de de
 8 d5 g5 c6 9 a4 c7 10 e2 dxc5
 11 dxe1

Having exchanged on e5, White seemed to have determined the further actions of both sides: after some preparation a conflict between the major pieces must take place along the open central file. But he unexpectedly and incorrectly changes the strategic plan that had been devised. He concentrates his pieces on the kingside, and prepares to give up the d-file, counting on using the knight on d3 as a covering force to prevent the incursion of the black rooks.

11 ... dxe6 12 dxe3 d4 13 e1 d1
 d8

Black accepts the generous gift of the open line. Now his plan will consist of four parts: doubling the rooks on that file, eliminating the d3 knight, invading his opponent's territory and exploiting the advantage that he has gained. Black requires 30 moves to implement this plan.

14 d3 dxe6 15 dxe6 dxe6
 16 e1 d7 17 f3 ad8 18 d2
 h5



The first stage is complete, and the attack on the d3 knight begins.

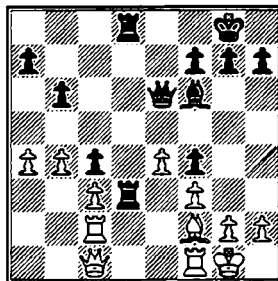
19 dxe2 c5 20 b3 dxf4 21 dxf4
 dxf4 22 dxf4 ef

The job is half done. Now – forward, on the path that has just been cleared.

23 c3

Preventing the threat of c5-c4-c3 with capture of the d2 square. But now the defence of the d3 square has gone.

23 ... e5 24 a2 d3 25 c2 b6
 26 c1 e6 27 b1 f6 28 b4 c4
 29 c1

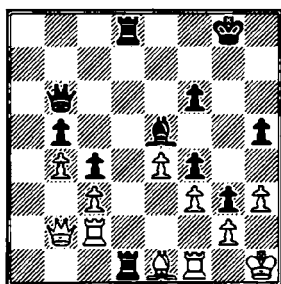


The situation has changed in clear favour of Black. All of his pieces occupy ideal positions. The final stage of the grand plan begins.

29 ... g5 30 h3 ♖e5 31 ♜a1 h5
32 a5

An attempt to distract his opponent with counter-action in another part of the board. If he'd wanted to Black could also have taken this opportunity away from White by playing 32 ... b5.

32 ... g4 33 ab ab 34 ♙h4 f6
35 ♙e1 g3 36 ♜a6 ♜c6 37 ♜a3 b5
38 ♜b2 ♜b6+ 39 ♚h1 ♞d1



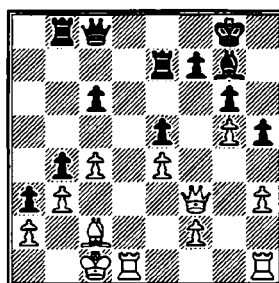
Complete success! The threat is
40 ... ♜e3 41 ♞e2 ♜xc3.

40 ♞c1 ♜e3 41 ♞a1 ♙c7 42 ♜a2
♞xa1 43 ♜xa1 ♜e2 44 ♞g1 ♙b6,
and Black won.

Despite its clear failure, the plan that White came up with in this game was very interesting. Enticing his opponent with play

along the open central file, then cutting it off with a piece, and himself breaking through on the outside, was a deep and bold idea. In the next game it succeeded.

Vilner – Romanovsky
3rd Soviet Championship
Moscow, 1924



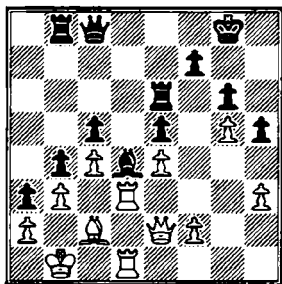
28 ... ♞e6!

The start of a deep plan. By leaving the central file for his opponent, Black intends to transfer his bishop to the square d4, to consolidate it and subsequently, after opening the f-file, to exploit it with a breakthrough into his opponent's camp.

29 ♞d3 ♙f8 30 ♞hd1 ♙c5 31 ♜e2
♙d4 32 ♚b1

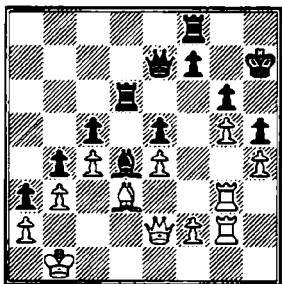
White decides on a passive defence. Evidently the best counter-chance was the exchange sacrifice 32 ♞xd4 ed 33 ♞xd4.

32 ... c5



So, the bishop has been reinforced and now he needs to undertake f7-f6. However, this must be done after thorough preparation, as it also opens the g-file, via which White could attack the g6 pawn.

33 ♖f3 ♜d8 34 h4 ♜e7 35 ♖g1
 ♜f8 36 ♔d3 ♜h7 37 ♖fg3 ♜d6
 38 ♜1g2



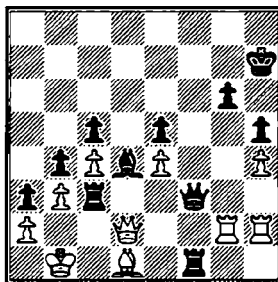
The preparatory work is finished and the time has come to open the pathway.

38 ... f6! 39 gf ♜xf6 40 ♖g5 ♜f7
 41 ♔c2 ♜f4 42 ♜h2 ♜df6

The line is completely at Black's disposal. The next stage of the

deep plan is an incursion into his opponent's camp and the final attack on the king.

43 ♜gg2 ♔xf2 44 ♔d1 ♔d4
 45 ♜c1 ♜f1 46 ♜c2 ♜6f3 47 ♜d2
 ♜c3+ 48 ♜b1 ♜f3



An instructive position.

49 ♜e2 ♜xb3+ 50 ab ♜xb3+
 51 ♜c1 ♔b2+

White resigned.

This method takes us naturally to the next topic.

Between the centre and the flank

Most commonly in this plan we have to talk about events occurring on the c- and b-files.

Queen's Indian Defence

Stahlberg - Taimanov

Zürich, 1953

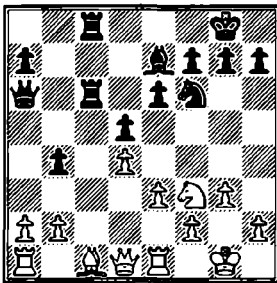
1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♘f3 b6 4 g3
 ♔a6 5 ♜a4 ♔e7 6 ♔g2 0-0 7 ♘c3
 c6 8 ♘e5 ♜e8!

A subtle preparatory move. The queen not only reinforces the c6 square (preparing d7-d5), but is also positioned to exert pressure on the b5 point, which allows Black to undertake his planned advance b6-b5.

9 0-0 d5 10 ♖e1 b5! 11 cb cb
12 ♖d1 b4 13 ♖b1 ♗c6 14 ♗xc6
♜xc6

The file is open and it's already obvious that Black has much the better chances in the fight for it.

15 ♗d2 ♜b6 16 e3 ♜ac8 17 ♙f1
♜c6 18 ♙xa6 ♜xa6 19 ♗f3 ♜fc8



The first task has been accomplished. Black's further plan consists of the following: his rooks penetrate via the open file into his opponent's position and pin down his forces, after which a decisive attack on one of the points in the position is prepared.

It will be quite difficult to accomplish the second phase of

the plan, by the way, as White doesn't yet have any obvious weaknesses in his position.

20 ♜b3 ♗e4 21 ♗d2 ♜c2
22 ♗xe4 de 23 a3 h5

Black starts his attack on the kingside. Another good decision was 23 ... ♜d3 24 ♜xd3 ed.

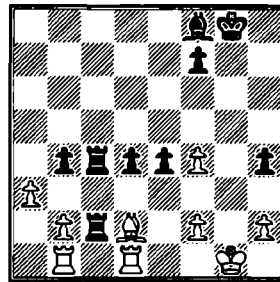
24 d4 ♜8c4! 25 ♖d1

With 25 de ♜xe6 arose the threat of 26 ... ♜xc1 27 ♜axc1 ♜xc1.

25 ... ed 26 ♙d2 ♜f6 27 ♜ab1 h4
28 ♜a4

It's time to take concrete measures against Black's attack. On 28 ... h3 White planned 29 ♜d7.

28 ... ♜f5 29 ♜xa7 ♙f8 30 ♜b8
g5 31 gh gh 32 ♜f4 ♜xf4 33 ef d4



A striking position. Black has managed to fulfil all his plans.

34 b3 ♜c6 35 ab f5 36 h3 ♜a6
37 ♜bc1 ♜xc1 38 ♜xc1 ♜a2 39 ♙e1

♖b2 40 ♘g2 ♜xb3 41 ♜c8 ♖b1
42 ♙d2 e3!

White resigned.

Queen's Gambit

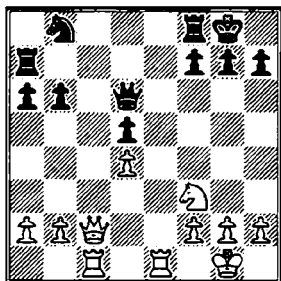
Botvinnik – Alekhine

Amsterdam, 1938

1 ♖f3 d5 2 d4 ♘f6 3 c4 e6 4 ♘c3
c5 5 cd ♘xd5 6 e3 ♘c6 7 ♙c4 cd
8 ed ♙e7 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♙e1 b6
11 ♘xd5 ed 12 ♙b5! ♙d7 13 ♜a4
♘b8

Of course, such a retreat doesn't aid the development of Black's pieces, but on the natural 13 ... ♜c8 could follow 14 ♙d2 with a subsequent ♜ac1 – and the a7 pawn is hit.

14 ♙f4 ♙xb5 15 ♜xb5 a6 16 ♜a4
♙d6 17 ♙xd6 ♜xd6 18 ♜ac1 ♙a7
19 ♜c2



White dominates on both open files. Black can still put up a fight in the centre, but he's powerless to prevent an incursion on the c-file.

19 ... ♙e7 20 ♜xe7 ♜xe7 21 ♜c7!
♜xc7 22 ♜xc7

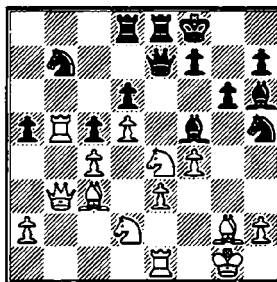
It's rather important that the knight on b8 also can't get into play yet. The rest of the game is about exploiting the advantage.

22 ... f6 23 ♘f1 ♜f7 24 ♜c8+ ♜f8
25 ♜c3 g5 26 ♘e1 h5 27 h4 ♘d7
28 ♜c7 ♜f7 29 ♘f3 g4 30 ♘e1 f5
31 ♘d3 f4 32 f3 gf 33 gf a5 34 a4
♘f8 35 ♜c6 ♘e7 36 ♘f2 ♜f5 37 b3
♘d8 38 ♘e2 ♘b8 39 ♜g6! ♘c7
40 ♘e5 ♘a6 41 ♜g7+ ♘c8 42 ♘g6
♜f6 43 ♘e7+ ♘b8 44 ♘xd5 ♘d6
45 ♜g5 ♘b4 46 ♘xb4 ab 47 ♜xh5
♜c6 48 ♖b5 ♘c7 49 ♜xb4 ♜h6
50 ♖b5 ♜xh4 51 ♘d3

Black resigned.

Portisch – Petrosian

Santa Monica, 1966



Using an unconventional method White has managed to halt his opponent's initiative in the centre (knight to e4!) and on the kingside (pawns on e3 and f4!). Now the open b-file, which

he controls, gains even more significance.

26 ... ♖c8 27 ♘f1! ♜d7

On 27 ... f5 the knight can retreat to f2, but the following development of events is also possible: 28 ♖eg3 ♘f6 29 ♜b2 ♙g7 30 ♝b1 (White has pressure not only on the file but also on the long diagonal) 30 ... ♜d7 31 e4 fe 32 ♙h3 with a dangerous initiative.

28 ♘fg3 ♘xg3 29 hg ♙g7 30 ♜b2!

On top of the pressure on the file an unexpected attack along the long diagonal is also added.

30 ... f5 31 ♙xg7+ ♜xg7 32 ♘f6

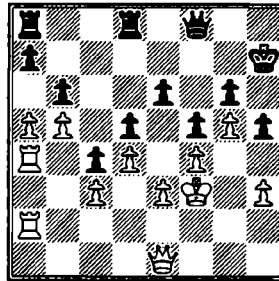
Black resigned.

Attack on the edge of the board

Opening the a-file with the kings castled short has its own specific character. The rook file on the queenside is the farthest removed from the kingside, which is why, up to a certain point, the main events don't touch the castled positions. It's also important that the side that is planning to seize the outside file must concentrate strong forces on it, diverting them from the kingside. This involuntarily

weakens the position of his own king and in some cases allows his opponent to strike an equivalent counter-blow. Then again, such cases are quite rare, as the opponent also has to move significant forces away to the outside file in order to somehow combat the incursion there.

Marco – Müller
London, 1899



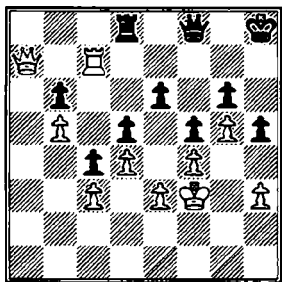
White is prepared to open and seize the a-file. Now already not bad is 33 ab ab 34 ♜a1! ♜xa4 35 ♜xa4 – the file is in White's hands, which in connection with the weakness of the b6 and e6 pawns should eventually resolve the game in his favour. Even so, the reply 35 ... ♜d7! would have allowed Black to organise a stubborn defence.

That's why, exploiting the fact that everything is peaceful in the centre and on the kingside, White steps up the pressure on the file.

33 ♖a1!

A typical method. All three major pieces are lined up, and the queen is working in the rear, as if she's nudging both rooks. Black must withdraw his rook from the a8 square in order to avoid losing a pawn, and this means that the outside file comes completely under White's control.

33 ... ♖ab8 34 ab ab 35 ♖a7+ ♕h8
36 ♜c7 ♖a8 37 ♖aa7 ♜xa7 38 ♗xa7



White has restructured dangerously and now has already seized the seventh rank, too. The denouement is close.

38 ... ♖b8 39 ♖h7+ ♕g8 40 ♖h6
♗e8 41 ♗h7+ ♕f8 42 ♜xg6

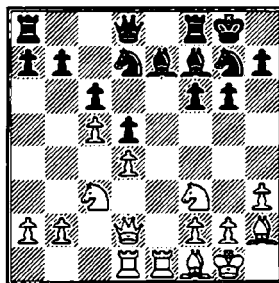
Black resigned.

Yudovich – Klamann

15th Soviet Championship
Leningrad, 1947

In the following position White has an indisputable space advantage. True, action along the

open file in the centre doesn't promise anything in particular, as all the incursion squares (e5, e6 and e7) are under Black's control.



Studying and evaluating the position, it's not too difficult to notice that the advanced position of the c5 pawn and total control of the h2-b8 diagonal create conditions for an attack on the queenside.

18 b4! b5

Or else follows 19 b5, and, since the b8 square is under his surveillance, White has solid possession of the b-file.

19 a4

Of course, not 19 cb ab, and everything is fine for Black.

19 ... a6 20 ♖a1 ♜fe8 21 ab ab
22 ♖a2!

A typical method for seizing an open file. Its efficient implementation is assisted by the fact that

White controls a large amount of space on the outside.

22 ... ♖c8 23 ♖ea1 ♗b7 24 ♗b2

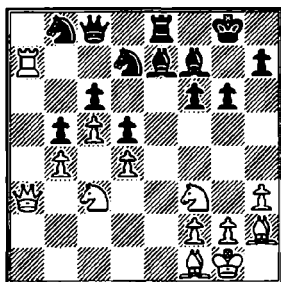
The final preparations.

24 ... ♘e6 25 ♖a3 ♘c7 26 ♖a5
 ♗xa5 27 ♗xa5 ♘a6 28 ♗a3 ♘ab8

He hasn't managed to block the file. On 28 ... ♖a8 possible is 29 ♘xb5! cb 30 ♗xb5, and Black can't avoid losing material.

29 ♖a7 ♗c8

The goal has been achieved. It's time for the stage of exploiting the advantage.

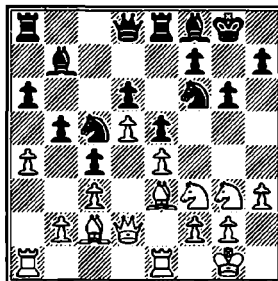


30 ♘xb5

Striking, but not an obligatory route. Also sufficient is 30 ♖c7 ♗d8 31 ♗a7.

30 ... cb 31 ♗xb5 ♘g7 32 ♗xb8 ♘xb8 33 ♗xe8 ♗xe8 34 b5 ♗f8 35 ♗e3 ♗c8 36 ♗f4 Black resigned. He can't save himself from the threats of 37 ♘e5 and 37 ♖a8.

Kuzmin – Rukavina
 Leningrad, 1973



All 32 chess pieces are on the board. A typical structure that arises in the Ruy Lopez has developed. There are no exact prescriptions here for either side, but the main directions for planning their actions have already been outlined. For Black the restructuring ♗g7, ♘fd7, ♖f8 may be suggested, preparing for play on both the kingside and the queenside.

18 ... ♖b8

Leaving the file that is just about to be opened doesn't make sense, of course.

19 ♖a3!

Before opening the line, White brings up the reserves.

19 ... ♗g7 20 ♖ea1 ♗c8 21 ab ab
 22 ♗e1 ♗b7

Speaking to the fact that Black doesn't have an active plan and

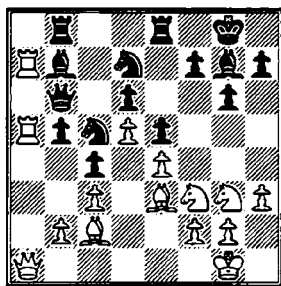
Reference point – Open lines

has decided to wait and see what his opponent does. It's already clear where the main events will take place. That's why he should have transferred his knight to the queenside – 22 ... ♖fd7.

23 ♖a7

Everything is going according to the predetermined order of things: seizing an open line, invading the opponent's camp and – a decisive attack.

23 ... ♖fd7 24 ♖1a5 ♜b6 25 ♜a1!



The file has been seized according to all the rules: rooks in front, queen behind them.

25 ... ♖f6 26 ♜a3 ♖d8 27 ♜b4 ♖a6

Makes it possible to resolve the struggle by a tactical method. But also after 27 ... ♖c8 Black could hardly hold on to the b5 pawn due to the manoeuvre ♖f3-d2-b1-a3.

28 ♖xd7 ♜xa5 29 ♜xa5 ♖xa5 30 ♖xd6

White has obtained a strong passed pawn for the material and, even more importantly, removed the support for the knight on c5 and pawn on e5 – Black can't avoid new losses.

30 ... ♖c7 31 ♖c6 ♖bc8 32 ♖xc5 ♖b7 33 ♖xc7! ♖xc7 34 ♖d6 ♖cc8 35 ♖xe5 ♖a8 36 ♖c7 ♖a2

Black tries to use the open file for a counterattack, but he doesn't have the power to prevent White's decisive attack in the centre.

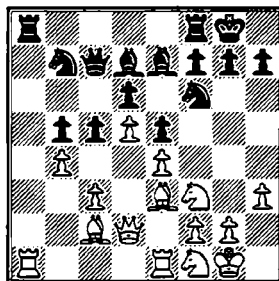
37 ♖d4 ♖xb2 38 ♖f1 ♖a8 39 ♖e3 ♖a3 40 d6 ♖c8 41 ♖d5

Black resigned.

Of course, an opponent won't always give up an important thoroughfare just like that without a fight. More often you have to win it against strong opposition.

Karpov – Unzicker

Nice, 1974

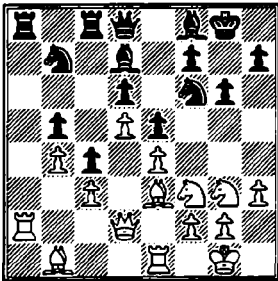


It looks as if both sides have equal rights to the a-file, but this impression is deceptive. By coordinating the actions of his pieces, White can prepare to double rooks by ♖c2-d3 and ♙a1-a2, whereas Black doesn't have this opportunity.

19 ... ♙fc8

Worthy of consideration was 19 ... ♙fb8 20 ♖d3 ♜c8, offering counteraction against White's plan.

20 ♖d3 g6 21 ♗g3 ♖f8 22 ♙a2 c4
23 ♖b1 ♜d8



Also upon 23 ... ♗d8 the argument over the a-file ends in White's favour: 24 ♙e2 ♙xa2 25 ♜xa2 ♜b7 26 ♜a1! ♙a8 27 ♙a2 ♙xa2 28 ♜xa2.

24 ♖a7!

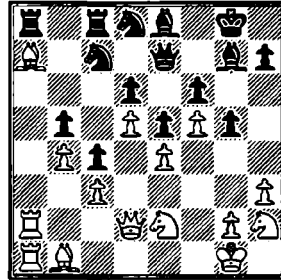
Under the cover of this bishop White forms an attacking team on the queenside. All his pieces get the opportunity to occupy natural

and strong positions. Meanwhile it's much harder for Black to do this, for which the knight stuck on b7 is primarily to blame.

24 ... ♗e8 25 ♖c2 ♗c7 26 ♙ea1
♜e7 27 ♖b1 ♖e8

Black prepared for play on the queenside as best as he could, linking his forces. But White also has an excellent choice – and by exploiting his space advantage and the greater mobility of his pieces, he initiates action on the other side.

28 ♗e2 ♗d8 29 ♗h2 ♖g7 30 f4
f6 31 f5 g5



New changes have taken place in the position, and White makes adjustments to his plans.

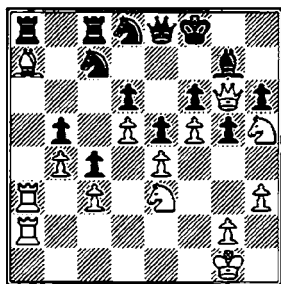
32 ♖c2!

The bishop goes off on a long trip with the goal of taking his opponent's light-squared bishop out of the game, which will severely weaken the light squares in his camp.

32 ... ♙f7 33 ♖g3 ♜b7 34 ♙d1 h6
 35 ♙h5 ♜e8 36 ♜d1 ♜d8 37 ♜a3
 ♜f8 38 ♜1a2 ♜g8 39 ♖g4! ♜f8
 40 ♜e3 ♜g8 41 ♙xf7+ ♜xf7
 42 ♜h5 ♜d8

With 42 ... ♜h8 Black would have prevented an incursion by the queen, but then the following variation was possible: 43 ♖g4 ♜xh5 44 ♜xh5 ♜f7 45 ♙b6! ♜xa3 46 ♜xa3 ♜a8 47 ♜xa8 ♜xa8 48 ♙a5 – Black's pieces have nowhere to go.

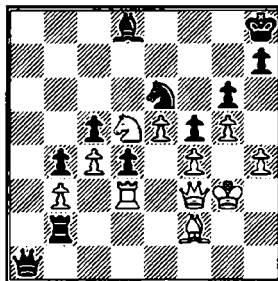
43 ♜g6! ♜f8 44 ♜h5



Black resigned.

When attacking along an outside file you should always bear in mind that by sending a large number of forces off to this peripheral area we involuntarily weaken the piece covering around our king, which gives the opponent occasion and opportunity for a counterattack.

Lasker-Showalter
 Nuremberg, 1896



The white king is in danger, but White has also preserved hidden counter-chances. His knight should transfer to f6, the queen could get to b7 or c6, and then the black king would have to think about saving himself.

60 ... ♜b1 61 ♜f6 ♜h1

With the threat of 62 ... ♜f1, but Black already has no time for all this. He can still make a draw by playing 61 ... ♜g1+ 62 ♙xg1 ♜xg1+ 63 ♜h3 ♜xf4+ 64 ♜xf4 ♜h1+ 65 ♜g3 ♜g1+ 66 ♜h3 ♜h1+, and so on.

62 ♜b7 ♖g7 63 ♜f7

Black resigned.

This unexpected result gives rise to doubts and the question: could Black have played something stronger instead of 60 ... ♜b1? Chances for a win came from 60 ... ♜c1 and on 61 ♜f6 – 61 ... ♜c2. White has a natural

move – to return the knight to d5. Black's further plan is the following: exchange queens (62 ... ♚e2), return the rook to b2 (in the event of 63 ♚xe2), and transfer the king to f7 and the knight to a5 for an attack on the b3 pawn.

The usual continuation is 8 0-0 ed 9 cd ♖bd7 10 ♖d2 with chances for both sides. With the move in the text White starts concrete play, but without the necessary preparation it will only lead to disappointment.

8 ... ♙xe6 9 ♘g5 ♙xc4! 10 ♙xb7

Dangerous diagonals

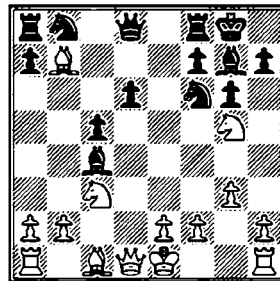
Control of important diagonals has again and again been decisive in many of the examples we've looked at already.

Practice has created entire openings systems, the main focus of which is a battle from the first moves for diagonals on which the bishops can display activity. Thus, in the King's Indian and the Sicilian Dragon Black's main piece is his dark-squared bishop. In the Réti Opening or the English Opening White in his turn envisages an important role for his light-squared bishop.

Quite large sacrifices are sometimes made for control of a long diagonal.

King's Indian Defence
Vaganian – Velimirovic
 Ohrid, 1972

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 c5 3 d5 g6 4 ♖c3 ♙g7 5 g3 0-0 6 ♙g2 d6 7 ♖f3 e6 8 de



Looks quite dangerous for Black, but he can take a tactical route to refute his opponent's idea.

10 ... ♖bd7!

Now he can win material or a pawn, but in both cases Black, thanks to his control of important diagonals, generates sufficient counterplay.

11 ♚xd6 h6 12 ♖ge4 ♖xe4 13 ♙xe4 ♞e8 14 0-0 ♙xc3

After this White is already forced to accept the exchange sacrifice, completely conceding control over the h1-a8 diagonal to his opponent.

Reference point – Open lines

15 ♖xa8 ♗e5 16 ♜d1 ♜xa8
17 ♜xd7 ♗d4

Threatening 18 ... ♗e6 and
19 ... ♗h3 with mate. White
decides to return the exchange, at
least to rid himself of the
dangerous bishop.

18 e3 ♗xf1 19 ♜xf1 ♗f6 20 ♜a4
♜h1+ 21 ♜e2 ♞e5 22 ♜d1 ♜xh2
23 ♗d2 ♞f5 24 ♜g1 ♜h3 25 ♞c1
♜g4+ 26 ♜e1 ♜f3 27 ♞c4 ♗xb2
28 g4 ♞e5 29 ♜h2 ♜d5 30 ♞c3 ♞e8
31 ♜xh6 ♞d8 32 ♞c2 ♗c3!

White resigned.

And in the next game, White
gives up his rook in order to
become the boss – at least
temporarily – on the long
diagonal.

King's Indian Defence

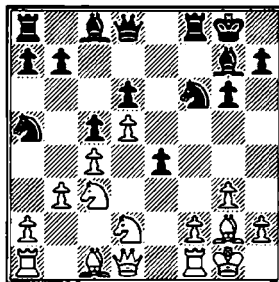
Geller – Velimirovic

Havana, 1971

1 ♖f3 ♗f6 2 c4 g6 3 d4 ♗g7 4 g3
0-0 5 ♗g2 d6 6 0-0 c5 7 ♖c3 ♖c6
8 d5 ♖a5 9 ♖d2 e5 10 e4 ♖g4
11 b3 f5 12 ef e4

Black hurries to seize the
initiative. Calmer was 12 ... gf.

13 f6! ♖xf6

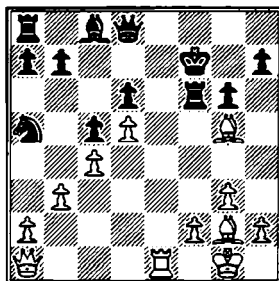


Now after 14 ♗b2 e3! 15 fe ♖g4
Black obtains a comfortable game,
but White has come up with an
impressive sacrifice.

14 ♖dx4!! ♖xe4 15 ♖xe4 ♗xa1
16 ♗g5 ♗f6

In the event of 16 ... ♜c7
17 ♜xa1 to avoid the worst Black
has to play 17 ... ♜g7, which after
18 ♜xg7+ ♜xg7 19 ♖xd6 gives
White better chances in the
ending. A similar situation also
arises with 16 ... ♜e8 17 ♜xa1 ♜e5
18 ♜xe5 de 19 ♖xc5.

17 ♖xf6+ ♞xf6 18 ♜a1 ♜f7
19 ♞e1



White is a rook down, but in the main area of the battle he has a noticeable superiority of forces.

19 ... ♖b8

A better defence was 19 ... ♖h8, which after 20 ♖c3 b6 21 ♖e6 ♗xe6! 22 de+ (bad is 22 ♖xh8 – 22 ... ♖e1+ 23 ♗f1 ♗xf1+ 24 ♖xf1 ♗h3+ and 25 ... ♗xh8) 22 ... ♗xe6 23 ♖f3+ ♗f5 24 ♖d5+ ♗e6 25 ♖f3+ forces perpetual check.

20 ♖e3 b6 21 ♗f3 ♗f5 22 g4 ♖h8 23 ♗xf6

Transferring the game into a winning ending.

23 ... ♖xf6 24 ♖xf6+ ♖xf6 25 gf gf 26 ♖e3 ♗b7 27 ♖e6+ ♖f7 28 ♗f3 ♖g8+ 29 ♖f1 ♖f8 30 ♗h5 ♖g5 31 ♖e8+ ♖g7 32 ♖e7+ ♖h6 33 ♖xb7, and White won.

Chapter Five

Pawn structure. Weak and strong squares

** The opinion of the experts * The problem of doubled pawns * Capablanca gives a lesson * The Carlsbad structure * Eternal knights **

No matter which game we've been studying or what kind of episode we've been examining, the position of the pawns has always directly or indirectly influenced the choice of plans, the actions of both sides, and finally the result of the encounter.

Emanuel Lasker: "The Pawn, being much more stationary than the pieces, is an element of the structure of the position; the way the array of Pawns is placed determines the character of a position and hence also the plan appropriate to it."

José Raúl Capablanca: "The character of the pawn structure plays an important role not only in the endgame, but also in the opening and middlegame. Often opening variations are rejected solely because bad pawn formations arise in them. This kind of bad pawn setup is one of

the determining factors according to which we reject this or that route to the middlegame."

In confirmation of these words let's have a look at the following game.

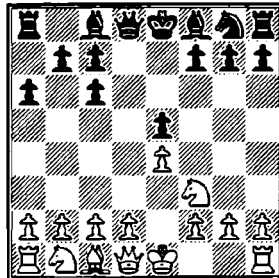
Ruy Lopez

Lasker – Capablanca

St. Petersburg, 1914

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♙b5 a6
4 ♙xc6 dc

A typical pawn structure for the exchange variation of the Ruy Lopez has been created.



What kinds of plans should each side adhere to?

The fact that the d7 pawn has moved over to the queenside gives White pawn superiority in the centre and on the kingside. If, for example, only kings and pawns remain on the board, then organising a passed pawn is easier for White than for Black. That's why one of the principles of play for White in this position is that it's beneficial for him to exchange.

Black in his turn builds his game on its speedy development, intending in the future to use the strength of his bishop pair.

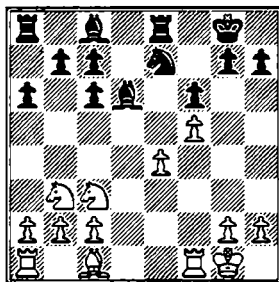
5 d4 e4 6 ♖xd4 ♗xd4 7 ♘xd4

The position has solidified even more. Now a pawn endgame is already completely unacceptable for Black.

7 ... ♗d6

To create active play, more suitable is 7 ... ♗d7 followed by castling long.

8 ♘c3 ♗e7 9 0-0 0-0 10 f4 ♗e8
11 ♘b3 f6 12 f5!



A crucial move – the e4 pawn becomes backward and Black gets control of the e5 square. But Lasker thought that it would be very difficult for Black to occupy that square, while the f5 pawn appreciably restricts the actions of the c8 bishop.

12 ... b6 13 ♗f4 ♗b7

A mistake. After the game Capablanca demonstrated that Black gets good play after 13 ... ♗xf4 14 ♗xf4 c5 15 ♗d1 ♗b7.

14 ♗xd6 cd

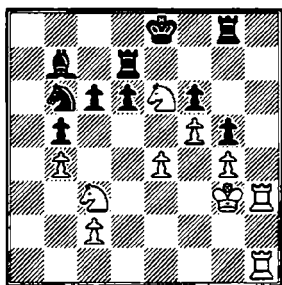
Black has relieved himself of his doubled pawns, but a new landmark has appeared for White – the e6 square. The b3 knight is also heading over there.

15 ♘d4 ♗ad8 16 ♘e6 ♗d7
17 ♗ad1 ♘c8

Black has slowed things down in vain. The position of the pawns demanded active play on the queenside. Stronger therefore

was 17 ... c5, and if 18 ♖d5, then 18 ... ♗xd5 19 ed b5. In this case Black could send the e7 knight on the route c8-b6-c4-e5. The weakness of the e5 point is also an important landmark for evaluating the position.

18 ♖f2 b5 19 ♖fd2 ♗de7 20 b4! ♜f7 21 a3 ♗a8 22 ♜f2 ♗a7 23 g4 h6 24 ♗d3 a5 25 h4 ab 26 ab ♗ae7 27 ♜f3 ♗g8 28 ♜f4 g6 29 ♗g3 g5+ 30 ♜f3 ♖b6 31 hg hg 32 ♗h3! ♗d7 33 ♜g3 ♜e8 34 ♗dh1 ♗b7



35 e5!

A characteristic method. By sacrificing a pawn, White supports an attack by the c3 knight on the weak points in his opponent's camp.

35 ... de 36 ♖e4 ♖d5 37 ♖6c5 ♗c8 38 ♖xd7 ♗xd7 39 ♗h7 ♗f8 40 ♗a1 ♜d8 41 ♗a8+ ♗c8 42 ♖c5

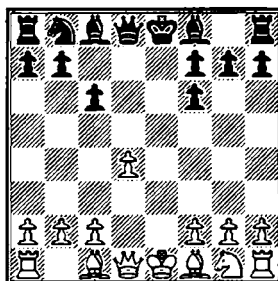
Black resigned.

And now – two opening variations from a different opening.

Caro-Kann

Ragozin – Boleslavsky
Sverdlovsk, 1942

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖xe4 ♖f6 5 ♖xf6+ ef



Both here and in the previous example White's pawn superiority has been determined after the seventh move – this time on the queenside. As in that case, it's beneficial for White to transfer to the endgame, but he also has other opportunities to plan an active game.

6 ♗c4 ♗d6 7 ♗e2+! ♗e7

After 7 ... ♗e7 8 ♗xe7+ ♜xe7 White's chances in the ending are preferable, although, of course, it would be very difficult to exploit the minimal advantage.

8 ♖f3 0-0 9 0-0 ♗d6 10 ♗e1 ♗g4 11 ♗e4!

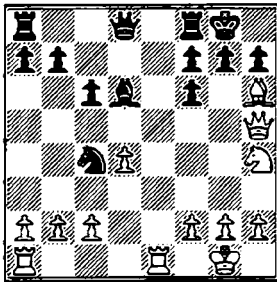
An original plan, based on the fact that Black's pawns are doubled on the f-file, and if they're forced to advance to defend the king, clear weaknesses

will immediately arise in the opponent's position. For example, 11 ... f5 12 ♖d3 ♕xf3 13 ♜xf3 ♜h4 14 g3 ♜xd4 15 ♕d3 g6 16 ♕h6 ♚d8 17 ♚ad1 with unpleasant threats.

11 ... ♕h5 (most likely the best continuation would have been the immediate exchange – 11 ... ♕xf3) 12 ♖h4! ♖d7 13 ♜f5

Now after 13 ... ♕g6 follows 14 ♖xg6 hg 15 ♜xg6, and after 13 ... g6 14 ♜h3 threatens 15 g4.

13 ... ♖b6 14 ♜xh5 ♖xc4 15 ♔h6!



What should Black do? On 15 ... gh White plays not 16 ♖f5 due to 16 ... ♕f4 17 ♜g4+ ♕g5 18 h4 ♖d6!, and Black beats him out, but 16 b3!, and on 16 ... ♖b6 – 17 ♖f5 ♖h8 18 ♜xh6 ♕g8 19 ♚e8! with a win.

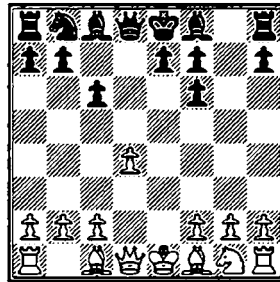
15 ... ♜d7 16 ♕xg7! ♖xg7 17 ♖f5+ ♖h8 18 ♚e4! ♕xh2+ 19 ♖h1

Black resigned.

Caro-Kann

Levenfish – Konstantinopolsky
Moscow, 1948

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♖xe4 ♖f6 5 ♖xf6+ gf



The structure of Black's pawn chain has changed, and he must adjust accordingly. He intends to prepare queenside castling and use the open g-file for active play on the kingside. White, as before, is interested in simplification.

6 ♖f3 ♕g4 7 ♕e2 ♜c7 8 c3 ♖d7 9 ♜a4

A straightforward tactic. If Black castles long his a7 pawn falls under attack, but the queen on a4 is in a shaky position and this helps Black to carry out his active ideas.

The correct decision was 9 ♕e3, so that on 9 ... 0-0-0 he could continue 10 ♜a4 ♖b8 11 0-0-0, moving the king away to a safe place.

9 ... e6 10 ♔d2 ♖g8 11 0-0-0 ♙f5
12 ♗de1 ♖g4!

12 ... ♖xg2 would not be successful due to 13 ♘h4 ♖xf2 14 ♙e3. Now the unpleasant ♘d7-c5 is threatened.

13 h3 ♖e4 14 ♗b3 0-0-0

It has become obvious that the queen's sortie has led only to a loss of time.

15 ♙e3 c5! 16 ♘d2

On 16 ♙d3 would have come 16 ... ♖xe3 17 ♖xe3 ♙xd3 18 ♖xd3 c4, and if 16 dc, then 16 ... ♘xc5 17 ♙xc5 ♙h6+! 18 ♙e3 ♖xe3 with a rout.

16 ... cd! 17 ♘xe4 ♙xe4 18 ♙d2 ♘c5 19 ♗b4

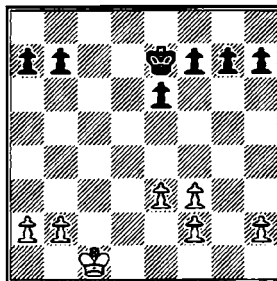
After 19 ♗d1 dc 20 bc ♗a5 the king's position is destroyed.

19 ... ♘d3+ 20 ♙xd3 ♙xb4 21 ♖xe4 dc 22 ♙xc3 ♖xd3 23 ♖xb4 ♖xc3+

White resigned.

This was an example of a successful active strategy by Black – consciously taking a risk on an early pawn weakness. However, if the opponent manages to exchange pieces with accurate and careful play, the pawn weaknesses become a substantial feature of the position and often lead to serious problems.

Cohn – Rubinstein
St. Petersburg, 1909



With colours reversed the pawn structure of this position is very similar to the position of the pawns in the previous diagram.

Evaluating this position isn't difficult. The g2 pawn has moved to f3. This not only left the h2 pawn defenceless, but also appreciably weakened the h3 square. The following plan is taking shape for Black:

- 1) transfer the king to h3;
- 2) force the white king to defend the h2 pawn, obtaining the freedom for a pawn attack on the kingside;
- 3) after advancing a pawn to g3, force exchanges and open a path for the king to the enemy pawns.

Here's how this looked in practice:

1 ... ♖f6! 2 ♘d2 ♖g5 3 ♖e2 ♘h4
4 ♖f1 ♘h3 5 ♖g1 e5 6 ♖h1 h6

7 ♖g1 f5! 8 ♔h1 g5 9 ♖g1 h5

Black moves his pawns methodically, while the white king has to make waiting moves.

10 ♔h1 g4 11 e4 fe 12 fe h4
13 ♖g1 g3 14 hg hg

White resigned, as after the exchanges he loses the e4 pawn.

Such a deep connection between the pawn structure that develops in the early opening and events deep in the endgame is also characteristic of other openings.

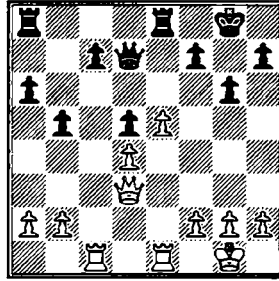
Let's make the well-known moves of the open variation of the Ruy Lopez on the board:

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♗b5 a6
4 ♗a4 ♘f6 5 0-0 ♗xe4 6 d4 b5
7 ♗b3 d5 8 de ♗e6 9 c3 ♗e7
10 ♚e1 ♗c5 11 ♗c2 ♗g4 12 ♘bd2
0-0 13 ♘b3 ♗e6 14 ♚d3 g6

And now let's hear the words of José Raúl Capablanca, world champion from 1921-1927,

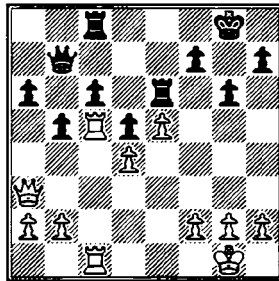
Let us suppose the game went on, and that in some way White, by playing one of the Knights to Q4 (d4) at the proper time, forced the exchange of both Knights, and then afterwards both the Bishops were exchanged, and we arrived at some such position as shown in the following diagram. (I obtained such a position in a very

similar way once at Lodz in Poland. I was playing the White pieces against a consulting team headed by Salwe.)



Now we would have here the case of the backward Q B P (c7), which will in no way be able to advance to Q B 4 (c5). Such a position may be said to be theoretically lost, and in practice a first-class master will invariably win it from Black.

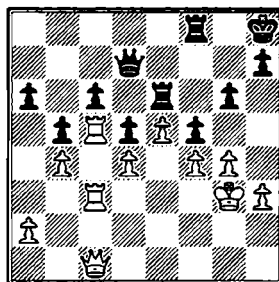
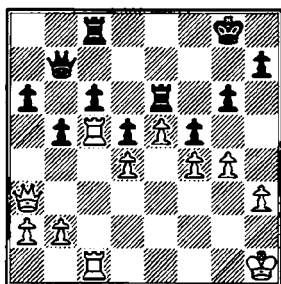
After a few moves the position may be easily thus:



The Black pieces can be said to be *fixed*. If White plays Q - Q B 3 (♚c3), Black must answer Q - Q 2

(♖d7), otherwise he will lose a Pawn, and if White returns with the Queen to Q R 3 (a3) Black will have again to return to Q Kt 2 (♖b7) with the Queen or lose a Pawn. Thus Black can only move according to White's lead, and under such conditions White can easily advance with his Pawns to K B 4 (f4) and K Kt 4 (g4), until Black will be forced to stop P - B 5 (f4-f5) by playing P - K B 4 (f7-f5), and we might finally have some such position as this:

Now suppose that in the position in the preceding diagram it were Black's move, and he played R - K B 1 (♖f8). White would then simply defend his K B P (f-pawn) by some move like Q - K B 3 (♕f3), threatening R X Q B P (♖xc6), and then he would bring his King up to Kt 3 (g3), and when the time came, break through, as in the previous case. White might even be able to obtain the following position:



In this situation the game might go on as follows:

1 gf gf 2 ♕f3 ♖d7

White threatened to win a Pawn by Q X P (♕xd5), and Black could not play 2 ... R - K B 1 (2 ... ♖f8), because 3 R X B P (♖xc6) would also win a Pawn at least.

3 ♖c2 ♖g6 4 ♖g2 ♔h8 5 ♖cg1 ♖cg8 6 ♖h5 ♖xg2 7 ♖xg2 ♖xg2 8 ♔xg2 ♖g7+ 9 ♔h2 ♖g6 10 ♖xg6 hg 11 b4, and White wins.

Black would now be forced to play R - B 1 (♖c8), and White could then play Q - B 2 (♕c2), and follow it up with K B 3 (♔f3), and thus force Black to play P X P (on g4), which would give White a greater advantage.

A careful examination of all these positions will reveal that, besides the advantage of freedom of manoeuvre on White's part, the power of the Pawn at K 5 (e5) is enormous, and that it is the commanding position of this Pawn, and the fact that it is free to

advance, once all the pieces are exchanged, that constitute the pivot of all White's manoeuvres.

With that we'll end the lesson from Capablanca.

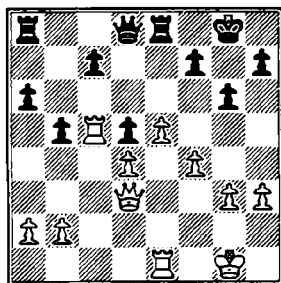
Attacking the backward c6 pawn and the key f5 point one after the other, White forces his opponent into new, now already decisive concessions. In practice all this takes place, of course, with the most active opposition by the opponent.

Let's look at the example of the game that was mentioned by the Cuban grandmaster.

Ruy Lopez

Capablanca – Salwe/Consultants
Lodz, 1913

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♜c6 3 ♙b5 a6
4 ♙a4 ♜f6 5 0-0 ♜xe4 6 d4 b5
7 ♙b3 d5 8 de ♙e6 9 c3 ♙e7
10 ♜bd2 ♜c5 11 ♙c2 ♙g4 12 h3
13 ♙h5 14 ♙e1 ♙g6 15 ♜d4 ♜xd4
16 cd ♜e6 17 ♜b3 ♙g5 18 ♙xc1
19 f4 ♙xc2 20 ♙xc2 g6
21 ♜c5 ♙e8 22 ♜d3 ♜xc5 23 ♙xc5



23 ... ♜d7 24 g4 c6 25 ♙ec1 ♙ac8
26 ♙c3 ♙e6 27 ♙h2 ♙h8 28 ♙a3
29 ♙g3 f5 30 ♙f3

Threatening 31 ♜xd5! The game is going according to the plans predicted by Capablanca.

30 ... ♜d7 31 ♙g3 ♙f8 32 ♙a3
33 ♙c3 ♙c8 34 ♙c2 ♙g8

A trap on a difficult path. If now he takes the pawn 35 gf gf 36 ♜xf5 – he loses: 36 ... ♙g6+.

35 ♙f3 fg+ 36 hg ♜f7 37 ♙e3
38 ♙f1 ♜d7 39 ♙g2 ♙e7
40 ♙fc1 ♙ef6 41 ♙f1 ♙h8 42 ♙c2
43 ♙h2 ♙e7 44 ♙f3 ♙e6
45 ♙f2 a5 46 f5! gf 47 gf ♙g5

Strategically Black's situation is hopeless, and so he tries to exploit at least some kind of tactical chances. On the hasty 48 fe follows 48 ... ♜d2+ 49 ♙g3 ♙g8+ (or 49 ♙g1 ♜d1+), and Black is already winning.

48 ♜f4! ♙xf5

The last attempt.

49 ♜xf5 ♜d2+ 50 ♙f1 ♙g6

The attack 50 ... ♜d1+ 51 ♙g2 ♜d2+ 52 ♙f2 ♙g6+ is refuted by 53 ♜xg6.

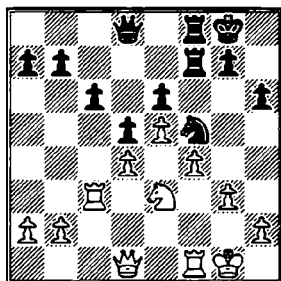
51 ♜f8+ ♙g8 52 ♜f6+ ♙g7
53 ♙g3

Black resigned. He doesn't have a perpetual check, of course.

A similar pawn formation that determined the character of the struggle also arose in the following ending.

Capablanca – Eliskases

Moscow, 1936



Capablanca comments.

25 ♖xf5 ♜xf5

If 25 ... e4, then the pawn structure is similar to the one that occurs in the variation of the Ruy Lopez with ♖xe4.

26 h4! g6

A weak move, dooming Black to total passivity. He should have played 26 ... g5! For example: 27 hg hg 28 ♜h5 (28 ♜g4 ♜f7 and then ♜g7) 28 ... ♜e8 29 ♜xe8 ♜xe8 30 fg ♜ef8 31 ♜xf5 ♜xf5 32 ♖g2 ♜xg5 33 ♜f3 c5! (not 33 ... ♜g4 because of 34 ♜f4), and Black should obtain a draw.

27 ♖g2 ♜e7

Black cannot touch his pawns on the queenside as this would lead to the creation of new weak squares. That is why he must wait passively on both sides.

28 a3 ♜g7

My opponent considered the move 28 ... g5 for a long time and in the end rejected it. Indeed, after 28 ... g5 29 ♜g4 (White does not open the h-file, so that later it is not occupied by a black rook) 29 ... ♜g7 30 ♜cf3 gf 31 ♜xf4 ♜xf4 32 ♜xg7+ ♖xg7 33 gf the rook endgame turns out unfavourably for Black.

29 ♜cf3! ♜e7!

Now on 29 ... g5 follows 30 fg hg 31 ♜xf5 ♜xf5 32 ♜xf5 ef 33 ♜h5! gh 34 ♜xh4 and so on.

30 ♜c2!

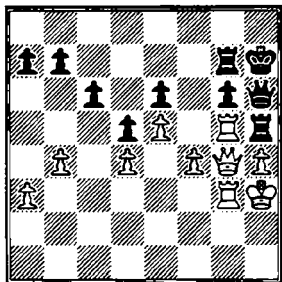
Hindering c6-c5 and threatening g3-g4

30 ... ♖g7 31 g4 ♜f7 32 ♖h3 ♜d7 33 b4 ♜g8 34 ♜g1 ♖h8 35 ♜d2 ♜h7 36 ♜f2 h5

Black strives to prevent the breakthrough f4-f5.

37 gh ♜xh5 38 ♜g5 ♜h7 39 ♜g3 ♜h6 40 ♜g4 ♜g7 41 ♜g3 ♖h7

The only move. On 41 ... ♜h7 White exchanges twice on h5 and wins a pawn.



42 ♖g2 ♕h8 43 ♖g3 ♕h7 44 ♖h2
 ♜e7 45 ♖h3 ♖g7?

Makes the win easier, although Black's position is hopeless. He only has at his disposal the moves ♜e7-e8-e7. There might follow 45 ... ♜e8 46 ♕f3 ♜e7 47 ♖g3! ♖xh4 48 ♖xg6 ♖xg4 49 ♖xh6+ ♕xh6 50 ♖xg4 ♖g7 51 ♖h4+ ♕g6 52 ♖h8, and the rook endgame is won for White.

46 ♖xh5! ♜xh5 47 ♜xh5 g h
 48 f5! ef 49 ♕f4 ♜e6 50 ♕xf5 ♖g6

Black could prolong his resistance with 50 ... ♕f7 The endgame is still lost, as Black cannot move his pawns on the queenside. White continues ♖h3-g3-g5 and so on.

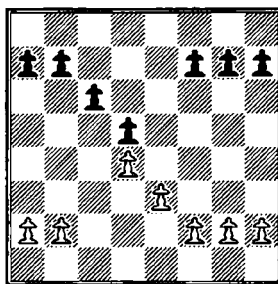
51 e6! ♖g4 52 ♕e5 ♜e4+ 53 ♕d6
 ♜xd4 54 ♜e3

Black resigned.

The pawn structure that is created in the opening to a large extent determines the subsequent course of the game. It is on the

position of the pawns that the classification of different types of centre is based (this is examined in detail in the next chapter), and also on which the study of typical positions in the middlegame, characterised by fully-established strategic plans, has been made.

One of the most popular pawn setups in modern practice is the Carlsbad structure.



Positions with this pawn formation attracted attention after the international tournament in Carlsbad in 1923. Some of its participants, trying to avoid the sharp Cambridge Springs variation (1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 ♖c3 ♕f6 4 ♖g5 c6 5 e3 ♗bd7 6 ♖f3 ♜a5), chose 6 cd, after which the pawn structure shown in the diagram arises. This kind of pawn formation can also arise in other openings.

For example, in the Grünfeld (1 d4 ♕f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♖c3 d5 4 ♖f3 ♖g7 5 ♖g5 ♗e4 6 cd ♖xg5 7 ♖xg5

e6 8 ♖f3 ed), the Nimzo-Indian (1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♝c3 ♠b4 4 ♜c2 d5 5 cd ed), with colours reversed in the Caro-Kann (1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 ♠d3 ♗c6 5 c3) and so on.

So what plans does the pawn formation suggest for the players, then?

White has at his disposal an attack with the pawn minority by means of b2-b4, a2-a4, b4-b5; he can also prepare for a break in the centre with e3-e4; upon same-side or opposite-side castling an attack on the kingside is sometimes organised.

The choice of the method of defence for Black greatly depends on the course of action taken by his opponent.

Primarily this is a counterattack with pawns or pieces on the kingside, positional methods of defence associated with creating a defensive line including b7-b5 or piece control over the c4 and b5 squares, and also undermining of the centre or a counterattack on a queenside castled position.

Attack by a pawn minority has become the typical strategic method to create a weak outside pawn for the opponent. Here's one of the first uses of this plan:

*Queen's Gambit
Pillsbury – Showalter
New York, 1898*

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 ♗c3 ♗f6 4 ♠g5 ♠e7 5 e3 ♗bd7 6 ♗f3 0-0 7 cd ed 8 ♠d3 c6 9 ♜c2 ♞e8 10 0-0 ♗f8 11 ♗e5

This looks active but it only helps Black to clear up the situation to his advantage.

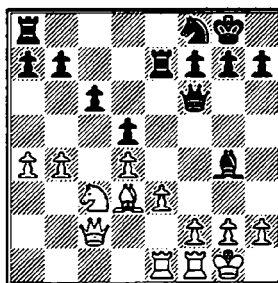
11 ... ♗g4! 12 ♠xe7 ♜xe7 13 ♗xg4 ♠xg4 14 ♞ae1 ♜f6

The move 14 ... ♞ad8 looks more aggressive, followed up by ♞d8-d6-h6.

15 a4?!

The right idea used imprecisely. Correct was 15 b4 first, as now Black could get excellent play with the aid of 15 ... a5!

15 ... ♞e7 16 b4



In an attack by a pawn minority it isn't helpful for Black to leave the a7 pawn in place: it has to be

constantly defended, and moreover with an open a-file it's easier for Black to carry out exchanges and neutralise his opponent's initiative.

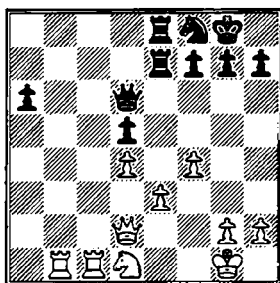
16 ... ♖ae8 17 b5 ♜g5 18 f4!

Combining an attack with a circumspect prophylactic measure (18 ... ♔f3 was threatened). The weakness of the e3 pawn doesn't yet play a particular role, as Black hasn't succeeded in getting to it.

18 ... ♜ff6 19 ♜d2 ♔f5 20 a5 ♜g6
21 ♔xf5 ♜xf5 22 a6 cb 23 ♘xb5
♜d7 24 ab a6 25 ♘c3 ♜xb7 26 ♖b1
♜c6 27 ♖fc1 ♜d6

Of course, not 27 ... ♖xe3 due to 28 ♘e4!

28 ♘d1



The pawn attack has brought White clear achievements: he controls the open files and is ready to attack the weak a6 and d5 pawns.

28 ... ♔g6 29 g3 h5 30 ♜e2 h4
31 ♜h5 hg 32 hg ♘f8 33 ♖c5 ♖d8
34 ♖bc1 g6 35 ♜f3 ♘e6 36 ♖c8
♘g7 37 ♖xd8 ♘xd8 38 ♖c5 ♘e6
39 ♜xd5

So, one of the pawns has been eliminated. The other is a technicality.

39 ... ♜b6 40 ♖c1 ♜b4 41 ♘f2
♜d2 42 ♜e5+! f6 43 ♜xf6+ ♘xf6
44 ♘e4+ ♘f5 45 ♘xd2 g5 46 d5 gf
47 gf ♘xf4 48 ef ♘xf4 49 ♖c5 ♖d7
50 ♘c4 ♘e4 51 d6 ♘d4 52 ♖c7

Black resigned.

In the early days after the Carlsbad structure was first encountered in tournament practice, it was thought that Black's only counter-measure was a corresponding pawn attack on the kingside.

Queen's Gambit

Bogolyubov – Rubinstein

San Remo, 1910

1 d4 d5 2 ♘f3 ♘f6 3 c4 e6 4 ♔g5
♘bd7 5 e3 ♔e7 6 ♘c3 0-0 7 ♖c1
♖e8 8 a3 a6 9 cd

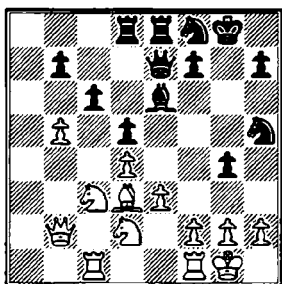
Transferring the game into the Carlsbad structure. However, in an attack by the pawn minority White's queen's rook is better placed on b1, and the inclusion of the moves 8 a3 a6 was useful for

Black. That's why it probably would have been more expedient to play 9 c5, constraining his opponent on the queenside.

9 ... ed 10 ♖d3 c6 11 0-0 ♟f8
12 ♜c2 ♟h5

An unpromising plan, as soon becomes clear. He should have fought for counterplay with the help of 12 ... ♟e4 or 12 ... ♟g6.

13 ♜xe7 ♜xe7 14 b4 ♜e6 15 ♜b2
♜ad8 16 a4 g5 17 b5 ab 18 ab g4
19 ♟d2



The battle unfolds on both flanks simultaneously. However, while White has already created a target for attack for himself – the c6 pawn – Black doesn't yet have anything realistic on the kingside.

19 ... ♜c8 20 ♜fe1 f5 21 ♟a2 ♜d6
22 bc bc 23 ♜b6 ♜d7 24 ♟b4 ♟f6
25 ♜c2

Clearly, no good was 25 ♟xc6 due to 25 ... ♜e6 26 ♜b5 ♜c8, and a piece is lost.

25 ... ♟e4 26 ♜xe4 fe 27 ♜ec1
♜f6 28 ♜b7 ♜e7 29 ♜a8 ♜f7
30 ♟f1 h5 31 ♟g3 h4 32 ♟h5 ♜g5
33 ♜b8 ♜h6 34 ♟f4 g3 35 ♟xc6

White is rushing. After 35 fg hg 36 h3 Black's attack has dried up and the weakness of the c6 pawn is still there.

35 ... gf+ 36 ♟xf2 ♜xc6 37 ♜xc6
♜xc6 38 ♜xc6 h3

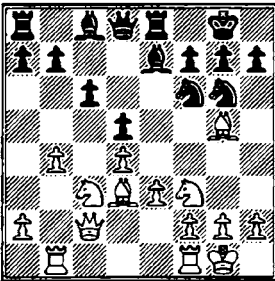
Black is defending very resourcefully, but it's already difficult for him to correct the consequences of his mistaken opening strategy.

39 gh ♜h5 40 ♟e1 ♜f3 41 ♜g6+
♟h7 42 ♜g3 ♜h1+ 43 ♟d2 ♜a1
44 ♜c8 ♜a2+ 45 ♟e1 ♜a1+ 46 ♟e2
♜b2+ 47 ♟f1 ♟g6 48 ♜g4 ♜xf4+
49 ef ♜c1+ 50 ♟f2 ♜d2+ 51 ♜e2
♜xd4+ 52 ♜e3 ♜b2+ 53 ♟f1 ♜a1+
54 ♟e2 ♜b2+ 55 ♟f1 ♜a1+ 56 ♟e2
♜b2+ 57 ♟d1 ♜b1+ 58 ♜c1
♜xc1+ 59 ♟xc1 ♟xf4 60 ♜g4!, and
White won this endgame.

Practice has shown that a counterattack is a more effective method of counterplay. It develops much faster, and White has to be very attentive to his opponent's ideas.

Queen's Gambit
Furman – Klovnan
Moscow, 1964

1 d4 d5 2 c4 c6 3 ♖f3 e6 4 cd ed
5 ♗c3 ♗f6 6 ♙g5 ♙e7 7 ♚c2 ♗bd7
8 e3 0-0 9 ♙d3 ♙e8 10 0-0 ♗f8
11 ♙ab1 ♗g6 12 b4



The attack begins. What will Black do about it?

12 ... ♗e4 13 ♙xe7 ♚xe7 14 ♙fe1

More standard is 14 ♙xe4, as now Black quickly manages to create piece pressure on the queenside.

14 ... ♗xc3 15 ♚xc3 ♙g4 16 ♗d2 ♙ac8

Combining attack and defence. Now 17 ♙b5 brings no success due to 17 ... cb 18 ♚b3 a6 19 ♚xd5 ♙e6 with better play for Black.

17 ♙bc1 ♗h4 18 ♙f1

No help either is 18 f3 - 18 ... ♙h3 19 g3 ♗f5 20 ♙e2 ♚g5 with a strong attack.

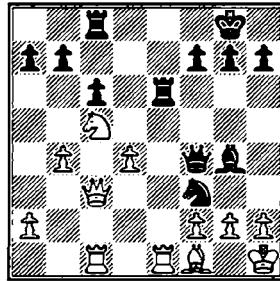
18 ... ♚g5

Black has clearly overtaken his opponent by creating threats.

19 ♗h1 ♙e6 20 e4

Also after the better 20 f3 Black retains the initiative: 20 ... ♙h3! 21 ♙e2 ♙g6 22 g3 ♙xf1 23 ♙xf1 ♗f5 etc.

20 ... de 21 ♗xe4 ♚f4 22 ♗c5 ♗f3!



23 g3

On 23 gf decisive was 23 ... ♙h6.

23 ... ♙h6 24 h3 ♙hx3+ 25 ♙hx3 ♚h6

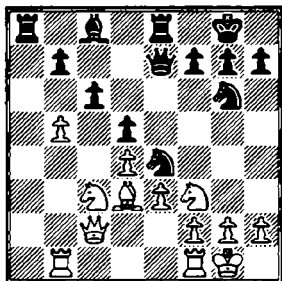
White resigned.

Taimanov – Nezhmetdinov
Kiev, 1954

The first 10 moves of the game developed as in the previous game.

11 ♙ab1 a5 12 a3 ♗e4 13 ♙xe7

♖xe7 14 b4 ab 15 ab ♘g6 16 b5

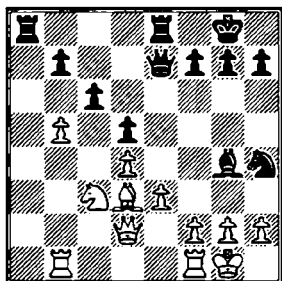


White is purposefully carrying out his plan, not paying attention to his opponent's actions and possibilities. Meanwhile he could have put a stop to the initiative that Black is brewing up with 16 ♙xe4 de 17 ♘d2.

16 ... ♙g4 17 ♘d2

And here 17 ♙xe4 was already essential.

17 ... ♘xd2 18 ♖xd2 ♘h4!



It is becoming clear that White doesn't have a sufficient defence to the threats of 19 ... ♙f3, 19 ... ♙h3 and 19 ... ♘f3+. In

the game Baranov-Matsukevich (Leningrad, 1969) he tried to save himself with the help of 19 ♖h1, but after 19 ... ♘f3! had to resign the game.

19 f3

In practice the best decision. White gives up a pawn to save himself from a mating attack, which, of course, doesn't solve all his problems.

19 ... ♖xe3+ 20 ♖xe3 ♗xe3 21 fg ♗xd3 22 bc bc 23 ♘e2 ♗d2 24 ♗f2 h6 25 ♗bf1

Now simpler than the other possibilities was 25 ... ♗a2, forcing the exchange of rooks, but Black also retained chances for a win after the actual move 25 ... ♘g6.

Sometimes Black has managed to combine plans for a pawn and piece attack on the enemy king.

Queen's Gambit

Zakharov – Matsukevich

Volgograd, 1968

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 ♘c3 ♙e7 4 ♘f3 ♘f6 5 ♙g5 0-0 6 e3 ♘bd7 7 ♗c1 a6 8 cd ed 9 ♙d3 ♗e8 10 0-0 ♘f8 11 ♖c2 c6 12 ♗b1

Everything is ready for an attack by the pawn minority.

12 ... ♖e4 13 ♙f4

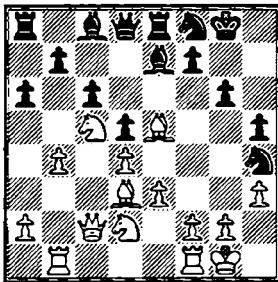
The bishop isn't managing to demonstrate the necessary activity along this diagonal. Moreover, it's in a shaky position itself, providing Black with tempi to implement his plan. More solid appears 13 ♙xe7 ♜xe7 14 ♙xe4 de 15 ♖d2.

13 ... ♖g5 14 ♖d2 ♖ge6 15 ♙g3 h5

It's high time for White to think about defence, and it made sense to start with 16 f3.

16 h3 g6 17 b4 ♖g7 18 ♖a4 ♖f5 19 ♙e5 ♖h4 20 ♖c5

White isn't attentive enough to his opponent's possibilities here either. It was necessary to make a prophylactic move – 20 ♖h1 or 20 ♙g3.



At first glance White is even outstripping Black in carrying out his plans. The c5 knight is keeping the queenside under pressure and

the a2 pawn is ready to join the attack. But Black has also created dangerous tactical threats, the main hero of which will be the h4 knight.

20 ... ♙xh3! 21 gh ♙xc5 22 bc ♜xe5!

There's no longer time to take the rook, he has to move his king away immediately.

23 ♖h2 ♜g5 24 ♜g1 ♜xg1 25 ♜xg1 ♜f6 26 f4 ♜e8 27 ♜g3 ♜xe3! 28 ♖f1

On 28 ♜xe3 would have come 28 ... ♜xf4+ 29 ♜g3 ♜f2+ with a win.

28 ... ♜xf4 29 ♜c1 ♜f2+

White resigned.

For Black another method of fighting against an attack by the pawn minority has been to undertake counteraction on the queenside.

Queen's Gambit
Polugaevsky – Spassky
Leningrad, 1963

1 c4 ♖f6 2 ♖c3 e6 3 ♖f3 d5 4 d4 ♙e7 5 cd ed 6 ♙g5 c6 7 ♜c2 g6

By this method Black strives to exchange off the light-squared bishops.

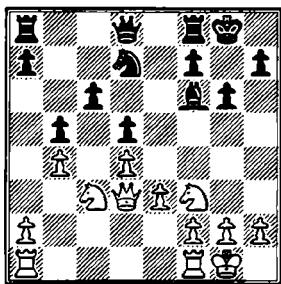
8 e3 ♙f5 9 ♙d3 ♙xd3 10 ♚xd3 0-0

More accurate, evidently, is 10 ... ♗bd7.

11 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 12 b4 ♗d7 13 0-0

And here 13 b5 deserved attention.

13 ... b5!



Black has gained a great deal. He has exchanged off the light-squared bishops, which is advantageous to him upon the pawn configuration that is being created. The pawn attack has come to a standstill, and if the knight is able to get from d7 over to c4, then it's already White who'll have to think about equalising.

14 a4 a6 15 a5!

Covering the knight's path to c4. However, now the position closes up and Black's main problems are behind him.

15 ... ♞e8 16 ♗e2 ♙e7 17 ♚b3 ♙d6 18 ♗c1 g5 19 ♗d3 g4 20 ♗d2 ♞e6 21 ♞fc1 ♚g5 22 ♞a2 ♞ae8 23 ♞ac2 ♚h6 24 ♗f1 ♙b8 25 ♗c5

In essence a draw offer, but White doesn't appear to have any opportunities to strengthen his position.

25 ... ♗xc5 26 ♞xc5 ♞g6 27 ♚c2 ♞ee6 28 g3 ♗g7 29 ♚f5

Draw.

Sometimes Black fends off his opponent's pawn attack on the queenside with the help of piece cover rather than pawn cover.

Queen's Gambit

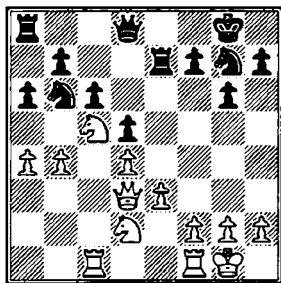
Trifunovich – Pirc

Saltsjöbaden, 1948

1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♗c3 d5 4 ♙g5 ♙e7 5 e3 0-0 6 ♞c1 ♗bd7 7 ♗f3 c6 8 ♚c2 ♞e8 9 a3 a6 10 cd ed 11 ♙d3 ♗f8 12 0-0 g6

The idea of Black's last two moves is to prepare an exchange of the light-squared bishops, aided by the forthcoming knight manoeuvre ♗f8-e6-g7 and then ♙c8-f5.

13 ♗a4 ♗e6 14 ♙h4 ♗g7 15 ♗c5 ♗d7 16 ♙xe7 ♞xe7 17 b4 ♗b6 18 a4 ♙f5 19 ♗d2 ♙xd3 20 ♚xd3



20 ... ♖f5

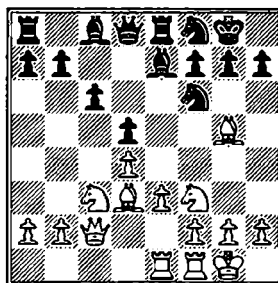
Here followed a draw agreement. In this position Black already has his own counter-arguments. He intends to play 21 ... ♖d6, penetrating to c4 with one of his knights. If White plays 21 b5, though, possible is 21 ... cb 22 ab a5, obtaining an active passed pawn.

Practice gives us numerous examples of different modifications to the plans we've been looking at. The active side is usually White. For example, he can appear to be preparing for an attack by the pawn minority and unexpectedly switch to play in the centre associated with the breakthrough e3-e4.

Queen's Gambit
Tal – Vaganian
Moscow, 1975

1 ♖f3 d5 2 d4 ♖f6 3 c4 c6 4 ♖c3
e6 5 ♖g5 ♖bd7 6 cd ed 7 e3 ♖e7

8 ♖d3 0-0 9 ♗c2 ♞e8 10 0-0 ♖f8
11 ♞ae1



The start of an original plan.

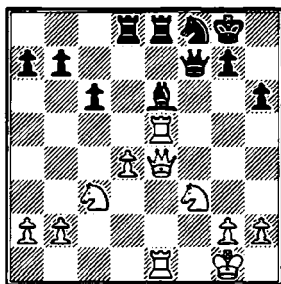
11 ... ♖e4 12 ♖xe7 ♗xe7 13 ♖xe4
de 14 ♖d2 f5 15 f3

White's intentions are becoming clear. Having provoked weaknesses he opens up the centre, planning to exploit the tactical peculiarities of the position to his advantage.

15 ... ef 16 ♖xf3 ♖e6 17 e4 fe
18 ♞xe4 ♞ad8

The primary source game is Marshall-Rubinstein (Moscow, 1925), where White first used a similar plan. Then came 19 ♞e5 h6 20 ♖e4 ♗b4 (stronger is 20 ... ♗c7 and then ♖e6-d5) 21 a3 ♗c4 22 ♗f2 with a better game.

19 ♞fe1 h6 20 ♞e5 ♗f7 21 ♗e4



Queen's Gambit
Karpov – Spassky
Leningrad, 1974

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♗f3 d5 4 ♗c3
♙e7 5 ♙g5 h6 6 ♙h4 0-0 7 e3 b6
8 ♙e2 ♙b7 9 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 10 cd ed
11 0-0 ♚d6 12 ♛c1 a6 13 a3 ♘d7
14 b4 b5 15 ♘e1 c6 16 ♘d3

The White pieces are positioned very menacingly, but Black's defensive resources are far from exhausted. Now completely solid was 21 ... ♙d5 22 ♘xd5 ♛xe5 – White has only a slight advantage.

21 ... ♛d6 22 ♚e3 ♘d7 23 ♛a5 ♘f6 24 ♚f4 ♛ed8 25 ♛xa7 ♚d7 26 ♘a4 ♘d5 27 ♚g3 ♚c7 28 ♘c5 ♙c8 29 ♘e5 ♛f6 30 ♘e4 ♛f4 31 ♘g6 ♚b6 32 ♘xf4 ♚xa7 33 ♘xd5

White preserved his advantage by continuing 33 ♘h5! ♚xd4+ 34 ♙h1 ♙h8 35 ♘ef6 g5 36 ♘xd5 Now, though, the chances have equalised again.

33 ... ♚xd4+ 34 ♚e3

Draw.

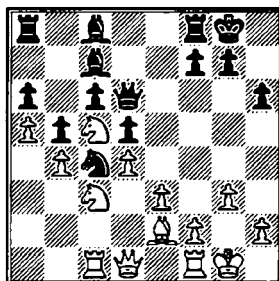
White may combine two plans rather than treat them separately in the game. First carry out an attack by the pawn minority to deflect the opponent's forces to the queenside – and then it's already time to make a break in the centre.

A typical Carlsbad structure has arisen out of the Tartakower variation. Now Black needed to play 16 ... a5, creating a weak b4 pawn for White and opening the a-file. Then he could transfer the knight to c4, obtaining fully-fledged chances.

16 ... ♘b6 17 a4! ♙d8

And here 17 ... ♘c4 18 ♘c5 ♛ab8 looked more solid with chances of a successful defence. By removing the attack on the d4 pawn, Black makes it easier for his opponent to organise the e3-e4 breakthrough.

18 ♘c5 ♙c8 19 a5 ♙c7 20 g3 ♘c4



White has everything ready, and he opens up the position, after which the c4 knight loses its support, the approaches to the c6 pawn are freed up, and Black's pieces lose their coordination.

21 e4 ♖h3 22 ♜e1 de 23 ♜3xe4 ♜g6 24 ♖h5 ♜h7 25 ♜f3 f5 26 ♜c3 g6 27 ♜xc6 gh 28 ♜d5 f4 29 ♜e7 ♜f5 30 ♜xc7 ♜ae8 31 ♜xh6 ♜f7 32 ♜xf7 ♜xf7 33 ♜xf4 ♜e2 34 ♜c7+ ♜f8 35 ♜f4

Black resigned.

And now let's look at another variety of the central strategy, when White builds a pawn centre by means of f2-f3 and e2-e4. This plan is quite dangerous and requires well thought out counteractions.

Queen's Gambit

Botvinnik – Keres

Moscow, 1952

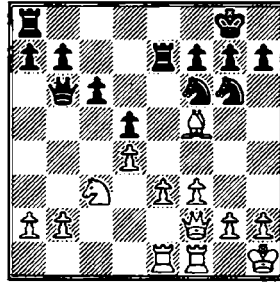
1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♜c3 d5 4 cd ed 5 ♖g5 ♖e7 6 e3 0-0 7 ♖d3 ♜bd7 8 ♜c2 ♜e8 9 ♜ge2 ♜f8 10 0-0 c6 11 ♜ab1 ♖d6

An inaccuracy leading to a loss at time. The move 11 ... ♜h5 looked good, exchanging the dark-squared bishops.

12 ♜h1 ♜g6 13 f3! ♖e7 14 ♜be1 ♜d7 15 ♖xe7 ♜xe7 16 ♜g3

White consequently prepares the advance e3-e4.

16 ... ♜f6 17 ♜f2 ♖e6 18 ♜f5 ♖xf5 19 ♖xf5 ♜b6



All the necessary manoeuvres have been completed and the time for the main events has come.

20 e4! de 21 fe ♜d8 22 e5 ♜d5 23 ♜e4 ♜f8 24 ♜d6 ♜c7 25 ♖e4 ♜e6 26 ♜h4 g6 27 ♖xd5 cd 28 ♜c1 ♜d7 29 ♜c3 ♜f8

White's strategy has been crowned with complete success. Black never managed to create any kind of counterplay, and his king is under attack.

30 ♜f5! ♜fe8

The knight can't be taken because of mate in three, and a retreat of the e7 rook would have been punished after 31 ♜h6+ ♜h8 32 ♜f6+ ♜g7 33 ♜xf7+ ♜g8 34 ♜h6+ ♜h8 35 ♜xf8+.

31 ♜h6+ ♜f8 32 ♜f6 ♜g7 33 ♜cf3 ♜c8 34 ♜xf7 ♜e6 35 ♜g5 ♜f5 36 ♜h6 ♜g7 37 g4

Black resigned.

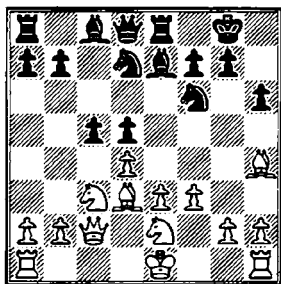
As we see, the plan of attacking in the centre with f2-f3 and e3-e4 demands careful and well thought out counteractions from Black. One of the correct reactions to it is a c6-c5 breach in the centre.

Queen's Gambit
Botvinnik – Larsen
 Nordwijk, 1965

1 c4 e6 2 ♖c3 d5 3 d4 ♘f6 4 cd ed 5 ♗g5 c6 6 e3 ♗e7 7 ♚c2 0-0 8 ♗d3 ♘bd7 9 ♘ge2 h6

Rather than combating White's plans, this actually promotes them. His bishop transfers to a better position.

10 ♗h4 ♞e8 11 f3 c5

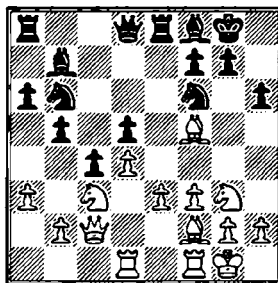


The d4 pawn is now under stress, and it isn't easy for White to embark on a breach in the centre.

12 0-0 a6 13 ♞ad1 b5 14 ♗f2 c4

The key mistake. Now the advance e3-e4-e5 is unavoidable.

15 ♗f5 ♘b6 16 ♘g3 ♗f8 17 a3 ♗b7



White has everything ready, and he launches into decisive action.

18 e4 g6 19 ♗h3 a5 20 e5 b4 21 ♘ce2 ♘h7 22 f4 ♗c6 23 ♞a1 ♗a4 24 ♚b1 f5 25 ab ab 26 ♘xf5! gf 27 ♗xf5 ♚e7 28 ♘g3 ♗d7 29 ♗xd7 ♘xd7 30 ♚g6+ ♚g7 31 ♚c6 ♞xa1 32 ♞xa1 ♚f7 33 ♞a7 ♘xe5 34 de ♚e6 35 ♚xe6+ ♞xe6 36 ♘f5

White has won the piece back and eventually also won the game.

The plan that Botvinnik developed seemed so awful for Black that many people started playing the Queen's Gambit like this: 1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 ♘c3 ♗e7. The idea of the early bishop move is to force White, if he wants to play the position with the Carlsbad structure, to go 4 ♘f3, eliminating his chance to play ♘g1-e2-g3.

With castling on opposite sides, when White castles queenside,

Black should act very energetically and, after making preparations, play the move c6-c5, opening up the game.

his opponent. After the exchange of queens Black would have had an excellent game.

Queen's Gambit
Polugaevsky – Klován
 Leningrad, 1963

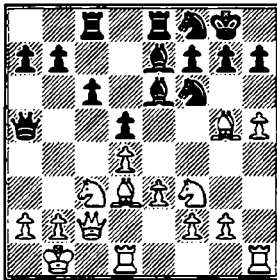
1 c4 ♘f6 2 d4 e6 3 ♘c3 d5 4 cd ed 5 ♙g5 ♙e7 6 e3 0-0 7 ♙d3 ♘bd7 8 ♘f3 c6 9 ♗c2 ♞e8 10 0-0-0 ♚f8 11 h4 ♙e6 12 ♚b1 ♞c8 13 h5 ♜a5

20 h6 gh 21 e4 ♘b6 22 ♘b5 ♗d7 23 ♘xa7 ♞a8 24 dc and White soon won.

Black has placed his pieces well and intends to start a counter-attack with the move 14 ... c5. At the same time all the squares on the kingside are adequately defended. Foreseeing that his opponent's attack could be dangerous, White forces exchanges.

The advance c6-c5 is Black's main weapon upon opposite-side castling. However, it must be used very circumspectly, otherwise White, seizing the moment, can forego the kingside attack and switch to playing against the isolated d5 pawn.

Queen's Gambit
Petrosian – Ilivitsky
 Moscow, 1964



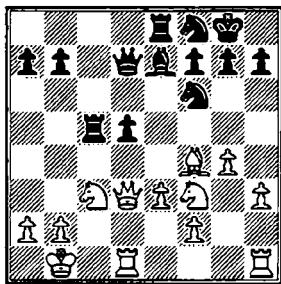
1 c4 e6 2 ♘c3 d5 3 d4 ♙e7 4 cd ed 5 ♙f4 c6 6 e3 ♘f6 7 ♙d3 0-0 8 ♘f3 ♘bd7 9 ♗c2 ♞e8 10 g4 ♘f8 11 h3 ♙e6 12 0-0-0 ♞c8 13 ♚b1

14 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 15 ♙f5 c5 16 ♙xe6 fe 17 ♗d2 ♗a6 18 ♞he1 ♘d7 19 ♗e2 ♗c6

The kings have diverged to opposite sides and mutual attacks are imminent. Now Black should have played 13 ... ♗a5, heightening the pressure on the the enemy king's position. The somewhat impulsive break by the c6 pawn has allowed White to employ an original counter-plan.

A mistake that ruins everything and hands the initiative over to

13 ... c5?! 14 ♙b5! ♙d7 15 ♙xd7 ♗xd7 16 dc ♞xc5 17 ♗d3



That's why in the process of practical play both players inevitably create weak and strong points. A square upon which one of the pieces can be solidly planted is considered a strong point. A strong square for one of the players will naturally be a weak one for the other.

White has a clear advantage, determined not only by the weakness of the d5 pawn, but also the d4 and e5 squares. Nevertheless, Black's situation is still not too bad either. He should have reinforced his play on the c-file – 17 ... ♖ec8. For example, 18 ♖c1 ♗e6 or 18 g5 ♖xc3! 19 bc ♗e4, in both cases with counter-chances.

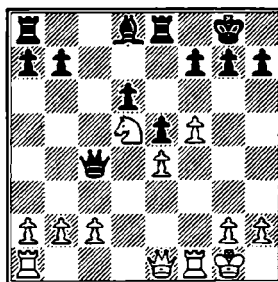
17 ... ♖d8 18 ♗d4 ♖cc8 19 ♗f5 ♖b4 20 ♖e5 ♖xc3 21 ♖xc3 ♗e6 22 ♗xg7! ♗xg7 23 g5 ♗d7 24 ♗xd5!

Black resigned.

Drawing a conclusion from the examples we've studied, we can note the universality of the Carlsbad structure, which allows both players to undertake the most varied plans in all parts of the board.

Every movement of a pawn involuntarily weakens some squares and strengthens others.

Smyslov – Rudakovsky
Moscow, 1945



The knight on d5 cannot be ousted or exchanged for a piece of equivalent value. It controls many squares in Black's camp and is severely constraining him. With the support of such a knight, which has received from chess players the name 'eternal', it's fairly easy for White to organise a decisive attack on the enemy king.

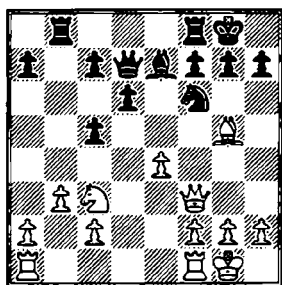
18 c3 b5 19 b3 ♗c5+ 20 ♗h1 ♖c8 21 ♖f3 ♗h8 22 f6! gf 23 ♗h4 ♖g8 24 ♗xf6 ♖g7 25 ♖g3 ♖xf6 26 ♗xf6 ♖g8 27 ♖d1 d5 28 ♖xg7

Black resigned.

Let's look at a few more examples, in which an 'eternal' knight decided the outcome of the battle.

Four Knights Game
Levenfish – Dubinin
 Moscow, 1934

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘f6 3 ♘c3 ♘c6
 4 ♙b5 d6 5 d4 ed 6 ♘xd4 ♙d7
 7 ♙xc6 bc 8 ♚f3 c5 9 ♘f5 ♙xf5
 10 ♚xf5 ♚d7 11 ♚f3 ♚b8 12 0-0
 ♙e7 13 b3 0-0 14 ♙g5



In the play so far Black has already committed several inaccuracies. He has weak light squares. After preparation White threatens to exchange on f6 and seize the d5 square.

14 ... ♘d5?

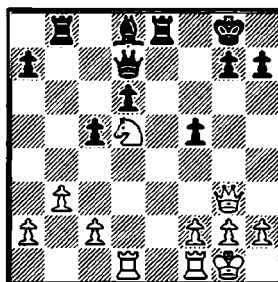
A typical mistake. The white knight on d5 would be appreciably stronger on a dark square.

15 ♘xd5 ♙xg5 16 ♚g3 ♙d8

17 ♚ad1

It isn't easy to drive the knight away as, after 17 ... c6, the d6 pawn becomes much weaker.

17 ... f5 18 e5! ♚e8 19 ed cd



White has successfully completed the first stage of his plan – he has an 'eternal' knight in the centre. This advantage is more than enough for a win. Relying on the powerful position of the knight, White easily organises an irrefutable attack on the kingside.

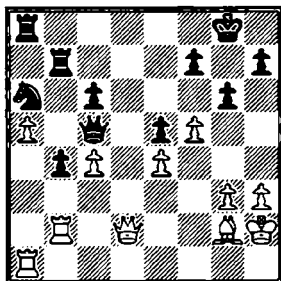
20 ♚fe1 ♚e6 21 ♘f4 ♚xe1+
 22 ♚xe1 ♙a5 23 ♘d5 ♙d8 24 h4
 ♚b7 25 c4 ♘f7 26 ♚f3 ♘g8 27 ♚e2
 g6

On 27 ... ♙xh4 unpleasant is 28 ♚h5.

28 h5 ♘f8 29 h6 ♙g5 30 ♚b2
 ♘g8 31 f4 ♙d8 32 ♘f6+! ♙xf6
 33 ♚xf6 d5 34 cd

Black resigned.

Terpugov – Bronstein
Moscow, 1951



White has a completely acceptable position. Worth considering, for example, is 32 h4. In this case it's dangerous for Black to take on c4 due to 33 ♖c1. Meanwhile White intends to continue h4-h5, ♔h3 and ♜f1 with the initiative on the kingside.

32 f6?

A serious positional error. It's clear that Black can only dream of transferring his knight to the unassailable d4 square. But White fails to prevent this and he himself loses control of the e6 square, which is a transit point on the way to Black's goal.

32 ... ♘c7 33 ♜a4 ♘a6 34 ♜h6 ♜f8 35 ♜g5

Exchanging queens was favourable for Black – he would then get the opportunity to attack the f6 pawn.

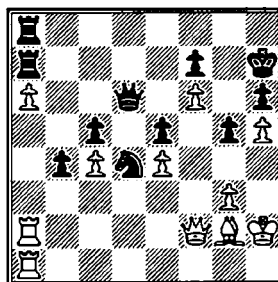
35 ... ♘c5! 36 ♜a1

No good was 36 ♜axb4 due to 36 ... ♜xb4 37 ♜xb4 ♘xe4, and Black wins material.

36 ... h6 37 ♜e3

Impossible, of course, is 37 ♜xe5 because of 37 ... ♘d3.

37 ... ♜h7 38 ♜d2 ♘e6 39 a6 ♜ba7 40 ♜da2 c5 41 h4 ♜d6 42 h5 g5 43 ♜f2 ♘d4



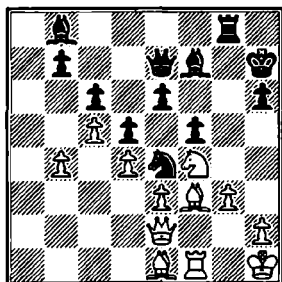
Every chess player dreams about such a knight.

44 ♜d2 ♜g8

White resigned. He is losing the a6 pawn, and Black's b4 pawn easily makes it to the queening square with the support of the unassailable knight.

Bronstein – Botvinnik

Moscow, 1951



46 ... ♖e8

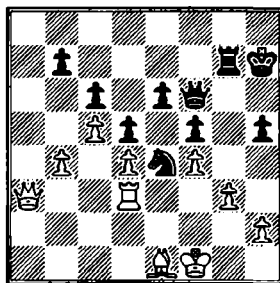
A positional trap that White doesn't spot.

47 ♜d3? ♙xf4! 48 ef ♙h5

White faces an unpleasant choice. After 49 ♙g2 ♜a8 Black seizes the open file, but in the event of 49 ♙xe4 de 50 ♜a3 ♙f3+! 51 ♙g1 ♜h5 52 ♜e3 ♜h3 53 ♜f2 ♚5 the irrefutable threat of h5-h4 arises.

Bronstein decided to allow Black an 'eternal' knight, but to try and compensate for this to some extent, he seizes the outside file.

49 ♜a3 ♙xf3+ 50 ♙xf3 ♙g7 51 ♙g2 ♜d8 52 ♙f1 ♜f6 53 ♙d3 h5



Black's plan consists of the following: threatening h5-h4, he forces his opponent to advance his own pawn to h4 then, by attacking the arising weak squares, he pins down White's pieces to their defence and wins the important a-thoroughfare back from him.

54 h4 ♙g8

Black intends to place his queen on g7, so as, maintaining the pressure on the d4 pawn, to create the threat of invading via g4. For example, on 55 ♜a7 follows 55 ... ♜g7, and White is in zugzwang. Upon a retreat by the queen he has 56 ... ♜g4, and after 56 ♜b6 ♙a8 Black gets the a-file.

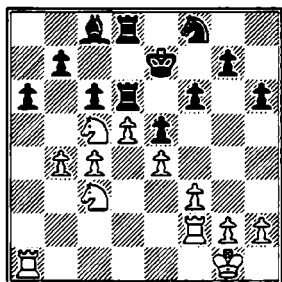
55 ♙d1 ♜g7 56 ♜f3 ♙h6 57 ♙g2 ♙a8, and Black has obtained a winning position.

The weakness of squares becomes even more dangerous the closer these squares are

situated to the vitally important areas of the position. So it's particularly annoying when enemy pieces penetrate to the sixth (or third) rank.

Romanovsky – Smorodsky

Moscow, 1924



White is conducting an attack. His pawn formation has already broken through to the fifth rank and is severely constraining Black. White unquestionably has various ways to exploit the advantage he has at his disposal. He chooses the plan of getting to the sixth rank with his knights, to the squares d6 and b6. That's why the c5 knight leaves its strong position, to penetrate the enemy position even more deeply.

31 Qb3 Ke7 32 c5 Ne6d7

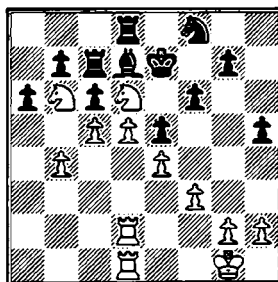
Here 33 d6 looks tempting, but strange as it may seem, this would only help Black to free himself up

a little. After Ke8 and Ne7 Black then uses the e6 square to bring his knight and bishop into play. Moreover, by occupying the d6 square with a pawn, White would be denied a good place for an incursion by one of the knights.

33 Qa5

The knight is heading for d6 via c4.

33 ... Ne7 34 Nd1 h5 35 Nfd2
 Ncd7 36 Qa4 Ke8 37 Qb6 Nc7
 38 Qac4 Ke7 39 Qd6+ Ke7



The goal has been achieved. Black is so constrained that there's no doubt about the outcome of the game. White can win by various knight jumps. Possible is 40 Qf5+ with the idea of 40 ... Kxf5 41 d6+, and also convincing is 40 Qxb7 Nxb7 41 dc. But there's also a third route.

40 Qb5!

Black resigned.

Queen's Indian Defence
Alekhine – Capablanca
 New York, 1927

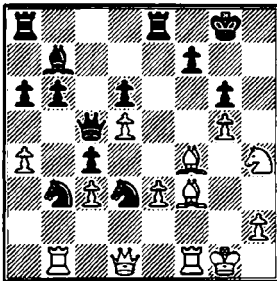
1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♖f3 b6 4 g3
 ♙b7 5 ♙g2 c5 6 d5 ed 7 ♖h4 g6
 8 ♖c3 ♙g7 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♙f4 d6
 11 cd ♖h5 12 ♙d2 ♖d7 13 f4

A move deserving of censure, as it is the start of an incorrect idea. The move 13 e4 didn't look bad with the threat of ♖f5, and if 13 ... ♖hf6, then f2-f4 can already be played.

13 ... a6 14 ♙f3 ♖hf6 15 a4 c4

Black fixes on the weak b3 square, planning to transfer his knight there via c5.

16 ♙e3 ♗c7 17 g4 ♖c5 18 g5
 ♖fd7 19 f5 ♗fe8 20 ♙f4 ♙e5
 21 ♙g4 ♖b3 22 fg hg 23 ♗b1 ♙xc3
 24 bc ♗c5+ 25 e3 ♖e5 26 ♙f3
 ♖d3!



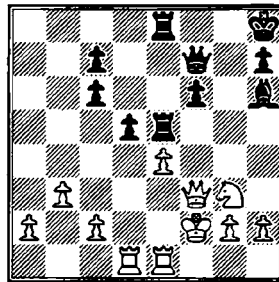
An instructive position. White has been constrained and he can't avoid major losses.

27 ♖h1 ♙xd5 28 ♗xb3 ♖xf4
 29 ♗b1 ♗xe3 30 ♖g2 ♗xf3! 31 ♗xf3
 ♖xg2 32 ♖xg2 ♗e8 33 ♖f1 ♙xf3
 34 ♗xf3 ♗xg5 35 ♗e1 ♗xe1+, and
 Black won.

An achievement that is just as significant, and at times decisive, is an incursion into and reinforcement on the sixth (or third) rank by the bishops, especially on the squares d6 and e6 or d3 and e3.

Tarrasch – Lasker

2nd Match Game, 1908



Now not bad was 25 ♖f5, so that on 25 ... de the reply could be 26 ♖hx6, and in the event of a retreat by the bishop – 26 ed, provoking an exchange of rooks. Tarrasch, though, immediately took on d5, as a result of which he laid bare the e3 square.

25 ed ♙e3+! 26 ♖f1 cd 27 ♗d3

White underestimates the strength of the e3 bishop. Even now it made sense to play 27 ♖f5 d4 28 ♖xe3 de 29 ♜e2, conceding to a cramped but completely defensible position.

27 ... ♜e6 28 ♜e2 f5 29 ♖h1 f4 30 ♜d1 d4

The placement of the bishop is very picturesque. And under its cover and with its cooperation

Black's attack develops without any interference.

31 ♖f2 ♜a6 32 ♖d3 ♜g5 33 ♜a1 ♜h6 34 ♖e1 ♜xh2 35 ♖d1 ♜g1+ 36 ♖e1 ♜ge5 37 ♜c6 ♜8e7 38 ♜a8+ ♖g7 39 a4 f3 40 gf ♜g5

White resigned.

Of course, other pieces can also occupy weak squares, but the formula for planning remains roughly the same in those cases, too.

Chapter Six

The centre and space

** Five typical structures * Methods and counter-methods *
Are we able to plan? **

Despite the unrepeatable and unique nature of each game, it's possible to make quite an accurate classification of typical positions that arise in them with their characteristic strategic plans. The main reference point for such a classification is the condition of the pawn structure in the centre. It's this that most often determines the plans of both sides, the direction of the game and its character.

The placing of the pawns in the centre creates five basic types of position, and in each of them many years of practice have established fairly precise plans of attacking and defensive play.

- 1 Closed centre with fixed pawn chains;
- 2 Static centre. The central pawns are fixed in pairs;
- 3 Dynamic centre. There is already pawn contact in the

centre, but the final position of the pawns hasn't been determined yet;

- 4 Mobile centre, when any of the central pawns can move;
- 5 Open centre. There are no pawns in the centre.

Whatever opening we start the game with, we have to take the first opportunity to envisage precisely which characteristic positions the game is heading towards and which strategic plans are typical for the structures that are arising.

Positions with a closed centre often arise in the Ruy Lopez, the French Defence or the King's Indian.

Positions with a dynamic centre are characteristic for half-open openings and primarily in Sicilian Defence games.

The mobile pawn centre is a feature of the Evans Gambit,

Alekhine's Defence, the Grünfeld Defence and a few other openings.

Open and static centres are created in the Ruy Lopez, the King's Gambit, the Slav Defence and the Queen's Gambit accepted.

1 Closed centre

In positions with pawn chains situated on the central squares the game, naturally, moves to the flanks. Attacks take place on the side where there are open lines, or where superiority of forces can be created in the shortest time. With opposite-side castling, as a rule, the attack occurs on the side where the opponent's king is located.

Plan of attack:

Prepare a flank attack with the aid of a pawn storm. Its goal is to clear a path for the attacking pieces.

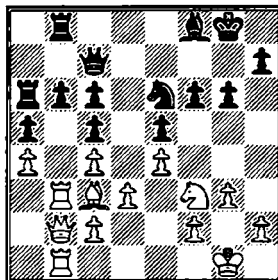
Plan of defence:

Counterattack on the other side or place obstacles in the way of the opponent's pawn attack.

Basis of the active plan – pawn storm on the flank.

Gelfand – Van Wely

Plovdiv, 2003



With a static, fixed pawn position in the centre White has managed to saddle his opponent with a backward pawn on the queenside and tie his pieces to the defence of that pawn. However, one such weakness isn't enough for a win – Black can successfully defend it. That's why White sets about transferring his pieces to the kingside.

22 ♖c1! ♗d6

Certainly more chances for a defence were promised by 22 ... ♗d4, exchanging off the knights and creating a pawn wedge on d4, restraining his opponent's actions.

23 ♖f1! ♖d7 24 h4 h5

This only speeds up the pawn contact, which of course favours White. Here, too, it made sense to look for chances, by operating via the centre – 24 ... ♗d4.

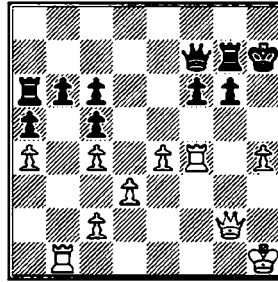
25 ♖h3 ♗c7 26 ♗d2 ♗d8 27 ♖h1
 ♖h7 28 ♗g1 ♗a8 29 g4 ♗g7?!

The last chance to hold back the attack was 29 ... ♗f4!? 30 ♗xf4 ef.

30 ♖h2 hg 31 ♗xg4 ♗h5 32 ♗b1
 ♗g8 33 ♗bg1 ♗d6 34 ♗g2 ♗f7

Compare the position in the next diagram with the first one. The weakness on b6 remains – but the battle has completely moved over to the kingside. White's advantage has increased.

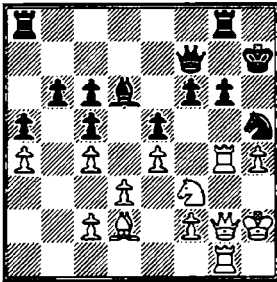
43 ♗xf4 ♗xf4 44 ♗xf4



A new phase of the battle. Black's weaknesses have increased, 45 e5 is threatened.

44 ... ♗a8

Now 45 ♗xb6? ♗c7 doesn't work. The tempting try 44 ... g5 doesn't help either: 45 hg ♖h5+ 46 ♖h2 ♖xh2+ 47 ♖xh2 fg 48 ♗f8 – the endgame is hopeless for Black.



35 ♗g5

A little joke.

35 ... ♗e7 36 ♗g4 ♗f8 37 ♗b1
 ♗a6 38 ♗g1 ♗h6

Upon the waiting tactic 38 ... ♗d6 39 ♗h3 ♗e8 40 ♗f3 White would double the rooks on the g-file with the threat of ♗xg6.

39 ♗xh6 ♖xh6 40 ♗h3 ♖h7
 41 ♖h1 ♗g7 42 f4! ef

It was worth fighting for the e5 square by 42 ... ♗e6.

45 ♗f2 ♗f8 46 ♗xb6 ♗c7 47 ♗b1
 ♗e5 48 h5 gh 49 ♗f5 ♗e8 50 ♗xc5
 ♖h6 51 ♗bf1 ♗g6 52 ♗e3+ ♖h7
 53 ♗h3 ♖h6 54 e5 ♗gf7 55 ♗e3+
 ♖h7 56 ♗f3

Black resigned.

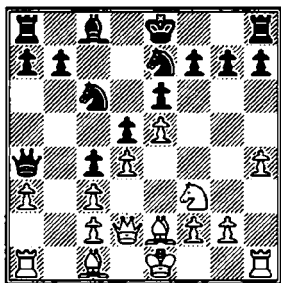
French Defence

Smyslov – Botvinnik

Match-Tournament, 1941

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♗c3 ♗b4 4 e5
 c5 5 a3 ♗xc3+ 6 bc ♗e7 7 ♗f3
 ♗bc6 8 ♗d3 ♗a5 9 ♗d2 c4 10 ♗e2
 ♗a4 11 h4!

The centre is closed and Black's pieces are located on the queenside, so it's natural to start an attack on the other half of the board, where White has a large amount of space for his pieces and can quickly bring his reserves into the attack.



11 ... ♗d7 12 h5 h6

Otherwise White himself will play 13 h6, with a subsequent incursion on the dark squares.

13 ♖h4 ♗f5 14 ♖xf5 ef 15 ♜g1 ♗e7 16 g4 fg 17 ♗xg4 ♗xg4 18 ♗xg4

The lines on the kingside are gradually opening, and the battle is moving over entirely to that part of the board.

18 ... ♗f5 19 ♜e2 ♜d7 20 ♜f4 ♜e6

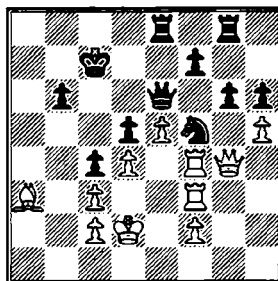
20 ... g5 is not possible due to 21 e6! winning.

21 ♜f3 g6 22 a4 0-0-0 23 ♗a3 b6 24 ♗d2 ♜hg8 25 ♜b1 ♗b7 26 a5

♜c8 27 ab ab 28 ♜g4 ♗c6 29 ♜h1 ♗d7

The threat was 30 hg fg 31 ♜xh6.

30 ♜h3 ♜ce8 31 ♜hf3 ♗c7



32 ♜h3

An important moment. White should have undertaken an attack on the kingside, but now that the time has come to crown his overall strategy, he declines a combinational resolution of the position. The correct continuation was 32 hg fg 33 ♜xf5! gf 34 ♜xf5. With the support of the bishop, rook and two fast-moving passed pawns, he would have well-deserved chances of a win. The idea of transferring the queen to the queenside turns out to be harmless, leading only to a loss of time and a waste of the initiative.

32 ... ♜g7 33 ♜h1

Even now it's still not too late for 33 hg and 34 ♜xf5.

33 ... ♖a8 34 ♜c1 ♚gg8 35 ♜b2
 ♜a4 36 ♙d6+ ♜c6 37 ♜b1 ♚ga8
 38 ♜h1 ♜a1 39 ♜h3 ♚g1 40 hg

By now 40 ♚xf5 gf 41 ♜xf5
 doesn't save him: 41 ... ♜a1
 42 ♜xe6 ♜ad1+ 43 ♜e3 ♚ge1+
 44 ♜f4 fe, and Black wins.

40 ... ♜a1! 41 ♜e3 ♜ad1+ 42 ♜e2
 ♜xd4+

White resigned.

*Basis of the defensive plan -
 counterplay on the other side.*

French Defence

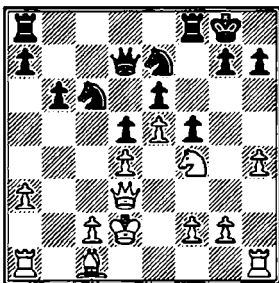
Reshevsky - Botvinnik

Match-Tournament, 1948

1 d4 e6 2 e4 d5 3 ♘c3 ♙b4 4 e5
 c5 5 a3 ♙xc3+ 6 bc ♜c7 7 ♜g4 f5
 8 ♜g3 cd 9 cd ♜e7 10 ♜d2

Possible, of course, and less
 committal is 10 ♙d2.

10 ... 0-0 11 ♙d3 b6 12 ♜e2 ♙a6
 13 ♜f4 ♜d7 14 ♙xa6 ♜xa6 15 ♜d3
 ♜b8 16 h4 ♜bc6



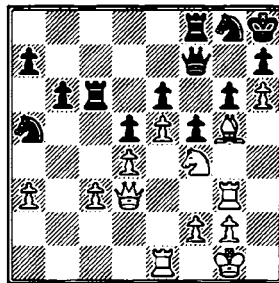
The centre is firmly closed, but
 White's king is clearly out of
 position. White employs a piece
 attack on the kingside and tries to
 move his king away to a safe
 place.

17 ♜h3 ♜ac8 18 ♚g3 ♜h8 19 h5
 ♜f7 20 h6 g6 21 ♜e1 ♜ff8 22 ♜e2
 ♜b8 23 ♜f1 ♜c4 24 ♜g1 ♜bc6

White's attack isn't strong
 enough. Meanwhile, Black's
 presence on the queenside is
 becoming more and more
 noticeable.

25 ♙g5 ♜g8 26 ♜e1 ♜f7 27 c3
 ♜a5 28 ♜f4 ♜c6

Letting the knight get to c4.



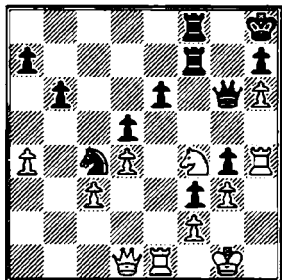
Black's position is preferable, of
 course, but after 29 ♚ge3 ♜c4
 30 ♜3e2 the closed position allows
 White to count on a successful
 defence.

29 ♙f6+?! ♜xf6 30 ef ♜c4

It isn't difficult to refute White's
 idea. The main thing is not to

rush: in the variation 30 ... ♖xf6
31 ♜ge3 the move 31 ... ♜e8 is no
defence due to the loss of the d5
pawn.

31 ♖b1 ♖xf6 32 a4 g5 33 ♠d3 f4
34 ♜h3 g4 35 ♜h1 ♜c7 36 ♖d1 ♖g6
37 ♜h4 f3 38 g3 ♜cf7 39 ♠f4



Black's space advantage is so
great that it allows him to resolve
the position by a combinational
route.

39 ... ♜xf4! 40 gf ♜xf4 41 ♖b1
♜f5 42 ♖d3 g3 43 ♖f1 gf+ 44 ♜xf2
♜g5 45 ♖h3 ♜g2+ 46 ♜xf3 ♠d2+
47 ♜e3 ♜g3+

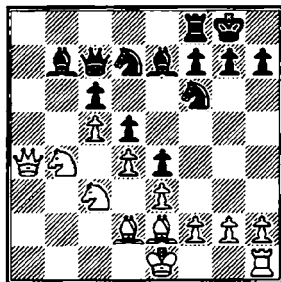
White resigned.

A passive defence usually leads
to defeat.

Dreev – Korotylev
Moscow, 2004

In the following position the
two open files on the queenside
become the main arena for the

battle. White's chances are
obviously better, as the pawn
wedge that has been created
allows him to bring his reserves
into play more quickly.



19 ♠a6! (not allowing 19 ... ♜a8)
19 ... ♖c8

Attack and defence cling to
slight nuances. Now 19 ... ♠xa6
20 ♖xa6 ♜b8 looked more
promising. The rook comes into
play, although there are no
doubts about White's positional
advantage here either.

20 0-0 ♜e8 21 ♜b1 ♠f8 22 ♠b4
♠e6 23 ♠a6

In practice it's harder to defend
with a large number of pieces –
23 ♖a7.

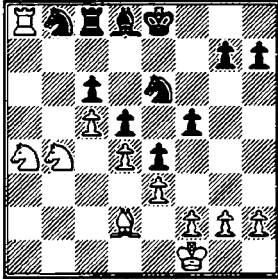
23 ... ♠xa6 24 ♖xa6 ♖xa6
25 ♠xa6 ♠d7 26 ♠b4

White could already have won a
pawn – 26 ♜b7 ♜a8 27 ♜xd7 ♜xa6
28 f3, but then the black rook
would escape to freedom.

26 ... ♖c8 27 ♙a1 ♜f8 28 ♙a7 ♜e8
29 ♘a4 ♙d8 30 ♜f1 f5

More stubborn is 30 ... ♘b8.

31 ♙a6 ♘b8 32 ♙a8



32 ... ♜d7?

A passive defence requires constant effort. Now he should have calmly played 32 ... ♘c7 33 ♙a7 ♘e6, anticipating active moves by his opponent.

33 ♘b6+ ♙xb6 34 cb ♙d8 35 f3 ef

Freeing up the d3 square for the white knight. 35 ... ♜d6 would be a more tenacious defence.

36 gf g5 37 ♘d3 ♜c8 38 ♙a5 ♙e8
39 ♙a7

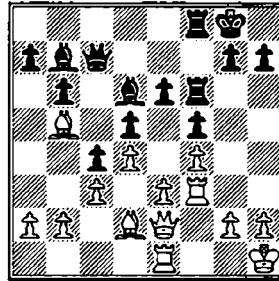
Black resigned.

Kupchik – Capablanca

Lake Hopatcong, 1926

In this game Black's main chances are on the queenside,

of course. By exploiting the bishop that has lost its way on b5, he can easily organise a pawn attack here. But first he takes preventive measures against a similar attack by his opponent on the kingside.



19 ... h5

Black's pawns are situated on the light squares. So exchanging off his light-squared bishop and keeping his dark-squared one is beneficial to him. At this juncture another possible plan arises – 19 ... ♙c6.

20 ♙ef1

It feels like White is just holding the position, playing without a precisely thought out plan. More concrete is 20 ♙h3 g6 21 ♙a4, preserving the light-squared bishop from exchange and intending to activate the second bishop via the path d2-e1-h4.

20 ... ♙h6 21 ♙e1 g6 22 ♙h4 ♜f7
23 ♙e1 a6

Everything is peaceful on the kingside, and Black launches active play on the other side of the board.

24 ♖a4 b5 25 ♙d1 ♙c6 26 ♜h3

Continuing to play without a plan. More prudent was 26 ♜h4, with the intention of transferring the dark-squared bishop to e5 via f6.

26 ... a5 27 ♙g5 ♜hh8 28 ♜h4 b4 29 ♜e1 ♜b8 30 ♜hf3 a4 31 ♜3f2 a3 32 b3

He has to play very circumspectly. The best decision was 32 ba bc 33 ♜xc3 ♜a7 34 a4 ♙xa4 35 ♙f3 ♙b4 36 ♜c1, with the intention of defending accurately and seizing any counter-chances that might crop up.

32 ... cb 33 ♙xb3 ♙b5 34 ♜g1 ♜xc3

And Black eventually won.

King's Indian Defence
Sultan Khan – Flohr
Prague, 1931

1 d4 ♘f6 2 ♘f3 g6 3 c4 ♙g7 4 ♘c3 d6 5 e4 0-0 6 ♙e3 ♘bd7

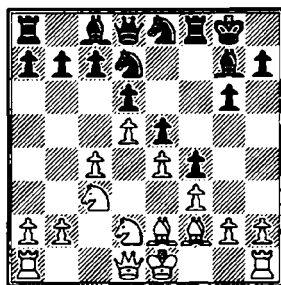
Subsequent generations of theoreticians demonstrated that more accurate here is 6 ... e5, forcing the opponent into an exchange of pawns (7 d5 ♘g4).

7 ♘d2!

Now the bishop's comfortable position is unassailable.

7 ... e5 8 d5 ♘e8 9 ♙e2 f5 10 f3 f4 11 ♙f2

The centre is completely closed. The direction of the pawn chains suggests the players' next plans: White needs to prepare an attack on the queenside and Black should show some initiative on the kingside.



11 ... a5 12 a3 Nef6

Another possibly more circumspect plan started with 12 ... ♜f7. For example, 13 b4 b6 14 ♘a4 ab 15 ab ♙f8, to defend against the attack.

13 b4 b6 14 ♘a4 ♜e8

Preparing for c4-c5 and a mass exchange on c5, Flohr reinforces the e5 pawn and frees up a spot for the bishop. But still there was the idea of exchanging first on b4, as the a5 pawn left at the edge of

the board requires considerable attention later.

15 c5 dc

On 15 ... ab there was already the retort 16 cd.

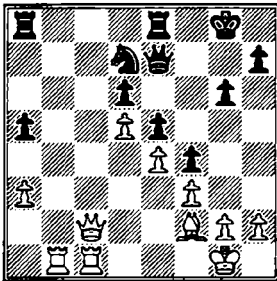
16 bc dxc5 17 dxc5 bc 18 dxc5 d7 19 dxf2 da6 20 dxa6 xa6 21 Wc2 xa8 22 0-0

Only now has he found time to castle.

22 ... dxf8 23 fxc1 dd6 24 d4 de7 25 dxd6

Destroying any hopes of 25 ... dd5 with a favourable exchange of bishops.

25 ... cd 26 ab1



White has been able to do everything that he wanted to do. He has exchanged the unnecessary bishop and retained the active one, cleared the files on the queenside and seized them. Now, for example, hopeless is 26 ... ec8 due to 27 Wxc8+ xc8 28 xc8+

cf7 29 b7 and then 30 cc7.

26 ... d8 27 Wc6 ab8 28 b6 xb6 29 Wxb6 Wd7 30 c6

As before, White controls the whole flank.

30 ... c8 31 e1!

Black resigned.

2 Mobile centre

The main weapon against a mobile pawn centre is to blockade it.

An attack on one of the central pawns forces it to advance, after which it should be blockaded – and the weakened squares in front of the pawns occupied by pieces.

French Defence

Nimzowitsch – Salwe

Carlsbad, 1911

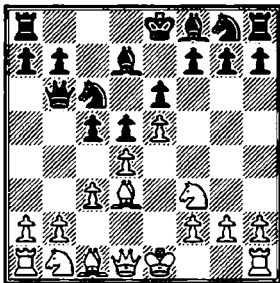
1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 c5 4 c3 c6 5 d3 Wb6 6 dd3

More circumspect is 6 de2.

6 ... dd7

The game should be planned from the first moves. Black intends first to play c8 and only then exchange on d4. But more concrete is first 6 ... cd 7 cd and only now 7 ... dd7, threatening

the d4 pawn. In that case White would have to move his bishop away – 8 ♗e2 .



7 $\text{dc!?$

A revolutionary move at the time. White voluntarily destroys his own strong pawn centre in order then to attack with his pieces.

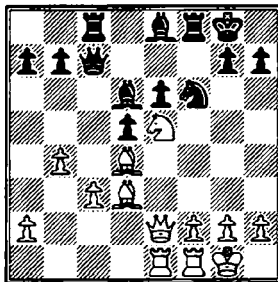
7 ... ♗xc5 8 0-0 f6 9 b4!

First the enemy bishop is chased away from the centre, and second, his own bishop gets the opportunity to come out to f4 where it controls the e5 square.

9 ... ♗e7 10 ♗f4 fe 11 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 12 ♗xe5 ♖f6

He will not manage to contest the active e5 bishop with his own bishop: 12 ... ♗f6 13 ♚h5+ g6 14 ♗xg6+! hg 15 ♚xg6+ ♗e7 16 ♗xf6+ ♖xf6 17 ♚g7+ .

13 ♖d2 0-0 14 ♖f3 ♗d6 15 ♚e2 ♗ac8 16 ♗d4 ♚c7 17 ♖e5 ♗e8 18 ♗ae1!

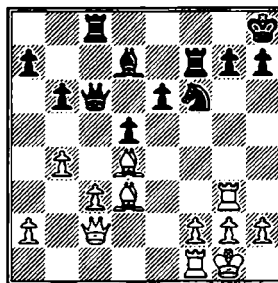


Black's pawn centre is firmly blockaded. The next stage is to exploit the long-range strength of the bishops and prepare to storm the kingside.

18 ... ♗xe5 19 ♗xe5 ♚c6 20 ♗d4 ♗d7 21 ♚c2 ♗f7 22 ♗e3

The start of a decisive attack.

22 ... b6 23 ♗g3 ♗h8



24 ♗xh7! e5

If he takes the bishop – 24 ... ♖xh7 , then the attack concludes successfully after 25 ♚g6 ♗g8 26 ♗xg7 ♖f8 27 ♚h6 .

25 ♗g6 ♗e7 26 ♗e1 ♚d6 27 ♗e3 d4 28 ♗g5 ♗xc3 29 ♗xc3 dc

30 ♖xc3 ♘g8 31 a3 ♜f8 32 ♙h4
 ♙e8 33 ♙f5 ♗d4 34 ♖xd4 ed
 35 ♚xe7 ♜xe7 36 ♙d3 ♜d6
 37 ♙xf6 gf 38 ♜f1 ♙c6 39 h4

Black resigned.

Réti Opening

Konstantinopolsky – Kotov

Baku, 1946

1 ♘f3 ♘f6 2 c4 e6 3 b3 d5 4 ♙b2
 ♙e7 5 g3 0-0 6 ♙g2 b6 7 0-0 ♘bd7
 8 cd ed 9 ♘d4 ♙b7 10 ♘f5 ♚e8
 11 ♘xe7+ ♗xe7 12 ♘c3 c6 13 d4
 ♘e4 14 e3 ♘df6

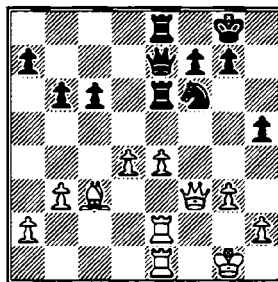
Intending to prevent his opponent from creating a mobile pawn centre after f3 and e4.

15 ♚e1 ♙c8 16 f3 ♘xc3 17 ♙xc3
 ♙f5 18 ♗d2 h5 19 ♚e2 ♗d7
 20 ♚ae1 ♙h3 21 ♙h1 ♚e6 22 e4 de
 23 fe ♚ae8

White has nevertheless managed to carry out his adopted plan. Black's new task is to force the opponent to advance his e4 pawn and thereby obtain an outpost on d5 for active play.

24 ♙f3 ♙g4 25 ♗f4 ♙xf3
 26 ♗xf3 ♗e7

All of Black's actions are aimed at forcing the move e4-e5, after which the centre will be conveniently blockaded on the light squares.



27 e5 ♘d5 28 ♙d2 ♗a3

The centre has been successfully blockaded, and now an active operation on the queenside begins.

29 ♚f2 f6 30 ♗xh5 ♗xa2 31 ♚ef1
 ♗xb3 32 ♗g6 ♚e7 33 ♙g5 ♚f7
 34 ef ♗c4 35 ♙h6 ♚exf6 36 ♚xf6
 ♘xf6 37 ♙xg7 ♗xd4+ 38 ♚f2 ♚xg7
 39 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 40 ♚xf6 ♚c7 41 ♙d6
 a5 42 ♙d8+ ♜f7 43 ♚a8 ♜e6
 44 ♜f2 c5 45 ♜e3 ♜d5 46 ♙b8 ♚c6
 47 h4 c4 48 ♜d2 ♜c5 49 h5 ♜b4
 50 ♚g8 b5 51 ♚g6 ♚c5 52 g4 ♜b3
 53 ♚e6 c3+ 54 ♜c1 ♚c4 55 ♚e3 b4
 56 ♚e1 ♚xg4 57 ♚h1 ♚g2 58 ♜b1
 ♚b2+

White resigned.

Until the centre is blockaded, operations on the flank may be premature.

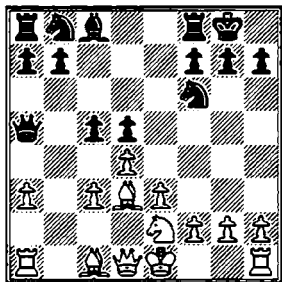
Nimzo-Indian Defence

Lilienthal – Wood

Radio Match, USSR-Britain, 1946

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♘c3 ♙b4 4 e3
 d5 5 a3 ♙xc3+ 6 bc 0-0 7 cd ed
 8 ♙d3 c5 9 ♘e2 ♗a5

Correct play is 9 ... b6.



With his queen thrust Black begins active play on the queenside, which, with a mobile, non-fixed centre, looks premature.

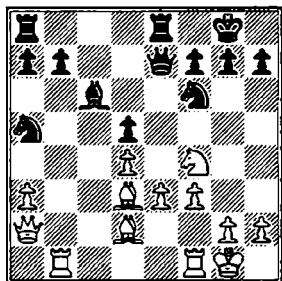
10 0-0 cd

Intending to seize the c-file and occupy the c4 square.

11 cd ♖c6 12 f3 ♜e8 13 ♙d2 ♜d8
14 ♜c1 ♙d7 15 ♜f4 ♜e7 16 ♜b3
♜a5

Continuing incorrect operations. More solid is 16 ... ♙e6.

17 ♜a2 ♙a4 18 ♜b1 ♙c6



Now taking the a5 knight is bad, of course – the e3 pawn is left defenceless. But it's possible to exploit the situation that has been reached by breaking in the centre.

19 e4! de 20 fe

In his turn Black now has no time for the e4 pawn – he has to defend the sidelined knight.

20 ... b6 21 e5 ♜e4 22 ♙b4 ♜d7
23 d5 ♜xe5 24 dc ♜xc6 25 ♙xe4
♜xe4 26 ♜bd1 ♜xb4 27 ab ♜d4
28 ♜d5! ♜g4 29 ♜e3

Black resigned.

3 Open centre

Active piece play is characteristic of positions in which there are no central pawns. The players' main task is to take possession of central lines and important central points.

Active plan of play:

After achieving a superiority in the centre (an advantage in development) the active plan of play consists of creating weaknesses in your opponent's camp. After this a piece attack is undertaken on the side that has been weakened by the previous manoeuvres.

Defensive plan of play:

Defend the weak points, offer piece protection to the flank that is under attack.

Basis of the active plan – piece manoeuvres with the goal of provoking weaknesses in your opponent's camp.

Grünfeld Defence

Averbakh – Kupreichik

Moscow, 1981

1 d4 ♟f6 2 ♟f3 g6 3 g3 ♟g7
4 ♟g2 0-0 5 0-0 d5 6 c4 c6 7 cd cd

A symmetrical system isn't necessarily a drawing system. It has a number of nuances of its own. So, for example, on 8 ♟c3 it's dangerous to maintain total symmetry with the move 8 ... ♟c6 because of 9 ♟e5! The correct reply is 8 ... ♟e4 9 ♟e5 ♟xc3 10 bc ♟c6 11 ♟xc6 bc with equality.

8 ♟e5 ♟g4

More solid is the modest 8 ... e6 9 ♟c3 ♟fd7, but such play isn't to everyone's taste. The side thrust by the knight leads to complete destruction of the centre and a swift tactical skirmish.

9 f4!

Theory in those days suggested the variation 9 ♟xg4 ♟xg4 10 ♟c3 ♟c6 11 ♟e3 ♟e6 with the evaluation 'the game is equal'.

9 ... ♟b6?!

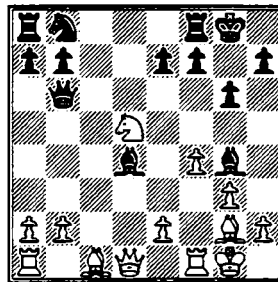
He should have exchanged on e5 immediately.

10 ♟c3 ♟e6

Now there's no longer any time to exchange knights because of the in-between move 11 ♟xd5.

11 ♟xg4 ♟xg4 12 ♟xd5 ♟xd4+

Even more dangerous is 12 ... ♟xd4+ 13 ♟xd4 ♟xd4+ 14 e3, and the bishop can't simultaneously defend the c7 square and the e7 pawn.



13 e3!

Black's tactical operation holds up in the variation 13 ♟h1 ♟c5 14 ♟xe7+ ♟xe7 15 ♟xd4 ♟c6 – when everything is fine for him.

13 ... ♖xd1 14 ♜xb6 ab

Otherwise 15 ♖xb7.

15 ♖xd1 ♖c5 16 ♖xb7 ♖a7
17 ♖f3

The result of the wild skirmish is an extra pawn on the queenside.

17 ... ♜a6 18 a3 ♖c8 19 ♖d2 ♖d7
20 ♜f1 ♖cd8 21 ♜e2 e5 22 fe ♜c7
23 ♖c6 ♖d3 24 b4 ♖e7 25 ♖e1 ♖b3
26 ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 27 ♖a2 ♖g5
28 ♖d2 b5 29 ♖e4

Black resigned. There's no defence to 30 ♖c2.

Réti Opening

Réti – Alekhine

Baden-Baden, 1925

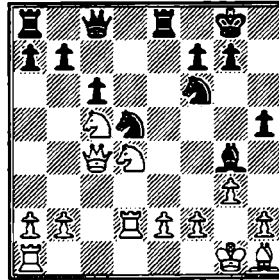
1 g3 e5 2 ♜f3 e4 3 ♜d4 d5 4 d3
ed 5 ♖xd3 ♜f6 6 ♖g2 ♖b4+ 7 ♖d2
♖xd2+ 8 ♜xd2 0-0 9 c4 ♜a6 10 cd
♜b4 11 ♖c4 ♜bxd5 12 ♜2b3 c6
13 0-0 ♖e8 14 ♖fd1 ♖g4 15 ♖d2
♖c8 16 ♜c5 ♖h3!

Impossible now is 17 ♖xh3 ♖xh3 18 ♜xb7 because of 18 ... ♜g4 19 ♜f3 ♜de3 20 fe ♜xe3 21 ♖xf7+ ♜h8 22 ♜h4 ♖f8, and Black wins.

17 ♖f3 ♖g4 18 ♖g2 ♖h3 19 ♖f3
♖g4 20 ♖h1 h5!

Attacking the g3 pawn. White should have played 21 a4 and 22 ♖a3, defending the g3 square and then with the aid of ♖b3

increased the piece pressure on the queenside. But he chooses an incorrect plan associated with an attack by the 'pawn minority'. This kind of plan is good with a closed centre but unfavourable with an open one.



21 b4 a6 22 ♖c1 h4 23 a4 hg
24 hg ♖c7 25 b5

As before, White's attention is focused on the queenside. With a timely counterattack in the centre – 25 e4 ♜b6 26 ♖b3 – he would have prevented the imminent attack on his king.

25 ... ab 26 ab ♖e3!

The rook can't be taken: 27 fe ♖xg3+ 28 ♖g2 ♜xe3 with mate.

27 ♜f3 cb 28 ♖xb5 ♜c3!
29 ♖xb7 ♖xb7 30 ♜xb7 ♜xe2+
31 ♜h2

He also won't be saved by 31 ♜f1 – 31 ... ♜xg3+ 32 fg ♖xf3 33 ♖xf3 ♖xf3+ 34 ♜g2 ♖aa3 35 ♖d8+ ♜h7 36 ♖h1+ ♜g6 37 ♖h3 ♖fb3 winning.

31 ... ♖e4! 32 ♜c4 ♗xf2 33 ♙g2 ♙e6! 34 ♜cc2 ♗g4+ 35 ♜h3 ♗e5+ 36 ♜h2 ♜xf3! 37 ♜xe2 ♗g4+ 38 ♜h3 ♗e3+ 39 ♜h2 ♗xc2 40 ♙xf3 ♗d4!

White resigned. After 41 ♜e3 ♗xf3+ 42 ♜xf3 ♙d5 the knight is lost.

Basis of the defensive plan – ousting your opponent's pieces from the central squares and lines.

Slav Defence

Alekhine – Euwe

1st Match Game

Amsterdam, 1935

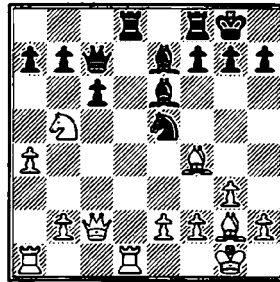
1 d4 d5 2 c4 c6 3 ♗f3 ♗f6 4 ♗c3 dc 5 a4 ♙f5 6 ♗e5 ♗bd7 7 ♗xc4 ♜c7 8 g3 e5 9 de ♗xe5 10 ♙f4 ♗fd7 11 ♙g2 ♙e6

The correct policy in positions with an open centre is to manoeuvre with the objective of ousting your opponent's pieces from central squares and lines. That's why the move 11 ... ♙e6 must be considered inaccurate. The requirements of the position and the general strategic plan were better served by 11 ... ♜d8 12 ♜c1 ♙e7, so that on 13 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 14 ♗d5 the reply can be 14 ... ♜xd5 15 ♙xd5 ♜a5+, while 13 0-0 can be met by 13 ... ♜b8 with a solid game.

12 ♗xe5 ♗xe5 13 0-0 ♙e7 14 ♜c2!

Threatening 15 ♗d5 or 15 ♗b5 with a subsequent ♗d4.

14 ... ♜d8 15 ♜fd1 0-0 16 ♗b5



16 ... ♜xd1+

The start of a flawed plan. Black intends to play 17 ... ♜a5, which if played at once fails because of 17 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 18 ♙xe5 cb 19 ♙xb7. However, the queen on a5 finds herself diverted from the main arena of the battle. The correct decision was 16 ... ♜b8, and if 17 ♗d4, then 17 ... ♙g4, maintaining the tension in the centre.

17 ♜xd1 ♜a5 18 ♗d4 ♙c8 19 b4!

The goal of the flank attack is to destroy the c6 pawn in order to take possession of the central d5 square. He cannot now take the pawn because of the loss of a piece: 19 ... ♙xb4 20 ♗b3 ♜c7 21 ♜e4 ♙c3 22 ♜c1 ♙b2 23 ♜c2.

19 ... ♜c7 20 b5 c5

The centre and space

Now the d5 square is completely under White's control.

21 ♖f5 f6

A counterattack by pieces left him with more chances of saving himself: 21 ... ♙f6 22 ♘d6 ♜d8 23 ♘c4 ♞e8 etc.

22 ♘e3 ♙e6 23 ♙d5!

Black's light squares are weakened, so their last defender is eliminated.

23 ... ♙xd5 24 ♞xd5 ♜a5 25 ♘f5 ♜e1+ 26 ♜g2 ♙d8 27 ♙xe5 fe 28 ♜d7!

Concluding the battle. The threat is 29 ♘h6+.

28 ... ♙f6 29 ♘h6+ ♜h8 30 ♜xc5

Black resigned.

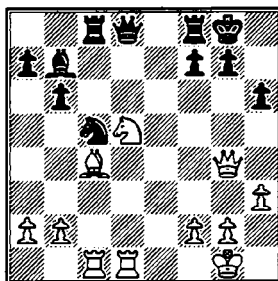
An important method of defence – exchanging off the attacking pieces.

Queen's Gambit
Kasparov – Karpov
10th Match Game
London, 1986

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 ♘c3 ♙e7 4 ♘f3 ♘f6 5 ♙g5 h6 6 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 7 e3 0-0 8 ♜c1 c6 9 ♙d3 ♘d7 10 0-0 dc 11 ♙xc4 e5 12 h3 ed 13 ed c5

Without completely finishing his development, Black begins concrete play.

14 ♙b3 cd 15 ♘d5 b6 16 ♘xd4 ♙xd4 17 ♜xd4 ♘c5 18 ♙c4 ♙b7 19 ♞fd1 ♜c8 20 ♜g4



With the open centre the white pieces are rather more actively placed. The face-off between the white rook and the black queen also attracts attention. True, any move of the d5 knight doesn't yet present any danger, but this piece must be monitored very closely.

Black makes a corresponding decision to give up his bishop for the aggressive knight. This decision also envisaged the subsequent exchanges and required precise evaluation of the almost forced endgame that would arise.

20 ... ♙xd5! 21 ♞xd5 ♜e7 22 ♜cd1 ♜e4 23 ♜xe4 ♘xe4 24 ♙a6 ♘f6 25 ♙xc8 ♘d5 26 ♙a6 ♘f6

Playing the White side is unquestionably more pleasant, but Black doesn't have any particular problems now. The approaches to his only weakness – the a7 pawn – are securely guarded.

27 f4 ♖e8 28 ♕f2 ♕f8 29 ♕f3 ♖e7

Intending to play 29 ... ♖c7 and 30 ... ♕e7. That's why White exchanges the last pair of rooks. In these kinds of open positions a bishop is usually stronger than a knight, but Black manages to build an impenetrable fortress.

30 ♖d8+ ♖e8 31 ♖xe8+ ♗xe8 32 ♕e4 ♕e7 33 ♖c4 ♗c7 34 ♕e5 f6+ 35 ♕f5 ♗e8 36 ♕e4 ♗c7 37 h4 ♗d6 38 ♕f5 ♕e7 39 ♕g6 ♕f8 40 ♕f5 ♕e7 41 ♕e4 ♗d6 42 g4 ♕e7 43 b4 ♗d6

Draw agreed.

The player who is behind in development mustn't allow the centre to be opened up.

Queen's Gambit
Alekhine – Rubinstein
Carlsbad, 1923

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 ♗f3 ♗f6 4 ♗c3 ♖e7 5 ♖g5 ♗bd7 6 e3 0-0 7 ♖c1 c6

8 ♖c2 a6 9 a4 ♖e8 10 ♖d3 dc 11 ♖xc4 ♗d5 12 ♖f4

Preventing the liberating move e6-e5.

12 ... ♗xf4 13 ef c5

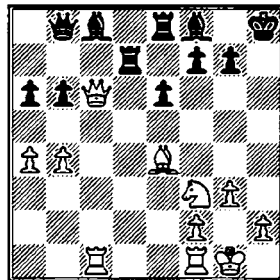
Black is striving to remove the constrained f4 pawn, but he hasn't taken into account the fact that opening the centre is favourable to his better-developed opponent.

14 dc ♖c7 15 0-0 ♖xf4

No good is 15 ... ♖xc5 – 16 ♖d3 ♗f6 17 ♗e4.

16 ♗e4! ♗xc5 17 ♗xc5 ♖xc5 18 ♖d3 b6 19 ♖xh7+ ♕h8 20 ♖e4 ♖a7 21 b4! ♖f8 22 ♖c6 ♖d7 23 g3 ♖b8

The attempt 23 ... ♖d6 led to the loss of a pawn: 24 ♖fd1 ♖xd1+ 25 ♖xd1 ♖xd1+ 26 ♕g2 and then 27 ♖xb6. But possibly it was here, in fact, where he should have looked for chances to save himself.



24 ♗g5! ♖ed8 25 ♖g6! ♖e5

On 25 ... fg there is the forced resolution 26 ♖e4 ♙xb4 27 ♖h4+ ♜g8 28 ♖h7+ ♜f8 29 ♖h8+ ♜e7 30 ♖xg7+ ♜e8 31 ♖g8+ ♙f8 32 ♖xg6+ ♜e7 33 ♖xe6 mate.

26 ♜xf7+ ♞xf7 27 ♙xf7 ♖f5 28 ♞fd1! ♞xd1+ 29 ♞xd1 ♖xf7 30 ♖xc8 ♜h7 31 ♖xa6 ♖f3 32 ♖d3+

Black resigned.

4 Static centre

A manoeuvring battle for the central squares and a switching of the attack to the flanks at an appropriate moment are characteristic in positions with fixed central pawns and the presence of open and half-open lines.

Active plan of play:

After obtaining the initiative with a peaceful centre, you should look for any opportunities for active play on the flanks.

A peaceful position in the centre is a precondition for an attack on your opponent's king.

Nimzo-Indian Defence

Khalifman – Serper

St. Petersburg, 1994

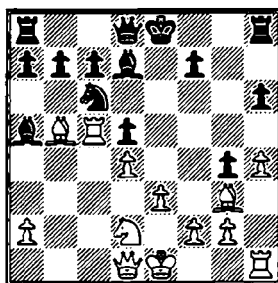
1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♘f3 d5 4 ♘c3 ♙b4 5 cd ed 6 ♙g5 h6 7 ♙h4 g5 8 ♙g3 ♘e4 9 ♘d2 ♘xc3 10 bc ♙xc3 11 ♞c1 ♙a5

More standard is 11 ... ♙b2 with an unclear game.

12 h4 g4 13 e3 ♘c6

It's difficult for Black to find a reliable place for his king. The kingside has been weakened and the king feels uncomfortable in the centre. For example, 13 ... c6 14 ♙e2 h5 15 0-0 ♙c7 16 ♙xc7 ♖xc7 17 e4 ♙e6 18 ed ♙xd5 19 ♙c4 with a strong initiative for White.

14 ♙b5 ♙d7 15 ♞c5!



15 ... ♖e7 16 0-0

On 16 ♞xd5 Black has the good counterattack 16 ... ♖b4!

16 ... ♙b4 17 ♞xd5 ♙d6 18 ♘c4! ♙xg3 19 fg 0-0-0 20 ♖a4 ♖e4

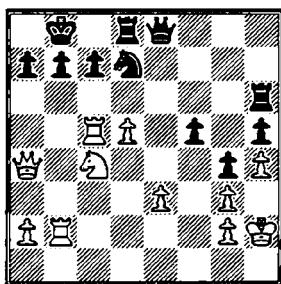
21 ♖c5 ♖b8 22 ♜f4 ♜e8 23 ♖h2 f5
24 ♜f2 h5 25 ♜b2!

White has obtained perceptible pressure on the b-file for the pawn.

25 ... ♜h6 26 d5 ♖e5

More stubborn is 26 ... ♖e7, although it wasn't easy to foresee White's combination, of course.

27 ♖xd7 ♖xd7



28 ♜xb7+! ♖xb7 29 ♜xc7+! ♖xc7
30 ♜xa7+ ♖c8 31 d6

Black resigned.

Counter-plan during a flank attack:

The main method is playing in the centre to defuse your opponent's initiative on the flank.

Nimzo-Indian Defence
Botvinnik – Capablanca
Amsterdam, 1938

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♖c3 ♖b4 4 e3

d5 5 a3 ♖xc3+ 6 bc c5 7 cd ed
8 ♖d3 0-0 9 ♖e2

White's plan is clear: to exploit his pawn advantage in the centre, and prepare e3-e4, which in turn will create preconditions for an attack on the kingside.

9 ... b6

Taking measures against his opponent's idea ahead of time. The goal of the move is to exchange off the active d3 bishop.

10 0-0 ♖a6 11 ♖xa6 ♖xa6
12 ♖b2 ♜d7 13 a4 ♜fe8

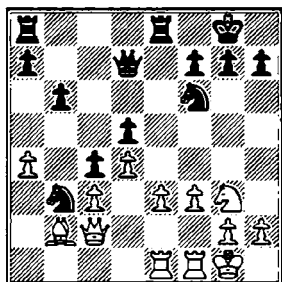
The main problem with this move is its passivity. Black only hinders his opponent's intentions. By means of the more active 13 ... cd 14 cd ♜fc8 he would create concrete counterplay on the c-file, and it's unlikely that White could have carried out his far-reaching plans.

14 ♜d3 c4

Thinking about the risky knight manoeuvre ♖a6-b8-c6-a5-b3, to win the a4 pawn. The plan works, but in that time White thrives in the centre, and the central strategy turns out to be weightier.

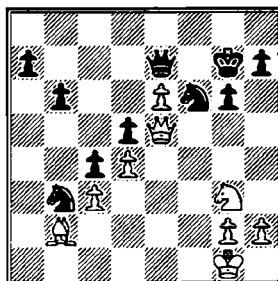
15 ♜c2 ♖b8 16 ♜ae1 ♖c6 17 ♖g3

♠a5 18 f3 ♠b3



Threatens the crippling 29 ♠f5+.

28 ... ♖e8 29 ♜e5 ♜e7



Both sides have fulfilled the programme they came up with: the pawn on a4 is doomed, but White in his turn is fully prepared for a break in the centre.

19 e4 ♜xa4 20 e5 ♠d7 21 ♜f2

A precise move. White threatens to penetrate to d6 with his knight, but 21 ♠f5 immediately wouldn't be good because of 21 ... ♠c5!, and the wayward knight returns to the game.

21 ... g6 22 f4 f5 23 ef ♠xf6 24 f5 ♠xe1 25 ♠xe1 ♠e8

A tried and tested method: during an attack by your opponent you should strive to exchange off the attacking pieces. This plan could well have been successful, if it hadn't been for White's brilliant combination.

26 ♠e6 ♠xe6 27 fe ♠g7 28 ♜f4

A famous position.

30 ♠a3! ♜xa3 31 ♠h5+ gh 32 ♜g5+ ♠f8 33 ♜xf6+ ♠g8 34 e7 ♜c1+ 35 ♠f2 ♜c2+ 36 ♠g3 ♜d3+ 37 ♠h4 ♜e4+ 38 ♠xh5 ♜e2+ 39 ♠h4 ♜e4+ 40 g4 ♜e1+ 41 ♠h5

Black resigned.

Attack of the 'pawn minority'.

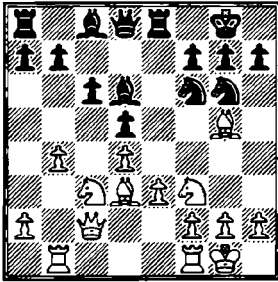
Queen's Gambit
Smyslov – Keres
Match-Tournament,
Moscow 1948

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 ♠c3 ♠f6 4 ♠g5 c6 5 e3 ♠bd7 6 cd ed 7 ♠d3 ♠e7 8 ♠f3 0-0 9 ♜c2 ♠e8 10 0-0 ♠f8 11 ♠ab1

A static centre structure has arisen. White begins an attack by the 'pawn minority'.

11 ... ♠g6 12 b4 ♠d6

More far-sighted was 12 ... a6 and on 13 a4 – 13 ... ♖e4 with counterplay in the centre.



13 b5 ♖d7 14 bc ♖xc6

The bishop is very passively placed here, but 14 ... bc allowed an invasion by the white rooks on the open file.

15 ♗b3 ♖e7

Exposing the flaw in the move 12 .. ♖d6 – two important tempi have been lost.

16 ♖xf6

If immediately 16 ♖b5, then by playing 16 ... ♖d7 Black would succeed in bringing up his reserves to defend the queenside.

16 ... ♖xf6 17 ♖b5 ♗d6 18 ♖fc1 h5 19 ♖e2 h4 20 ♖xc6 bc 21 ♗a4 ♖e7 22 ♖b7 a5 23 h3 ♖eb8 24 ♖cb1 ♖xb7 25 ♖xb7 c5

Black's position is difficult. Impossible is 25 ... ♖b8 26 ♖xb8+ ♖xb8 27 ♗xa5, and he has no

compensation for the lost pawn.

26 ♖b5 cd 27 ♖exd4 ♖c8 28 ♖b3 ♖c3 29 ♗xh4 ♖c4 30 g4 a4 31 ♖bd4 ♖xd4 32 ♖xd4 ♗e5 33 ♖f3 ♗d6 34 ♖a5 ♖c8 35 ♖xa4 ♖g6 36 ♗h5 ♗f6 37 ♗f5 ♗c6 38 ♖a7 ♖f8 39 ♖d7 d4 40 ♖xd4 ♖a8 41 a4

Black resigned.

Queen's Gambit
Keres – Najdorf
Margate, 1939

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♖c3 d5 4 ♖g5 ♖e7 5 e3 0-0 6 ♖f3 ♖bd7 7 cd ed 8 ♖d3 c6 9 ♗c2 ♖e8 10 h3

In modern practice White tries to get by without this move, so as not to give his opponent additional chances later on during a counterattack on the kingside.

10 ... ♖f8 11 0-0 ♖h5

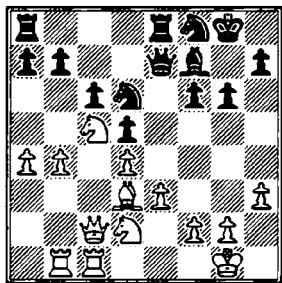
Counterplay after 11 ... ♖g6 looks more effective – with the intention of playing 12 ... ♖e4.

12 ♖xe7 ♗xe7 13 ♖ab1 ♖f6 14 b4 ♖e6 15 ♖a4 ♖e4

Counterplay on the kingside can be prepared with the help of 15 ... ♖ad8 16 ♖c5 a6 17 a4 ♖c8 and then ♖e4, ♖d6.

16 ♖c5 ♖d6 17 a4 f6 18 ♖fc1 ♖f7 19 ♖d2 g6

The move 19 ... ♖g6 should have been played immediately, exchanging the obviously poor bishop for one of White's most active pieces.



20 b5 cb 21 ab ♜ec8 22 ♜b3 ♞d7
23 ♜b4 ♞e4

An error in a combinational battle. He could have held on for longer in the passive position by 23 ... ♜d8 24 ♜a1 ♞b6.

24 ♞dx4 de 25 ♜xe4 b6

Everything hinges on the fact that on 25 ... ♞xc5 there's 26 dc, and the bishop is defended.

26 ♜xa8 bc 27 ♜xc5 ♞xc5
28 ♜c6! a6 29 dc ab 30 ♜xb5

Black resigned.

5 Dynamic centre

Positions with an undetermined pawn position in the centre are distinguished by the fact

that they can easily transpose into any of the previously-examined structures. This forces the players to keep a careful eye on the centre and try to foresee impending changes in it in good time.

Plan of active play:

Consists of each player trying to prepare best for possible changes in the centre, which most often arise after the pawn advances d4-d5 or e4-e5. Before the position in the centre has stabilised, flank attacks, especially pawn attacks, should be undertaken circumspectly and carefully. At the same time you should always be on the lookout for possible counteractions by your opponent in the centre.

Defensive plan:

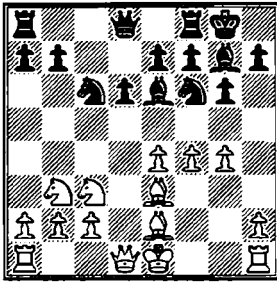
Don't rush to determine the position in the centre. This forces your opponent to be circumspect in his attack. If a flank attack begins, try to prepare a favourable counterblow in the centre.

A dynamic centre requires you to be especially cautious during flank attacks.

Sicilian Defence
Alekhine – Botvinnik
 Nottingham, 1936

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cd 4 ♘xd4
 ♜f6 5 ♝c3 g6 6 ♙e2 ♙g7 7 ♙e3
 ♝c6 8 ♜b3 ♙e6 9 f4 0-0 10 g4

More peaceful here is 10 0-0 ♜a5
 11 f5 with a certain amount of
 pressure from White.



10 ... d5

Black immediately responds to the activity on the flank with a counterblow in the centre. Upon passive play by Black, the attack started by White would have justified itself. Bad, for example, was 10 ... ♜a5 because of 11 g5 ♜d7 12 ♙d4 with a subsequent attack by the h2 pawn.

11 f5

Nothing is promised by 11 e5 due to the following counterplay in the centre: 11 ... d4 12 ♘xd4 ♘xd4 13 ♙xd4 ♘xg4.

11 ... ♙c8 12 ed ♜b4 13 d6 ♝xd6

Black is on the right track, but he mustn't relax. If 13 ... ed, then 14 a3 ♝c6 15 g5 ♜h5 16 f6, strengthening the attack.

14 ♙c5 ♝f4!

In the variation 14 ... ♝xd1+ 15 ♝xd1 ♝c6 White manages to isolate his opponent's king's bishop: 16 g5 ♜d7 17 f6 ♙h8 18 ♜d5.

15 ♙f1 ♝xh2 16 ♙xb4 ♘xg4!

Forcibly achieving a draw.

17 ♙xg4 ♝g3+ 18 ♙f2 ♝g1+
 19 ♙f1

Draw.

Overall evaluation of the battle:

Black replied to his opponent's flank attack with a counterblow in the centre, was able to open up the position of the white king and achieved a draw.

A counterblow in the centre is the main danger for the one who is attacking on the flank.

Sicilian Defence
Vajda – Kotov
 Match-Tournament
 Moscow-Budapest, 1949

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cd 4 ♘xd4
 ♜f6 5 ♝c3 a6 6 ♙e2 ♝c7 7 0-0 e6

8 f4 ♖c6 9 ♜h1

More accurate is 9 ♖e3 with a transfer of the queen to g3 via e1.

9 ... ♖e7 10 ♖f3 ♖d7 11 ♖b3 0-0

An immediate initiative on the side – 11 ... b5 collided with dangerous threats after 12 e5! de 13 fe ♜xe5 14 ♖f4 ♜f5 15 ♖d6.

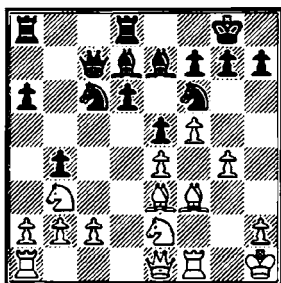
12 ♖e3 ♜fd8 13 ♜e1 b5 14 g4

The chain of thought goes like this. White intends to start a pawn storm on the kingside. For this he needs to protect himself from counterblows in the centre. The c3 knight participates in the defence of important central squares, which is why he should have defended it from the attack b5-b4 with the aid of 14 a3.

14 ... b4 15 ♖e2

Bad is 15 ♖a4 ♜db8 16 ♜f2 ♖d8 – the a4 knight is in danger.

15 ... e5 16 f5



Even worse is 16 g5 ♖g4 17 ♖xg4 ♖xg4 18 f5 d5, and White's position falls to pieces.

16 ... d5!

White's flank attack is refuted by a counterblow in the centre.

17 g5

Somewhat better is 17 ed e4 18 dc ef 19 cd fe 20 ♜xe2 ♜xd7, but in that case the open position of White's king gave his opponent good chances for success.

17 ... ♖xe4 18 ♖xe4 de 19 f6 ♖f8 20 fg ♖xg7 21 ♜h4 ♖e7

Threatening 22 ... ♖f5, and a rook sacrifice on f7 doesn't save him because of 22 ♜xf7 ♖xf7 23 ♜xh7 ♖g4, and check on f3 decides the struggle.

22 ♖g3 ♖g6 23 ♜h5 ♜c8! 24 ♜e2 ♖g4 25 ♜f2

On 25 ♜g2 there's 25 ... ♖f3 26 ♜xf3 ♖h4 27 ♜f2 ef and then ♜g4 or ♜h3.

25 ... ♖f3+ 26 ♖g1 ♖f4! 27 ♖xf4 ef 28 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 29 ♜xf4 ♖g6

White resigned.

The longer the tension continues in the centre, the easier it is to defend.

Sicilian Defence
Smyslov – Kotov
 Moscow, 1943

1 e4 c5 2 ♖c3 ♘c6 3 g3 g6 4 ♗g2
 ♗g7 5 d3 d6 6 ♘f3 e6 7 ♗g5 ♘ge7
 8 ♚d2 h6 9 ♗e3 e5 10 0-0 ♗e6
 11 ♘e1 ♚d7 12 a3

Intending to play b2-b4 in the event of his opponent castling long.

12 ... ♗h3 13 f4 ♘d4 14 ♚b1 ef
 15 ♗xf4 ♗xg2 16 ♚xg2

The game is now completely equal. Black already threatens f7-f5, and so White decides on a risky attack.

16 ... 0-0 17 g4 ♚ad8

According to all the laws of classical strategy preparation for a counterblow in the centre begins.

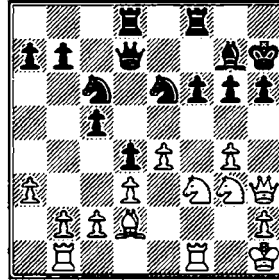
18 ♖h1 ♘e6 19 ♗d2 d5! 20 ♘f3 d4

A strategic mistake He should have maintained the tension in the centre (20 ... c4) or opened it up (20 ... de 21 ♘xe4 ♘d5). With a closed centre his opponent's flank pawn attack is justified.

21 ♘e2 ♘c6 22 ♚h3 ♖h7 23 ♘g3 f6

Intending after 24 ... ♘e5 to exchange on f3, play ♘g5 and

obtain good counter-chances. The plan is good, but an incorrect strategy will always be refuted.



24 ♘f5!! gf

A more stubborn defence is 24 ... g5 with the subsequent ♘c6-e5-g6, sending the knight to f4.

25 gf ♘c7 26 ♚g1 ♘e8

Threatened the decisive 27 ♚xg7+ ♖xg7 28 ♚g1+ ♖f7 29 ♚h5+ ♖e7 30 ♚g7+.

27 ♚g6 ♖f7 28 ♚bg1 ♖g8 29 ♚xh6 ♖f8 30 ♚h7 ♖e7 31 ♚h5! ♖d6 32 ♗f4+ ♘e5 33 ♗xe5+ fe 34 f6!

The decisive blow. Whether or not Black takes the pawn, he can't avoid losses.

34 ... ♘xf6 35 ♚xe5+ ♖c6 36 ♚hxg7 ♖b5 37 ♘xd4+ ♖b6 38 b4 ♚c8 39 ♚xf7 ♚xf7 40 ♚d6+ ♚c6 41 ♘xc6 ♘xe4 42 bc+

Black resigned.

Chapter Seven

The most important law of chess

** A lasso for the knight * The bishop hunt * How difficult it is to be a rook *
The queen: thorns and roses * The obstinate pawn * Kings under arrest **

As yet we don't know all that much about chess.

Every action has its main underlying cause, and every doctrine has its basic postulate. In philosophy – an abstract science – it's the question of the primacy of matter or spirit. In physics – the most earthly discipline – it's the law of conservation of energy. And in chess?

A commentator places a question mark after a move and asserts: a chess law has been violated. But how many laws of the game are there? And if we can manage to give at least an approximate number and find preliminary definitions, then which of these conditions are the main ones and which are secondary?

There are no answers to these questions. We don't know the truth either.

But based on the aim of the game – mating the enemy king –

we're prepared to suggest that the chief law of a chess game is to restrict the mobility of your opponent's pieces. All of them together and each one separately

Because what is mate to the king, exactly? It's an attack on a chess monarch whose movement is completely restricted. An attack that you can neither evade nor defend. To sum up, we repeat the king must be 100-percent restricted, and it's enough to drive back, isolate and pin down the movements of the other pieces so that they don't interfere with the attack. Only then comes mate.

Thus we've proved something, although there's a great deal more that requires proof.

Restricting the mobility of your opponent's pieces (and in association with this: domination by your own) – **is the most important law of chess.** Let's take this as a working hypothesis and – onward!

More often than we might expect, the evaluation of a position and the plan of action is formed precisely from the extent to which one or other of your opponent's pieces is badly placed.

Despite the actual material equality on the board, a poorly-placed piece belonging to your opponent signifies for you, even if it's temporary and shaky, nevertheless a material advantage. Such an advantage must be exploited quickly, with knowledge of what you're doing, otherwise it will disappear without a trace. You should constantly remember this at every stage of the game.

Let's look at some demonstrative examples from practice in more detail, when all the chess pieces endured restriction of their actions (partial or complete) in turn. Usually people talk about 'the seriousness of the research,' and 'the enjoyableness of the excursion'. The authors have tried to unite these concepts and make an excursion into chess serious, and the research into the question enjoyable.

Seven bases for restriction:

What restricts the mobility of a chess piece? There aren't that many bases – there are seven.

The mobility of a chess piece is restricted, if:

- 1) it's occupied with the defence of another piece or an important square;
- 2) it's tied down, i.e. it's covering a valuable piece or an important square;
- 3) another piece or important square is simultaneously under threat;
- 4) by moving it unfavourably, it destroys a connection that has been established on the board (blocks another piece's line of action, takes an essential square away from it and so on);
- 5) the square to which it could move is attacked by enemy pieces ...
- 6) ... or occupied or blockaded by another piece (your own or an enemy one);
- 7) its path is obstructed by your own or enemy pieces.

Let's look at some illustrations of each case.

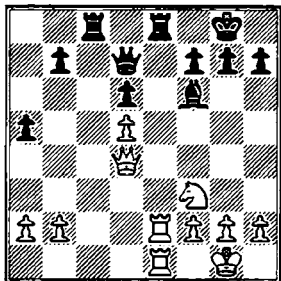
Philidor Defence

Adams – Torre

New Orleans, 1925

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 ed 4 ♙xd4
♜c6 5 ♚b5 ♘d7 6 ♙xc6 ♙xc6
7 ♜c3 ♜f6 8 0-0 ♚e7 9 ♝d5 ♙xd5
10 ed 0-0 11 ♙g5 c6 12 c4 cd 13 cd

♖e8 14 ♜fe1 a5 15 ♖e2 ♜c8
16 ♚ae1 ♞d7 17 ♙xf6! ♙xf6



It's impossible not to notice a graceful jump in acrobatics or figure skating, but when it's repeated twice or demonstrated several times in a row it turns into an impressive cascade that will be remembered for a long time.

18 ♞g4! ♞b5!

There's nothing to physically prevent the black queen from taking on g4, but then it's immediate mate in two. No, the e8 rook must be defended, whatever it takes. The black queen's freedom of action is severely restricted.

19 ♞c4!!

Exactly the same can now be said about the c8 rook.

19 ... ♞d7 20 ♞c7!! ♞b5 21 a4!
♞xa4 22 ♜e4!

The attack should be undertaken carefully so as not to spoil a wonderful game. It seems that the same result comes from 22 b3 ♞b5 23 ♞xb7, but then appears the terrible 23 ... ♞xe2 24 ♜xe2 ♜c1+.

22 ... ♞b5

He should have retreated: 23 ♞xc8 is threatened.

23 ♞xb7!

Now everything is fine. Black resigned. A very colourful example of distraction.

Dutch Defence

Robatsch – Jansa

Sochi, 1974

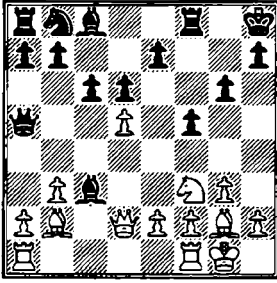
1 c4 f5 2 ♘f3 ♘f6 3 g3 g6 4 b3
♙g7 5 ♙b2 0-0 6 ♙g2 d6 7 d4 c6
8 0-0 ♚h8 9 d5 ♞a5

Black has thought of a trap. If now White carelessly plays 10 ♘c3, then ...

10 ♘c3! ♘d5 11 cd ♙xc3

It seems that the trap has worked. No compensation for the pawn is evident.

12 ♞d2!!



The double pin decides the matter.

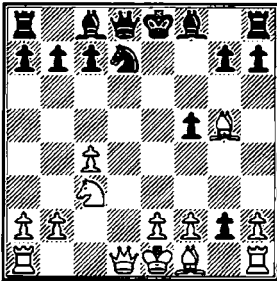
12 ... ♖xd5 13 ♜xc3+ e5 14 ♘xe5

Black resigned. On 14 ... ♜xe5 the modest 15 ♜c2 is enough for a win.

English Opening

Doroshkevich – Tukmakov
Riga, 1970

1 c4 e5 2 ♘c3 ♘c6 3 ♘f3 f5 4 d4 e4 5 ♙g5 ♘f6 6 d5 ef 7 dc fg 8 cd+ ♘xd7!!



The rook and the g5 bishop are attacked. In principle the bishop can retreat or – here's the success!

– remove the d8 queen from the board, but he doesn't even have time for such an impressive and productive step: the loss of the rook (9 ... gh♖) is a more substantial event on the board.

French Defence

Ionescu – Cehic
Pula, 1997

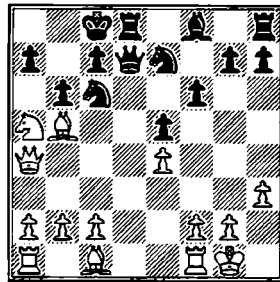
1 e4 e6 2 d3 d5 3 ♘d2 de 4 de e5 5 ♘gf3 ♘c6 (5 ... ♘d7) 6 ♙b5 ♙g4 (6 ... f6) 7 h3 ♙xf3 8 ♜xf3 ♜d7 9 ♘c4 f6 10 0-0 0-0-0?

Without question, better is 10 ... a6 11 ♙d1 ♜e6, retaining his defensive capacity.

11 ♘a5 ♘ge7 12 ♜b3

Threatening 13 ♙xc6.

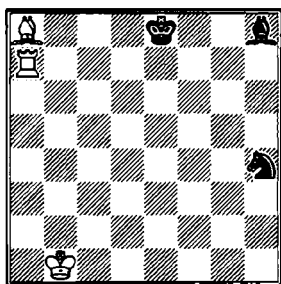
12 ... b6 13 ♜a4!



Black resigned. The pawn can't take the knight as then approaches to the king open up: 13 ... ba 14 ♙a6+ ♜b8 15 ♜b5+.

This is an illustration of the fourth point. We note that in all four the restriction of mobility is clearly indirect in nature. The piece can't make a move (most often leave the square where it's standing), as in that case the general position would worsen or a comrade on the team would suffer. To some extent the bases are moral in character. The three other bases (to which this chapter is dedicated) have a large physical, 'muscular' component.

H. Rinck, 1924

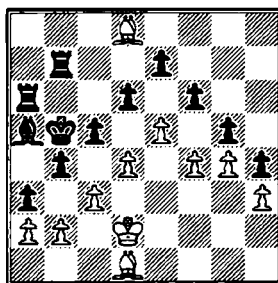


Win

1 ♖c6+ ♜f8 2 ♜a8+ ♜g7 3 ♖e4!

Everything is plain to see. The knight is cut off and the bishop can't be saved.

V. Rudolf, 1912



Draw

Draw? It's hard to believe.

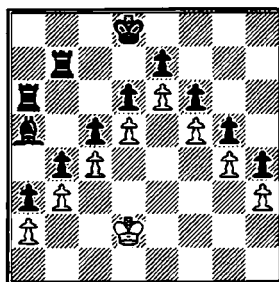
1 ♖a4+! ♜xa4

On 1 ... ♜c4 - a pendulum:
2 ♖b3+ ♜b5 3 ♖a4+ ♜c4 4 ♖b3+
and so on *ad infinitum*.

2 ♖b3+ ♜b5 3 ♖c4+ ♜c6 4 ♖d5+ ♜d7
5 ♖e6+!

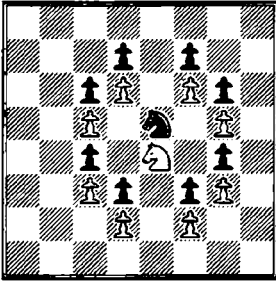
The main thing is to build a fence as quickly as possible. Don't begrudge anything for it.

5 ... ♜xd8 6 f5



That's it! No one is dropping in to visit anyone else.

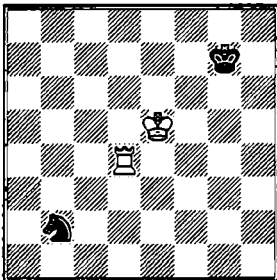
A. Matsukevich, 1980



An amusing stone flower. Absolute blockade. No matter where you place both kings around the flower, it's a draw!

A lasso for the knight

The knight is the most ingenious chess piece. With access to a five by five square in the best case and a three by three square in the worst, the adroit and versatile little knight often finds itself in quite boring situations. In the endgame the "contemptible buffoon on the board" (Tartakower) is offended fairly frequently.



A study position. The knight is in a trap. To win White needs to get his king to b5 or e2 and then attack the knight with his rook.

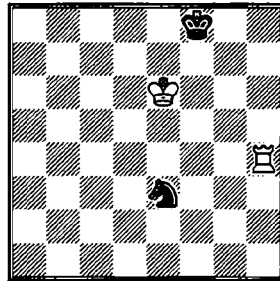
Here's a possible outcome:

1 ♖d5 ♕f6 2 ♜c6!

Only not 2 ♜c5? because of 2 ... ♕e5. A draw is unexpectedly obtained (!), as the knight gets out of its enclosure and manages to join up with the king. For example: 3 ♜d2 ♖a4+ 4 ♜b5 ♘c3+ 5 ♜c4 ♘e4.

2 ... ♕e5 3 ♜c5 ♜f5 4 ♜b5 ♕e5 5 ♜d2

The next position was analysed by Wilhelm Steinitz way back in the 19th century.



1 ♜e4 ♘d1

He has to go even further away. With 1 ... ♘g2 (1 ... ♘f1 2 ♜f4+) decisive is 2 ♜f6 ♜g8 3 ♜g4+, and in the event of 1 ... ♘c2 the round-up concludes thus: 2 ♜d5 ♘a3

The most important law of chess

3 ♖c5 ♘b1 4 ♖b4 ♘d2 5 ♚e2 ♘b1
6 ♚b2.

2 ♚f4+ ♖g7 3 ♚f3

It's getting tighter and tighter for the knight. Then again, the loss isn't obvious yet.

3 ... ♖g6

The knight can't escape:
3 ... ♘b2 4 ♖d5 ♖g6 5 ♖d4 ♖g5
6 ♚fg1 ♖g4 7 ♚b1 ♘a4 8 ♚b4.

4 ♖e5 ♖g5 5 ♖d4 ♖g4 6 ♚f1
♘b2 7 ♚b1 ♘a4 8 ♚b4

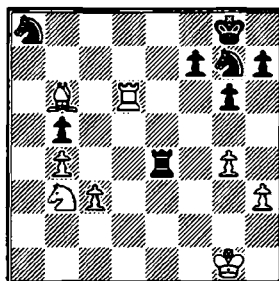
That's it. The lasso has been pulled. Victory.

Knights have also endured considerable grief at the hands of bishops.

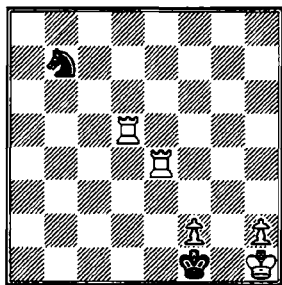
The king's knight is languishing on a8. Its zigzag of failure: g8-f6-e8-c7-a8.

Tal – Vogt

Riga, 1981



G. Zakhodyakin, 1961



Mate in three

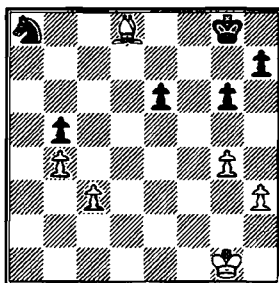
The false footsteps 1 ♚e8, 1 ♚e6, 1 ♚ee5 and 1 ♚e3 are refuted with the respective 1 ... ♘d8, 1 ... ♘d6, 1 ... ♘c5 (a5), and 1 ... ♖xf2.

Correct is 1 ♚e7 ♘d6 2 ♚xd6

35 ♘d8!

It would be good to take off all the pieces, leaving only the ♘a8 and ♘d8. The picture would be more artistic.

35 ... ♘e6 36 ♘c5! ♚e3 37 ♘xe6
♚xe6 38 ♚xe6 fe



Everything as if to order. The battle ended after 39 ♖f2 ♖f7 40 ♖e3 ♖e8 41 ♙a5 ♖d7 42 ♖d4 ♖d6, and Black resigned: it's impossible to get the knight out of trouble (42 ... ♖c7 43 ♙xc7 ♖xc7 44 ♖c5), and White dominates by means of a simple plan with ♔c3-c4.

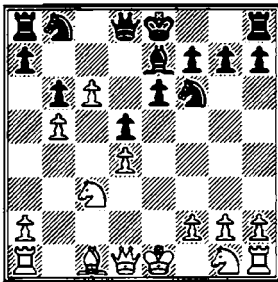
The opening? Oh, the knight's been through plenty of grief in the opening. Here's an episode in the Caro-Kann.

Caro-Kann

Matsukevich – Ustinov

Moscow, 1972

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed cd 4 c4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 e6 6 c5 ♙e7 7 ♙b5+ ♙d7 8 ♙xd7+ ♘bxd7 9 b4 b6 10 c6 ♘b8?! 11 b5



Poor knight!

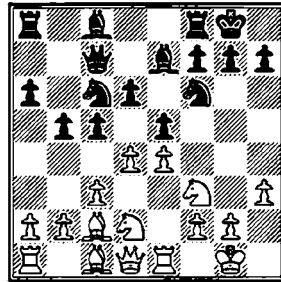
11 ... a6 12 ♙f4 ♙d6 13 ♙xd6 ♖xd6 14 a4 ♜b4 15 ♘e2 ♘e4 16 0-0! ♘xc3 17 ♘xc3 ♜xc3 18 ♜c1 ♜b4 19 c7, and Black resigned.

And how feebly the knights gnawed at the bit, left lifeless in a variation of the King's Indian Defence. 1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 g3 0-0 5 ♙g2 d6 6 ♘f3 ♘c6 7 d5 ♘a5 8 ♘d2 c5 9 0-0?

Sometimes entire strategic schemes are chosen and developed with the idea that one of your opponent's knights will be left with nothing to do later in the game.

Here are some interesting illustrations in the Ruy Lopez.

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♙b5 a6 4 ♙a4 ♘f6 5 0-0 ♙e7 6 ♜e1 b5 7 ♙b3 d6 8 c3 0-0-9 h3 ♘a5 10 ♙c2 c5 11 d4 ♜c7 12 ♘bd2 ♘c6



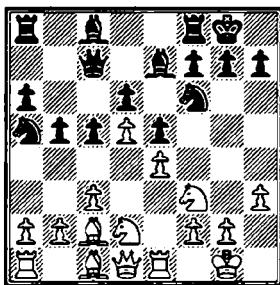
Many generations of chess players have laboured over this position. White has tested various paths here. For a long time Vsevolod Rauzer's plan was popular, 13 dc dc 14 ♘f1 with the subsequent ♘f1-e3. There's a

good dose of poison in the modest 13 a3. Its aim is to blockade the queenside with the aid of b2-b4. But we're interested in the move 13 d5 Forcing his way into the enemy's defence, the pawn has destroyed the connection between the flanks, but this would be only half the battle. The main idea of d4-d5 is to restrict the c6 knight's opportunities in the coming struggle. The knight has three paths (to a5, a7 and d8), but not one of them leads to success.

Geller – Mecking

Palma de Majorca, 1970

13 ... ♖a5



14 b3

An important link in a well thought out plan. Otherwise Black plays c5-c4 and transfers the knight from a5 to c5. If White tries to prevent the manoeuvre with the move b2-b4, then Black, naturally, will take *en passant* and

obtain a convenient target for attack – the c3 pawn. After 14 b3! the attempt 14 ... c4 is stopped by the immediate 15 b4. The knight will be forced to retreat to b7 and again is left without convenient squares. However, we'll see all this.

14 ... ♗d7 15 ♖f1 ♗b7 16 ♖g3 c4

Something has to be done to deflect White from his attack on the kingside.

17 b4

Everything's going according to plan, the knight can be moved away to d8, but no particular prospects are evident for it there either.

17 ... ♜fc8 18 ♖f5 ♗f8 19 ♖h2 a5
20 ♜e3 ab 21 cb ♗xf5 22 ef c3
23 ♖g4 ♗e7 24 ♖xf6+ ♗xf6
25 ♜e4!

Black's position is lost. On the queenside he has to defend the weak b5 and c3 pawns, and on the kingside there's nothing to combat his opponent's pawn attack.

25 ... ♗d7 26 ♗f3 ♜c7 27 h4 ♗e7
28 g3 ♖d8 29 a3 ♜cc8 30 ♜b1 ♜c7
31 ♗e2 ♜b8 32 ♜b3 ♗d7 33 ♗f3
♗e7 34 ♜e3 ♗f6 35 ♜e4 ♗e7 36 g4!
f6

If he takes the pawn – 36 ... ♗xh4, then after 37 g5 ♜c4

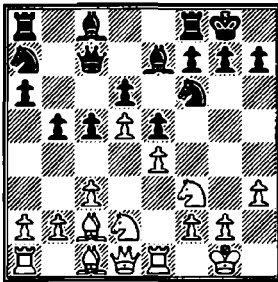
38 ♖g4! the bishop that has got into trouble can't be saved.

37 ♖e3 ♘f7 38 ♜bxc3 ♜bc8
39 ♙e4 ♙d8 40 ♙d2 ♜c4 41 ♜xc4
♜xc4 42 ♜c3 ♙b6 43 ♜xc4 bc 44 g5
fg 45 hg ♙d8 46 ♜h5 c3 47 ♙e3 h6
48 f6

Here Black resigned. After 48 ... gf 49 gh ♘h8 50 ♙f5 there's nothing with which to defend the king. We should note that his queen's knight, having taken the inglorious route b8-c6-a5-b7-d8-f7, never did manage to get into the battle.

Geller – Hernandez
Las Palmas, 1980

13 ... ♘a7



Mentally you can construct seemingly acceptable routes for this knight. However, in practice everything happens in a more complicated way.

14 ♘f1 ♙d7 15 a4!

The unlucky knight is trying to get to b6, but now 15 ... ♘c8 doesn't work – 16 ab.

15 ... ♜fb8 16 ♘g3 ♘c8 17 a5!

Conclusively eliminating the knight's opportunities to play on the queenside. Black starts to restructure in order to involve the ill-starred knight in some kind of activity on the other side of the board. All his minor pieces are stealthily moving to the right. Subtly noting this change, grandmaster Geller changes the direction of his attack and opens lines on the queenside. Watch how this went.

17 ... c4 18 ♙d2 ♙f8 19 ♘h2 ♘e7
20 ♙g5 ♘e8 21 ♜d2 ♜b7 22 b4! cb
23 ♙xb3 ♜c8 24 ♜ec1 h6 25 ♙e3 f5
26 ef ♘xf5 27 ♘xf5 ♙xf5

The knight's problem has fundamentally been solved, but in that time White managed to create clear superiority in his forces on the queenside of the board.

28 ♘f1 ♘f6 29 ♘g3 ♙g6 30 c4 bc
31 ♙xc4 ♙e7 32 ♙a2 ♜xc1+
33 ♜xc1

There's nothing with which to defend from an invasion on c6.

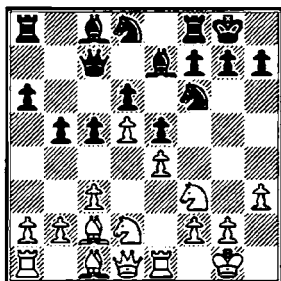
33 ... ♜b5 34 ♜c6 ♜d3 35 ♙c4
♜xd2 36 ♙xd2 ♙f7 37 ♘f5 ♙d8
38 ♘d6 ♙xd5 39 ♜xa6 ♜xa6
40 ♙xa6

The side has perished. Black resigned.

Geller – Smyslov

Palma de Majorca, 1970

13 ... ♖d8



Akiba Rubinstein came up with the plan that begins with this move. Black's ideas are to put his knights on f7 and g7 and under the cover of the knight-pawn hedgehog begin active play on the kingside. Here's an example from old tournament practice:

Thomas-Rubinstein (Baden-Baden, 1925): 14 a4 ♖b8 15 ab ab 16 ♖f1 ♗e8 17 g4 g6 18 ♗g3 ♗g7 19 ♖h1 f6 20 ♗g1 ♖f7 21 ♗f1 ♗d7 22 ♗e3 ♗a8 23 ♗g2 ♗xa1 24 ♗xa1 ♗b7 25 ♖h2 ♗a8 26 ♗f1 ♗a6 27 ♖d2 ♗a8 28 ♗xa6 ♗xa6 29 ♖b3 ♗g5 30 ♖g2 h5 31 h4 ♖f7 32 gh gh 33 ♖h2 ♗c8 34 ♗g2 ♖f8 35 ♖d2 f5 36 ef ♗xh4, and Black is clearly flourishing more than his opponent. Thomas, of course,

conducted the battle in a non-standard manner. The rook file was opened too early. Black was able to exploit the courtesy, which is where it all started from.

14 a4 ♖b8 15 b4 c4 16 ♖f1 ♗e8 17 ab

A delicate moment. Black has accumulated lots of pieces on the eighth rank, so the a-file can be calmly opened – it will be White's.

17 ... ab 18 ♖3h2 f5

A complicated move that did much to determine the fate of the game. Black is striving to prevent f2-f4, after which he either has to let the pawn through to f5 (and then get caught in a vice), or take on f4 and consequently give up an important square in the centre. Here's an example: 18 ... f6 19 f4 ef 20 ♗xf4 ♖f7 21 ♗d4 ♗e5 22 ♗a7 ♖b7 23 ♗ea1 and so on.

19 ef ♗xf5 20 ♗xf5 ♗xf5 21 ♗e3 ♗f8 22 ♖f3 ♖f6 23 ♗g3 ♖f7 24 ♗a7! ♖b7 25 ♗a5 ♗d7 26 ♗d2 ♗fb8 27 ♗ea1 ♗d8 28 ♗a6 h6 29 ♖h2 ♗b6 30 ♖hf1 ♗c7 31 ♗d1 ♖h8 32 ♖h5 ♖xh5 33 ♗xh5 ♗f7 34 ♗xf7+ ♖xf7 35 ♗g3 ♗g6 36 ♖f5 ♗e7

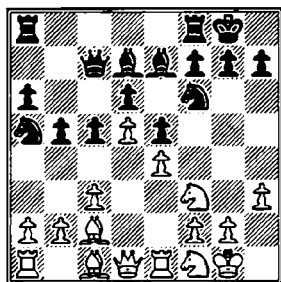
History is repeating itself. Having taken a complicated six-move route, the knight has only just got into the game, but it's

already powerless to prevent the loss of the pawn. White obtained an extra pawn and, after overcoming his technical difficulties, took advantage of it.

In conclusion, an example in which the knight seemingly successfully gets over the fence of the enemy pawns and his own, breaks loose to freedom and actively participates in events. However, it achieves this at no small cost.

Ruy Lopez
Karpov – Andersson
Stockholm, 1969

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♙b5 a6
4 ♙a4 ♘f6 5 0-0 ♙e7 6 ♞e1 b5
7 ♙b3 0-0 8 c3 d6 9 h3 ♘a5 10 ♙c2
c5 11 d4 ♚c7 12 ♘bd2 ♙b7 13 d5
♙c8 14 ♘f1 ♙d7



15 b3

With the aim of restricting the black knight. In general, in

many openings Black puts up with considerable difficulties developing certain pieces. We only need to recall the 'restricted' black bishops in the French Defence or the Benoni. In this case we're dealing with a 'shiftless Spanish knight' that can't find any way to be of use. For the moment the c4 square is unavailable to it, and if Black moves his c-pawn forward, then after b3-b4 that knight, retreating to b7, again won't have any favourable prospects.

15 ... ♘b7 16 c4 ♞fb8 17 ♘e3
♙f8 18 ♘f5 ♘d8 19 ♘h2 ♘e8
20 h4 f6

This speaks of the restrictions of Black's position – having brought one knight into the game, at the same time he takes a square away from the other.

21 h5 ♘f7 22 ♞e3 ♘g5

So, with great difficulty the 'shiftless' Spanish knight has got into the action. However, for this Black had to make the advance f7-f6, which severely weakens the light squares on the kingside. This determines White's strategic plan, which in the end guarantees him victory.

23 ♘h4 ♚d8 24 ♞g3 ♘c7
25 ♘2f3 h6 26 ♘g6 a5 27 a4 bc

28 bc ♖a6 29 ♚e2 ♜a7 30 ♙d2
 ♜ab7 31 ♙c3 ♖b4 32 ♙d1 ♖a6
 33 ♖d2 ♖b4 34 ♜e3 ♙e8 35 ♖f1
 ♚c8 36 ♖g3 ♙d7 37 ♚d2 ♖h7
 38 ♙e2 ♖f7 39 ♚d1 ♙e7 40 ♖f1
 ♙d8 41 ♖h2 ♖g8 42 ♙g4!

An important manoeuvre has been completed. White has carried out a complex operation in order to exchange specifically the light-squared bishops. The dark-squared bishop is so cramped in by his own pawns that it's hardly felt on the board.

42 ... ♖g5 43 ♙xd7 ♚xd7 44 ♖f1
 f5 45 ef ♚xf5 46 ♖g3 ♚f7 47 ♚e2
 ♙f6 48 ♜f1!

White's major pieces are on the brink of bursting into the enemy camp along the open files, while in the meantime the black knights are still fulfilling the role of 'extras'.

48 ... ♚d7 49 f4 ef 50 ♜xf4 ♙xc3
 51 ♜xc3 ♜e8 52 ♜e3 ♜bb8 53 ♚f2
 ♖h7 54 ♖f5 ♜xe3 55 ♚xe3 ♖f6
 56 ♖ge7+ ♖h8 57 ♖xh6 ♜e8
 58 ♖f7+ ♖h7 59 ♜e4 ♜xe7 60 ♜xe7

Black resigned.

And in the next example the b8 knight not only didn't manage to get into play, it didn't manage to make a single move in the entire game.

Queen's Indian Defence

Furman – Polugaevsky

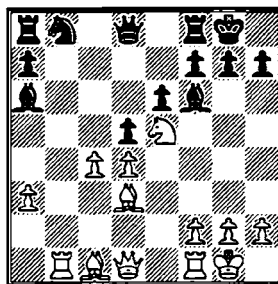
37th Soviet Championship
 Moscow, 1969

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♖f3 ♙b4+
 4 ♖bd2 0-0 5 e3 b6 6 ♙d3 ♙b7
 7 0-0 d5 8 a3 ♙e7 9 b4 c5 10 bc bc
 11 ♜b1 ♙a6

Hinders the development of the queenside. Preferable is 11 ... ♚c8.

12 ♖e5 cd 13 ed ♖fd7 14 ♖df3
 ♖xe5 15 ♖xe5 ♙f6

Now Black will not manage to break out of the vice. The best chance was the exchange sacrifice 15 ... ♙xc4 16 ♖xc4 dc 17 ♙e4 ♖d7.



16 ♚c2 h6 17 ♜d1 ♚c8

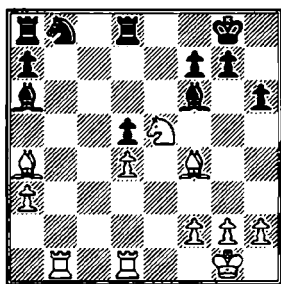
By means of exchanges trying to damp down his opponent's initiative. However, in the endgame, where the value of each piece and pawn sharply increases, the non-participation in the battle

of the b8 knight and a8 rook will be even more strongly felt.

18 cd ♖xc2 19 ♙xc2 ed 20 ♙f4!
 ♚d8

In the event of an exchange on e5 White will take with 21 de, after which a new target for an attack appears – the d5 pawn.

21 ♙a4



All eyes are on the b8 knight. The task is not to allow it into the game.

21 ... ♙e7 22 ♜b3 g5 23 ♙g3 f6
 24 ♘g6

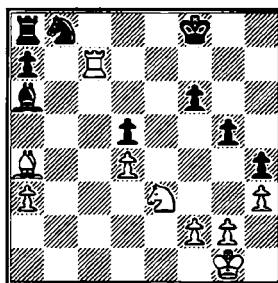
The goal of the last few moves was to exchange off his opponent's active pieces.

24 ... ♙d6 25 ♙xd6 ♜xd6
 26 ♘e7+ ♜f7 27 ♘f5 ♙e6 28 ♜c1!

Not being distracted from the main plan, even to win a pawn.

28 ... h5 29 h3 h4 30 ♜c7+ ♜f8
 31 ♚e3 ♜xe3 32 ♘xe3

The tragedy of the knight is that without the opportunity to take a step, there's no way it can get into the game. It also endures the misfortune and blame for completely blocking the a8 rook.



The result of White's planned strategy. The battle is over.

32 ... ♙d3 33 ♜c8+ ♜f7 34 ♘xd5

Black resigned.

'Club-12'

Dozens of books have been written about miniatures, although to this day no one knows what a miniature is. How many moves are there in one: 10, 15, 25? Without getting into polemics – this isn't our topic – let's create a Club-12 in this book, in which we'll collect duels that ended within 12 moves. Twelve is a good number, sanctified by tradition (there's a reason why there are 12 months in a year).

The most important law of chess

We can point out that 13 is an even more specific number. Yes, but only with negative emotions.

So, our 'Club-12'.

Scandinavian Defence Delbaere – Schuurmans Brussels, 2004

1 e4 d5 2 ed ♘f6 3 ♖b5+

This is one option. It's also possible to play without complicating matters, at the bidding of the classics – 3 d4.

3 ... ♗d7 4 ♗xd7+ ♜xd7 5 c4 c6 6 dc

We don't think it's worth allowing such obvious holes in the centre in return for the pawn. Then again, in the variation 6 d4 cd there is no question of White having an opening advantage.

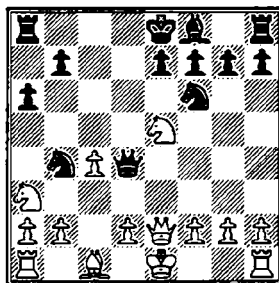
6 ... ♘xc6 7 ♘f3 ♜d3

An expressive, but basically empty attack. The move 7 ... e5 would have indicated initiative-seeking tendencies.

8 ♜e2 ♘b4 9 ♘a3 a6?!

What procrastination! Correct is 9 ... ♘d7, controlling the e5 square.

10 ♗e5 ♜d4



White has won the opening engagement. The move 11 0-0 would consolidate the gains he has made over the last 10 moves.

11 ♜e3? ♜xe5!

A knight down. White resigned.

Ruy Lopez Yurkovic – Zindel Geneva, 1991

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♗b5 a6 4 ♗a4 ♘f6 5 0-0 b5 6 ♗b3 ♗e7 7 ♜e1 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 a4 ♘a5

No matter what happens Black wants to play according to the classical Chigorin system of development. But it was exactly the right time to think about 9 ... b4 or 9 ... ♗g4.

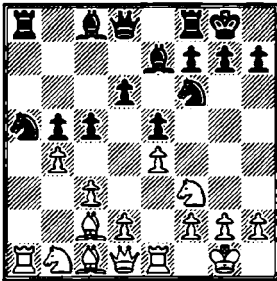
10 ♗c2 c5?

He could still have fought for equality after 10 ... ♗g4.

11 ab ab 12 b4!

That's it. The frisky knight can jump away, of course, but at the expense of the rook.

Black resigned.



Queen's Gambit
Neisner – Hoffman
Prague, 1952

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 dxc3 dxf6 4 g5
c5 5 cd ♖b6

Unnecessary haste. The normal continuation is 5 ... ed.

6 gxf6 gf 7 ♗b3

Theory suggests 7 e3! For example: 7 ... ♗xb2 8 g5+ g7 9 gxd7+ dxd7 10 dge2 cd 11 ♖b1! ♗a3 12 ed with an advantage.

7 ... cd 8 ♗xb6 ab 9 dxb5?

Grist to his opponent's mill. The correct retreat was 9 de4.

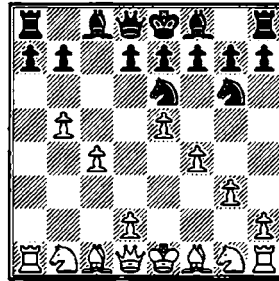
9 ... ♖a5! 10 dxd4 g5+ 11 d1

♙xd5

White resigned. On 12 d3 or 12 e3 there's 12 ... e5.

Sicilian Defence
Marshall – Rogozin
New York, 1940

1 e4 c5 2 b4 cb 3 a3 dxc6 4 ab dxf6
5 b5 d4 6 c3 de6 7 e5 d5 8 c4
dxf4 9 g3 dg6 10 f4



Entertaining! Having made 10 moves only with pawns, White has caught a knight. On 11 ... d7 there are two more pawn moves: 11 f5 dxe5 12 d4.

French Defence
Knoch – Elison
Amsterdam, 1948

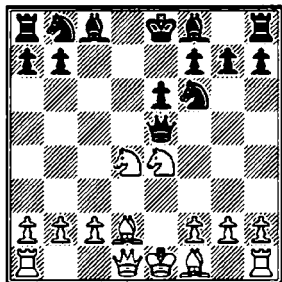
1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 d2 c5 4 dxf3
cd 5 dxd4 de 6 dxe4 d6

It's difficult even to imagine how White could lose this game

The most important law of chess

in two moves. As it turns out, everything goes completely naturally.

7 ♖g5? ♜a5+ 8 ♙d2 ♜e5



That's it. Each knight represents half a kingdom. White resigned.

French Defence

I. Ivanov – Gausel

Gausdal, 1994

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 c5 4 c3 ♟c6
5 ♟f3 ♙d7

It's more common to see the lunge 5 ... ♜b6 here.

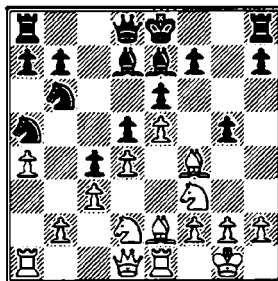
6 a3 (6 ♙d3 looks more logical)
6 ... c4 7 ♙f4 ♟a5 8 ♟bd2 ♟e7
9 ♙e2 ♟c8!? 10 0-0 ♟b6 11 ♞e1?!

Freeing the f1 square for manoeuvres by the minor pieces. However, the rook could be used for play on the kingside: 11 ♙g5!? ♜c7 12 ♟e1 with a subsequent f2-f4.

11 ... ♙e7 12 a4?

White doesn't like the move ♙d7-a4. But the situation demanded pawn movement on the other side – 12 h3 and then 13 ♟h2.

12 ... g5!



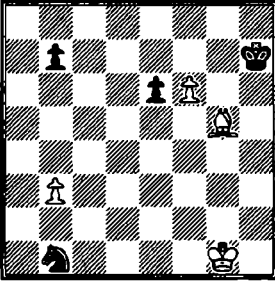
All 32 characters are on the chess stage. White resigned. On a bishop retreat comes the instant 13 ... g4, trapping the knight.

'A golden dozen of studies'

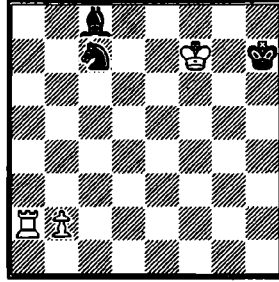
Lassoing a knight isn't an easy thing. It may fail the first time. But if you're persistent, one of these days you may catch a whole herd.

The methods of rounding up an unruly knight are surprisingly ingenious: with the aid of a modest little pawn standing on the side, or with a sacrifice of the most essential pieces, or with a hemmed-in king. In each of the positions there's a win. The answers are in the Solutions chapter at the end of the book.

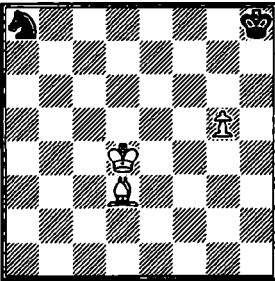
1



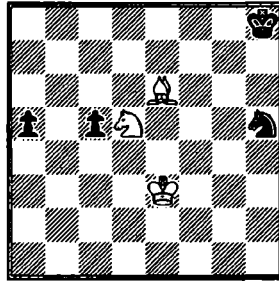
4



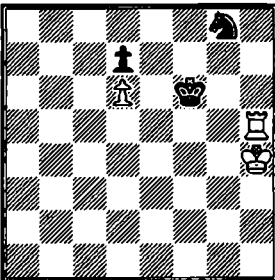
2



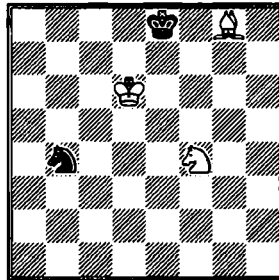
5



3

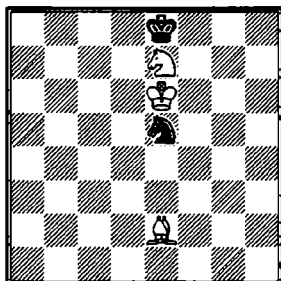


6

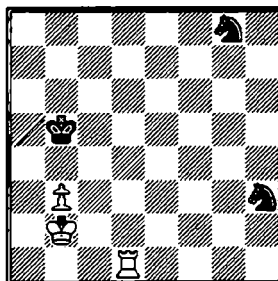


The most important law of chess

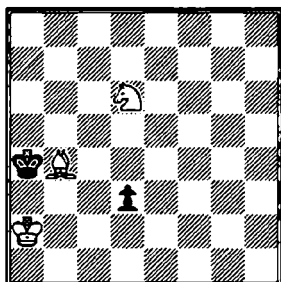
7



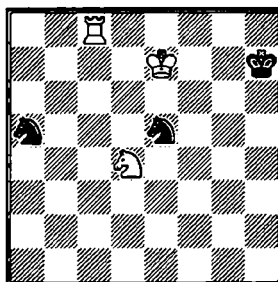
10



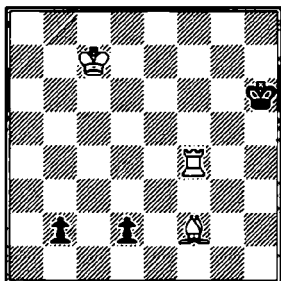
8



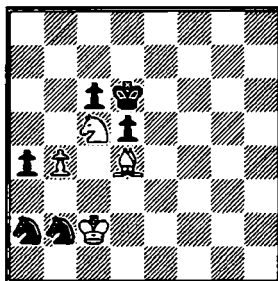
11



9



12



The bishop hunt

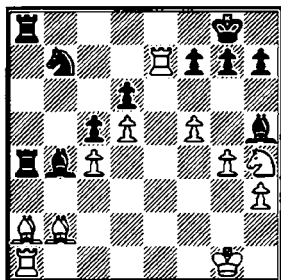
The bishop is a lively, long-range piece. Nevertheless, it also often finds itself in critical situations.

Ruy Lopez

Anand – Shirov

Groningen, 1997

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♗b5 a6
4 ♗a4 ♘f6 5 0-0 b5 6 ♗b3 ♗c5 7 a4
♞b8 8 c3 d6 9 d4 ♗b6 10 ♘a3 0-0
11 ab ab 12 ♘xb5 ♗g4 13 ♗e3 ed
14 cd ♞e8 15 h3 ♗d7 16 ♘c3 ♘xe4
17 ♗e1 ♘xc3 18 bc ♞c8 19 c4 ♗f5
20 ♗e2 ♘a5 21 ♗a2 c5 22 d5 ♗d8
23 ♗d2 ♞a6 24 ♞a4 ♞a8 25 ♗c3
♘b7 26 ♞d1 ♗a5 27 ♗b2 ♗b4
28 ♘h4 ♗g6 29 f4! ♞a4 30 ♞xa4
♞xa4 31 f5 ♞fa8 32 ♗e7 ♗h5 33 g4



An exceedingly elegant enclosure for the bishop.

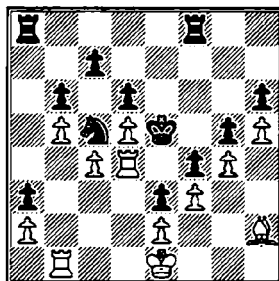
33 ... f6 34 gh ♞xa2 35 ♞xa2 ♞xa2
36 h6! ♞xb2 37 ♗g7+ ♗h8 38 ♞xb7
♗c3 39 ♗d7 ♗g8 40 ♗d8 ♗f7

41 ♞h8 ♗d4+ 42 ♗f1

Black resigned.

Fuster – Pogacs

Budapest, 1950



The final position. White resigned and was right to do so. On the retreat 37 ♞dd1 the move ♞a8-a4 is played, and 38 ♞dc1 allows 38 ... ♗d4, and on 38 ♞bc1 follows 38 ... ♞b4 with the subsequent ♞f8-a8-a4.

These kinds of cases arise, in the first place, from an innate deficiency in the chess bishop – its adherence to one colour – and, in the second place, from the standard methods of developing it in the opening, against which typical methods of fighting have been determined. The order of events is as follows: if luck is on your side and you've managed to exclude the bishop on one side, play immediately transfers to another part of the board. The

The most important law of chess

ensuing battle goes on as if you're a piece up, so exchanges of other pieces strengthen the attacking side's advantage even more.

We can find classical examples of these methods in the games of Capablanca.

Four Knights Opening Winter – Capablanca Hastings, 1919

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♘c3 ♘f6
4 ♗b5 ♗b4 5 0-0 0-0 6 ♗xc6 dc
7 d3 ♗d6 8 ♗g5 h6

Not the usual reflexive move, but the start of a disguised cunning plan, the basis of which is the isolation of his opponent's dark-squared bishop.

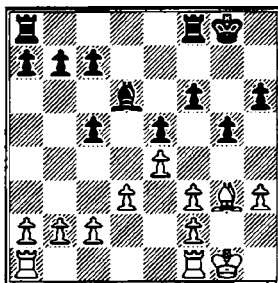
9 ♗h4 c5 10 ♘d5

Strange as it may seem, White now has a very difficult position. If he didn't want to exchange on f6 immediately, he should have preferred 10 ♘d2.

10 ... g5!

Everything is being done in a very timely manner: the sacrifice 11 ♘xg5, which refutes this kind of pawn attack quite often, is impossible now due to 11 ... ♘d5.

11 ♘xf6+ ♗xf6 12 ♗g3 ♗g4
13 h3 ♗xf3 14 ♗xf3 ♗xf3 15 gf f6



In the notes to the game Capablanca wrote: "A simple examination will show that White is minus a Bishop for all practical purposes. He can only free it by sacrificing one Pawn, and possibly not even then. At least it would lose time besides the Pawn. Black now devotes all his energy to the Queen's side ..."

16 ♗g2 a5 17 a4 ♗f7 18 ♖h1 ♗e6
19 h4 ♖fb8 20 hg hg 21 b3 c6
22 ♖a2 b5 23 ♖ha1 c4 24 ab cb3
25 cb ♖xb5 26 ♖a4 ♖xb3 27 d4
♖b5 28 ♖c4 ♖b4 29 ♖xc6 ♖xd4

White resigned.

Of course, the bishop blockade didn't always take place in such convenient circumstances. Its cage certainly doesn't have to be so demonstratively cramped.

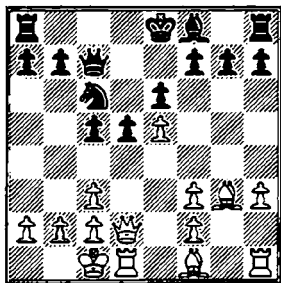
Alekhine's Defence
Yates – Capablanca
 Moscow, 1925

1 e4 ♘f6 2 e5 ♘d5 3 ♘c3 ♘xc3
 4 dc d5 5 ♘f3 c5 6 ♙f4 ♘c6 7 ♚d2
 ♙g4 8 0-0-0

There's an element of bravado in this castling. The knight still needed to be protected – 8 ♙e2.

8 ... e6 9 h3 ♙xf3 10 gf ♚c7
 11 ♙g3

The damaged f2 and f3 pawns are a substantial defect in White's position. In choosing his subsequent plan, Black took into consideration the fact that it would be easy to stop an attack with the move g7-g6.



Consequently, there's no reason to fear a pawn attack on the kingside. This is how the idea of blockading the f1 bishop came about.

11 ... c4! 12 f4 g6 13 ♚b1 h5
 14 ♙h4 ♙e7!

With this kind of pawn setup it would seem unfavourable for Black to exchange off the dark-squared bishops. But Capablanca himself provokes it: when additional pieces disappear, the f1 bishop's inactivity becomes even more pronounced.

15 ♙g5

In the search for counter-chances White gives up another pawn, but with that his work only becomes more complicated.

15 ... ♙xg5 16 fg ♘xe5 17 ♚e3
 0-0 18 ♙e2 ♘c6 19 f4 ♘e7

Black's position is won, the knight is clearly stronger than the bishop. The game ended with a direct attack on the queenside.

20 ♚hg1 ♘f5 21 ♚f2 ♚fe8
 22 ♚ge1 b5 (it begins!) 23 ♙f1 a5
 24 ♚e5 b4 25 ♚e1 ♚eb8 26 ♚a1
 ♚b6 27 ♚d2 ♚ab8 28 ♚b1 ♘d6
 29 ♙g2 ♘b5 30 cb c3 31 bc ♘xc3
 32 ♚b3 ab 33 a3 ♚a6 34 ♚e3 ♚ba8
 35 ♚ex3 bc 36 ♚c1 ♚c5 37 ♚a2
 ♚c4 38 ♚a1 ♚xb3

White resigned.

The tragedy of the bishop is also the theme of this game.

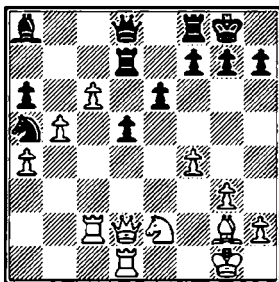
Nimzo-Indian Defence
Lutikov – Krutyansky
 Moscow, 1958

Let's quickly run through the part of the game that isn't of most importance to us.

1 d4 ♟f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♞c3 ♟b4 4 e3
 c5 5 ♞e2 0-0 6 a3 cd 7 ed ♟e7
 8 g3 d5 9 c5 b6 10 b4 bc 11 dc a6
 12 ♟g2 ♞a7 13 0-0 ♞c6 14 ♟b2
 ♞d7 15 ♞a4 ♞ce5 16 ♟d4 ♟f6
 17 ♞c1 ♞c7 18 ♞b3 ♟b7 19 ♞fd1
 ♞a8 20 f4 ♞c6 21 ♟xf6 ♞xf6
 22 ♞b6 ♞d8 23 a4 ♞d7 24 ♞xd7
 ♞xd7 25 b5 ♞a5 26 ♞d3 ♟a8
 27 ♞c2 ♞b8 28 ♞d2 ♞d8

And now let's stop and take a look at the thematic picture.

29 c6



The only antidote to White's pawn attack is a similarly sharp pawn attack in the centre. Black wasn't able to organise it, and here's the payback: the bishop on a8 is in perpetual incarceration.

29 ... ♞b6+ 30 ♞d4!

In essence, Black has one fighting unit less. So – exchanges, exchanges. Because if the remaining pieces on the board are removed two by two, then at the end of the procedure White will have an extra bishop on g2.

30 ... ♞xd4+ 31 ♞xd4 ♞d6
 32 ♞c5 ♞c8

After 33 f5 e5 34 ♞e2 ab 35 ab ♞xc6 36 ♞dxd5 ♞xd5 37 ♟xd5 ♞e7 38 ♞xc8+ ♞xc8 39 ♟xa8 the bishop perished as planned, and Black resigned.

Another example.

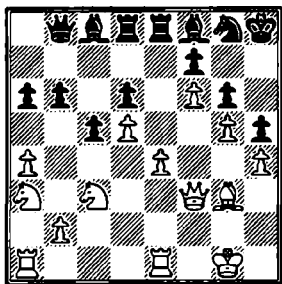
English Opening

Makarychev – Tabachnikov
 Moscow, 1985

1 c4 c5 2 ♞c3 ♞c6 3 ♞f3 ♞f6 4 e3
 e6 5 d4 d6 6 d5 ed 7 cd ♞b8 8 e4
 ♞bd7 9 ♟e2 a6 10 a4 b6 11 0-0
 ♟b7 12 ♞e1 ♟e7 13 ♞d2 0-0 14 f4
 ♞c7 15 ♞c4 ♞fe8 16 ♟f3 ♟f8

If White wants to gain anything, it's time for him to take active measures.

17 g4 ♟h8 18 ♟e3 ♞ad8 19 ♟f2
 ♞b8 20 ♞a3 ♟c8 21 g5 ♞g8
 22 ♟g3 g6 23 f5 ♞e5 24 f6 h6 25 h4
 ♞xf3+ 26 ♞xf3 h5



A textbook position. In order to win, White can prepare a knight sacrifice on h5 or a breakthrough on the queenside. It all hinges on the fact that Black's bishop, knight and king are permanent prisoners of the f6 and g5 pawns. There's also a third winning plan – open the centre.

27 ♖e3 ♗d7 28 ♜e2 ♝b7 29 ♘c4 ♙g4 30 ♜h2 ♝b8 31 e5 de 32 ♗xe5 ♝b7 33 ♘xg4 hg 34 ♖xe8 ♖xe8 35 h5 ♘h7 36 ♖f1 c4 37 hg+ ♘xg6 38 ♝c2+ ♘g5 39 ♝f5+ ♘h6 40 ♙f4 mate.

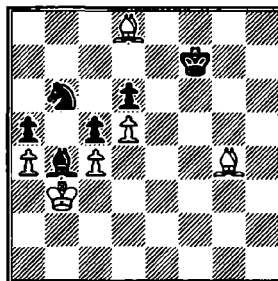
In another category there are positions in which a bishop is constrained by its own pawns. On our way we'll take two entertaining positions.

Kobaidze – Tsereteli

Tbilisi, 1970

Sometimes it's quite easy to calculate the saving chance. The main thing is to sense, assume and see that it exists. The rest, as

they say, is a matter of the usual technique.



Having discerned that 37 ... ♖a8 38 ♙h5+ was hopeless, Black found a wonderful chance:

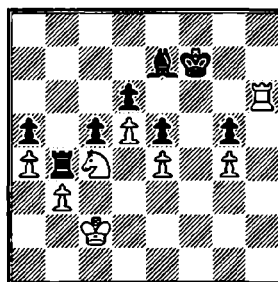
37 ... ♗e8!! 38 ♙xb6 ♗e7

It took just two moves to go from an apparently hopeless position to salvation. White's dark-squared bishop is in a 'pen'. It can neither get out nor be successfully sacrificed. Draw.

In the finale of the next example the bishop was caught by its own pawns.

Korelov – Kalnynysh

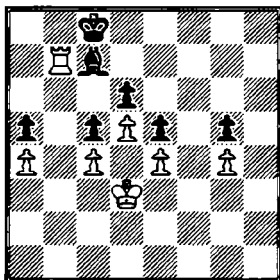
Riga, 1963



The most important law of chess

The knight is clearly stronger than the bishop. Defeat? Black finds a subtle and amusing way to save himself.

37 ... ♖xc4!! 38 bc ♔e8 39 ♖h8+ ♔d7 40 ♖a8 ♕d8 41 ♖a7+ ♔c7 42 ♔d3 ♔c8 43 ♖b7!



A beautiful revenge for 37 ... ♖xc4. In the event of 43 ♖a8+ ♔d7! 44 ♖g8 ♕d8 he still didn't manage to win. Now the rook can be taken (43 ... ♔xb7), but with that the result of the game won't change: draw.

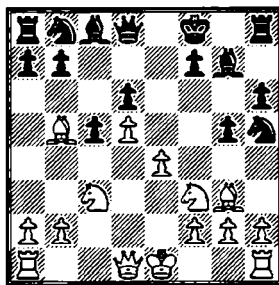
The idea of restricting the bishop and isolating it among its own pawns has determined the fate of many games.

Benoni

Miles – Hernandez

Amsterdam, 1977

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♔f3 c5 4 d5 ed 5 cd d6 6 ♘c3 g6 7 e4 ♕g7 8 ♕g5 h6 9 ♕h4 g5 10 ♕g3 ♘h5 11 ♕b5+ ♔f8



This position has occurred in tournaments again and again. In preventing the counterattack a7-a6 and b7-b5, White usually retreated with 12 ♕e2, until the idea finally came into his head to sacrifice a pawn and play for the destruction not of the f8 king, but the g7 bishop.

12 e5! ♘xg3 13 fg!

A pawn should take towards the centre – that school rule is almost always fair. But in the concrete situation that has unfolded, White must open the f-file in order to implement his idea.

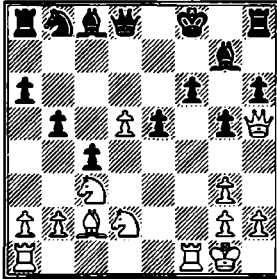
13 ... de 14 0-0 a6

An important stroke: White has only spent four minutes thinking, his opponent – one hour 27 minutes. It's clear that the whole operation against the g7 pawn was thought through at home in detail.

15 ♕d3 b5 16 ♘d2 c4 17 ♖h5

A valuable tempo in the attack. It was secured by the 13th move. Black doesn't manage to hold the f7 pawn. For example, 17 ... ♖a7 18 ♖g6 ♜e8 19 ♜ce4 ♜g8 20 ♜xf7! ♜xf7 21 ♜d6 with a win.

17 ... f6 18 ♖c2



And now the bishop is completely bricked up on g7 Black's draughts setup on the kingside and the wind that blows through it on the light-squared diagonals compensates for the sacrificed pawn with interest.

18 ... ♖d7 19 a4

A typical method. One of your opponent's pieces has come to a standstill on one flank – play immediately transfers to the other side of the board. You have to expand the battle front, punch new roads through – then it will be easier to play the 'extra piece'.

19 ... ♖e8 20 ♖g6 ♜d7 21 ab ♖xg6 22 ♜xg6 ab 23 ♜xa8 ♜xa8 24 ♜de4

The outcome of the battle has been predetermined. He won't be saved from the threat 25 ♜d6 by 24 ... ♜b8 due to 25 ♜xb5. In essence, Black is being defeated without even managing to really play chess. Out of chagrin he's still putting up a fight, but it's already too late to save the game, of course.

24 ... ♜e8 25 ♜f5 ♜d8 26 ♜h1 ♜g8 27 ♜xb5 ♜b8 28 ♜bd6 h5 29 ♜xc4 h4 30 g4 h3 31 ♜e3 hg+ 32 ♜xg2 ♜b6 33 ♜xf6+ ♖xf6 34 ♜xf6 ♜xf6 35 ♜xf6

Two pawns up in a peaceful position – a guaranteed win.

White knows another cunning method of isolating a fianchettoed dark-squared bishop.

Sicilian Defence

Sokolov – Ribli

Montpellier, 1985

1 e4 c5 2 ♜f3 d6 3 d4 cd 4 ♜xd4 ♜f6 5 ♜c3 a6 6 f4 ♜c7 7 ♖e2 e6 8 0-0 ♖e7 9 ♜h1 0-0 10 a4 ♜c6 11 ♖e3 ♜e8 12 ♖f3 ♜b8 13 ♜d2 ♖d7 14 ♜b3 b6 15 g4 ♖c8 16 g5 ♜d7 17 ♖g2 ♖a5 18 ♜f2 ♖f8

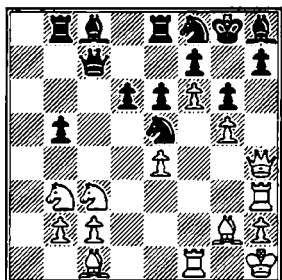
The first cause of the subsequent difficulties. Correct is 18 ... ♜c4. Then 19 ♖c1 excludes the a1 rook from the game.

The most important law of chess

19 ♖ad1 ♜c4 20 ♙c1

And now - everything is convenient.

20 ... b5 21 ab ab 22 ♖d3 g6
23 ♙h3 ♙g7 24 f5 ♜ce5 25 ♜h4
♜f8 26 f6 ♙h8



So, the bishop is isolated. White's next task is to knock the enemy knight out of the centre and bring his own to the g4 square.

27 ♜d4 b4 28 ♜d1 ♙a6 29 ♙e1
♙ec8 30 ♜e3

Threatening 31 ♜f3 with the subsequent manoeuvre ♜e3-g4.

30 ... h5

And now a new goal appears - a piece sacrifice on h5.

31 ♜f3 ♜f7

It's clear that 31 ... ♜xf3 32 ♙xf3 is favourable to White, who's already prepared for 33 ♙xh5.

32 ♜d2! ♜f8 33 ♜df1 b3 34 ♜g3

♜e8 35 ♜xh5 gh 36 ♜xh5 ♜g6
37 ♜f5!

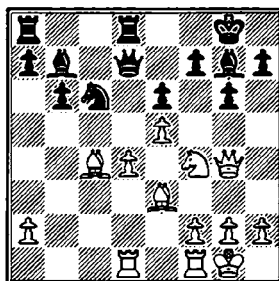
Threatening 38 ♜xh8+ ♜xh8 39 ♜g7+ ♜d8 40 ♙xh8+ ♜f8 41 ♙x8+ winning. Now was the moment for the counter-sacrifice 37 ... ♜xf6! 38 gf ♙xf6, helping the bishop.

37 ... ♙xf6? 38 gf ef 39 ef+ ♜ge5
40 ♜h8+ ♜f8 41 ♜xf8+!

Black resigned.

Grunfeld Defence
Balashov – Gulko
Leningrad, 1978

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3 d5 4 cd
♜xd5 5 e4 ♜xc3 6 bc ♙g7 7 ♙c4
0-0 8 ♜e2 ♜d7 9 0-0 b6 10 e5 ♙b7
11 ♜f4 e6 12 ♜g4 c5 13 ♙e3 ♜c6
14 ♖ad1 cd 15 cd ♙fd8



With his tenth move White has placed a solid prop in the path of the g7 bishop. Furthermore, the pawn wedge d4 and e5 in effect has increased the space for his

kingside operations. He has also sent his main forces over there.

16 h4!

On the one hand, to undermine the king's redoubt with the manoeuvre h4-h5xg6, and on the other ... well, we'll now see for ourselves.

16 ... ♖ac8 17 h5 ♘b4 18 ♙b3 ♙e4

Speedily to the rescue. 19 hg hg 20 ♘xf6! fg 21 ♙xe6+ was threatened. But now all the hotspots are apparently covered.

19 h6 ♙f5 20 ♗g3 ♙h8

Taking the pawn loses: 20 ... ♙xh6 21 ♘h5. Retreating to f8 means having to exchange the dark-squared bishops: 20 ... ♙f8 21 ♘h5 ♙e7 (21 ... ♗c6 22 ♙g5 – the rook can't escape) 22 ♙g5. Black moved his bishop back into the corner, hoping fervently for a future undermining f7-f6.

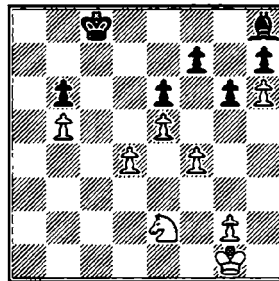
21 ♘h5 ♗f8 22 ♘f4 ♙c2 23 ♙d2 a5 24 ♙xb4+ ab 25 ♙xc2 ♖xc2 26 ♗b3 ♗c7 27 ♗xb4+ ♗g8 28 a4 ♖c4 29 ♗b5 ♗f8 30 ♘e2 ♖d5 31 ♗b3

Black's main problem isn't the pawn he's given up. The activity of his rooks can

compensate for this to some extent. The chronic deficiency of his position is the calamitous position of the h8 bishop. There's nothing to help it out of the corner (31 ... f6 32 f4).

31 ... ♗e8 32 ♖b1 ♖d8 33 ♖fd1 ♖c2 34 ♖dc1 ♖c8 35 ♖xc2 ♗xc2 36 ♗b5+

Black resigned. After the forced 36 ... ♗c6 (36 ... ♗e7 37 ♖c1) 37 ♖c1! ♗xb5 38 ♖xc8+ ♗d7 39 ab ♗xc8 40 f4! the following characteristic position arose.



White wins easily, even without bringing the king into the game.

Of course, to deal with the enemy bishop so demonstratively and firmly is a big success. In practical play even temporarily disconnecting the enemy bishop from the main events gives you a considerable advantage and allows you to implement active plans.

Caro-Kann
Bronstein – Belyavsky
Yerevan, 1975

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♜xe4
♙f5 5 ♜c5

More often the knight is retreated to g3. The purpose of the move chosen by grandmaster David Bronstein was to provoke b7-b6 and thereby weaken Black's position on the queenside (the a6 square and the c6 pawn).

5 ... ♛b6 6 g4!?

Grandmasters' plans don't change from move to move. On the contrary, devised in advance, they help to find the most unexpected continuations. Even now White is thinking about playing against the f5 bishop, and an important link in that will be a sacrifice of the pawn on b2.

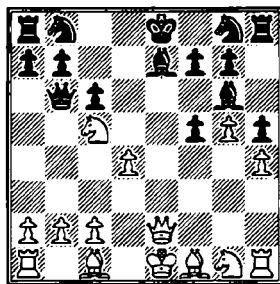
6 ... ♙g6 7 f4 e6 8 ♛e2 ♙e7

Obviously it was impossible to take twice on c5 because of 10 f5, and the bishop is trapped.

9 h4 h5

If the g4 pawn is exchanged off, then the tears in White's pawn chain can no longer be patched up.

10 f5 ef 11 g5



White's idea has been revealed. At the price of a pawn he has excluded the g6 bishop from the game. Of course, the pawn can be given back (f5-f4), and the bishop's path is opened, but then with material equality White will have an obvious space advantage – 12 ♜h3 and so on.

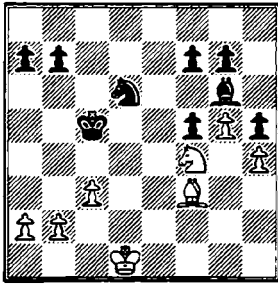
When evaluating the players' subsequent actions, we should remember: the closer to the endgame, the more distinctly the poor position of the g6 bishop will make itself felt. But the road to the endgame is long. White is appreciably behind in development and his primary concern is to bring his pieces into play.

11 ... ♜d7 12 ♜b3 ♛c7 13 ♜h3
0-0-0 14 ♙f4 ♙d6 15 ♛h2 ♜f8
16 0-0-0 ♜e6 17 ♙xd6 ♜xd6
18 ♙c4 ♜e7 19 ♜f4 ♜xf4 20 ♛xf4
♜dd8 21 ♛xc7+ ♜xc7 22 c3 ♜he8
23 ♜c5 ♜c8 24 ♜d3 ♜d6 25 ♙b3
♜e3 26 ♜f4 ♜de8 27 ♜hg1 ♜8e7
28 ♜df1 ♜e4 29 ♙d1 ♜d6 30 ♙f3

c5 31 dc+ ♖xc5 32 ♘g2 ♜d3 33 ♘f4
 ♜d8(?) 34 ♜d1 ♜ed7 35 ♜xd7 ♜xd7
 36 ♜d1 ♜xd1+ 37 ♖xd1 ♘d6

ab 43 cb ♘e7 44 a5 f6

Finally the bishop has obtained the opportunity to at least have a look at what's happening on the board. Alas, it's too late. The game ended after 45 gf gf 46 ♖c5 ♙f7 47 b5 ♖c8 48 b6 Black resigned.



White has achieved a great deal in a difficult battle. All of his opening dreams have come true. Black, on the other hand, is doing very badly. Having overestimated his opportunities, he rejected a repetition of moves (33 ... ♜e3), and now he can't avoid defeat. White has, in essence, not only an extra piece in play, but also an extra pawn on c3.

The battle for good bishops (yours) and bad ones (your opponent's) usually begins in the early opening. Let's take an illustration from the Dutch Defence.

38 ♖c2 a5 39 a4 ♖b6

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 ♘c3 f5

It started with the Queen's Gambit and turned out, as promised, to be a Dutch: we'll investigate the game Schlechter – John (Berlin, 1905).

The retreat has provoked the following chain of thought: in order to obtain at least some kind of counterplay, f7-f6 must be undertaken. For this the bishop must be defended by the knight from e7. An immediate 39 ... ♘c8 is impossible because of 40 ♙xb7. Perhaps start with 39 ... b6? But then 40 ♘d3+ ♖c4 41 b3 mate.

4 ♘f3 c6 5 ♙f4 ♙d6 6 e3 ♘f6
 7 ♙d3 ♖c7 8 g3!

His opponent's pawn chain has established itself on the light squares. So play starts for a logical blockade of the light-squared bishop.

40 ♖d3 ♖c7 41 ♖d4 ♘c8 42 b4

8 ... 0-0 9 0-0 ♘e4 10 ♖b3 ♖h8
 11 ♜ac1 ♙xf4 12 ef ♖f7 13 ♘e5
 ♖e7 14 ♙xe4! fe 15 f3 ef 16 ♜ce1
 ♖c7 17 ♖a3!

White successfully accomplishes the plan he thought up. The bishop has lost its prospects,

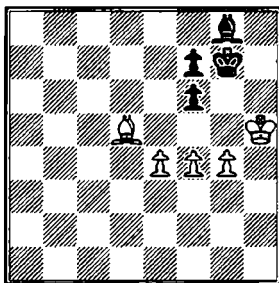
The most important law of chess

which soon led to Black having a noticeable lack of active pieces.

In the French Defence after **1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 c3 b4 4 e5** Black often plays **4 ... b6** and then exchanges the light-squared bishops via a6: such actions are suggested by his pawn chain, which is stuck on the light squares. An example of active and deliberate actions from the first moves.

And here are examples of the same themes in the endgame.

Loginov – Kurlyandchik
Daugavpils, 1976



Were the bishop at liberty, say somewhere around f1, the extra pawn wouldn't be enough for a win.

57 f5!

The bishop won't be getting out of this trap now.

57 ... h7 (problems don't arise with a retreat of the king: **57 ... f8 58 h6 e8 59 g7 58 g5 fg**)

On **58 ... g8** he could choose between **59 g6** and **59 gf+ xf6 60 h6**.

59 xg5 g8 60 e5 h7 61 e4! g8

Play is also simple in the event of **61 ... f6+ 62 ef+ f8 63 d5 e8 64 e6**.

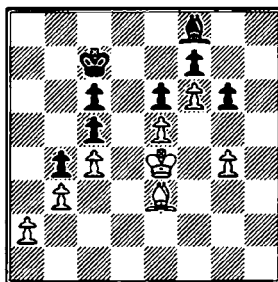
62 f6+ h8 63 h6 h7

The last chance. Maybe White will take the bishop.

64 e6! fe 65 f7

Black resigned.

Khalilbeyli – Volovich
Moscow, 1964



The plan for exploiting the obvious positional superiority is the following. White transfers his king to g5 and forces the enemy king to stay close to the f7 pawn –

the threat of ♙e3xc5 arises with the breakthrough ♜g5-h6-g7 . In the next stage the bishop goes down to c1 to support the move a2-a4.

Then there are two variations. If Black doesn't take *en passant* b4xa3, then the bishop returns to e3, the a4 pawn distracts the black king and a sacrifice on c5 follows. With taking *en passant* the opportunity arises to break through into his opponent's home front with the bishop or the king via the a5 square.

34 ♜f3

It was possible to let it all slip with the inaccurate 34 ♜f4 – 34 ... ♙h6+ 35 ♜f3 ♙xe3 36 ♜xe3 ♜d7 37 ♜f4 ♜e8 38 ♜g5 ♜f8 39 ♜h6 ♜g8 – draw.

34 ... ♜d7 35 ♜g3 ♜c8 36 ♜h4 ♜d7 37 ♜g5 ♜c8 38 ♙c1 ♜c7 39 a4! ba 40 ♙xa3 ♜d7 41 ♙b2 ♜c7 42 ♙c3 ♜b6

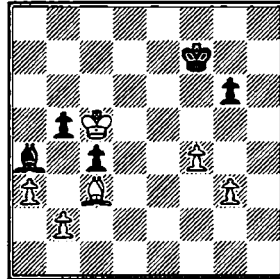
The planned programme has been carried out. What next, though?

43 ♜f4 ♜a6 44 g5

Black resigned. His opponent's king transfers to a4 without hindrance and supports the manoeuvre ♙c3-a5-d8-e7 , after which follows the decisive penetration ♜a4-a5-b6 .

And now an episode from the life of opposite-coloured bishops.

Minogina – Grosh
Moscow, 1979



At first glance Black has managed to fortify his position. He has waiting moves with the king on the squares e6 and f7, and in the event of ♜c5-d6 the bishop is released. Is it released?

55 b3!! cb

It's clear that after 55 ... ♙xb3 56 ♜xb5 the a4 pawn quickly decides the outcome of the duel.

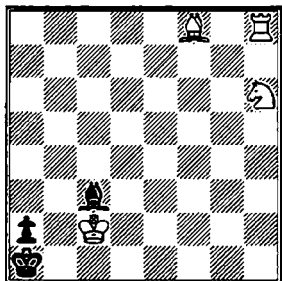
56 ♙b2 !

The picture has dramatically changed. The bishop is hemmed in and everything ends in a few moves.

56 ... ♜f6 57 g4 b4 58 ab ♙e8 59 b5

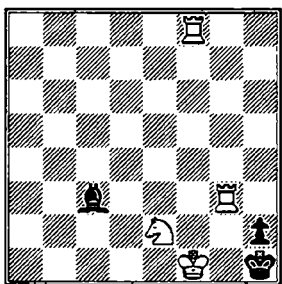
Black resigned.

To conclude this section – two curious study miniatures.



Mate in three

An ingenious idea is revealed in an unexpected variation: 1 ♖f5! ♙xh8 (1 ... ♙e1 is met by 2 ♙g7+) 2 ♜g7!! ♙xg7 3 ♙xg7 mate.



Mate in three

With the artless 1 ♜g2 the bishop manages to defuse the situation: 1 ... ♙e1! 2 ♜h8 ♙h4! The correct path: 1 ♜h8! ♙xh8 (the threat is 2 ... ♙g1 mate, and the defence 1 ... ♙d4 doesn't work because of 2 ♜g2) 2 ♜g7!! (on an indifferent rook move comes 2 ... ♙e5) 2 ... ♙xg7 3 ♜g3 mate.

'Club-12'

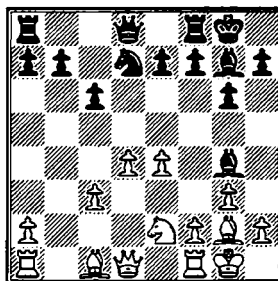
Twelve moves aren't so few. Sometimes the bishop can be caught much quicker.

English Opening
Srba – Konicek
Litomysl, 2003

1 c4 ♖f6 2 ♜c3 d5 3 cd ♜xd5
4 g3 c6 5 ♙g2 g6 6 d4 ♙g7 7 e4
♜xc3 8 bc 0-0 9 ♜e2 ♙g4 10 0-0

Each of these moves could probably be replaced with another one, equal or even slightly better, but in general the battle is following the usual classical course, and both players are worthy of each other.

10 ... ♜d7?



A mistake from the 18th century. In those happy, childish carefree times for chess it was believed that every opening move should be spent on the development of a new piece (rhythm: 'move –

piece', 'move - piece'), not worrying in the least about any kinds of schemes or plans for subsequent play. These days the correct approach is first 10 ... ♖a5 with a complex aim: a) don't let the bishop get to a3, b) pester the c3 pawn and c) retain control over the d5 square.

11 f3! ♗e6

After h5 it's very unpleasant - 12 g4.

12 d5

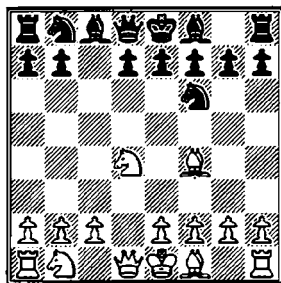
Black has two paths. The first is to lose the bishop: 12 ... cd 13 ed ♗f5 14 g4 he chose the second - he resigned.

Queen's Pawn Game

Lanu - Halik

Vienna, 1932

1 d4 ♘f6 2 ♘f3 c5 3 ♗f4? cd
4 ♘xd4



4 ... e5! 5 ♗xe5 ♖a5+

White resigned.

A graphic lesson. Alas! It was repeated move for move in the game Agzamov-Veremeychik from the Soviet Junior Championship (1968). True, White already resigned out of disappointment after 4 ... e5.

A higher-ranking tournament - the World Junior Championship - also didn't pass off without an opening sensation.

French Defence

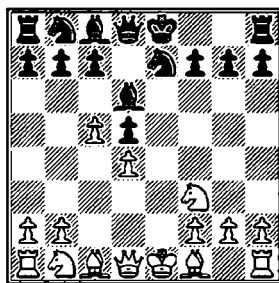
Svobodova - Preiser

Hlohovec, 1993

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ed ed 4 ♘f3
♗d6 5 c4 ♗e7??

Disastrous automation!

6 c5



There was nothing for it but to stop the clocks. By the way, that was nothing new. All this had already occurred in the game Harsen-Rodes (Dortmund, 1980).

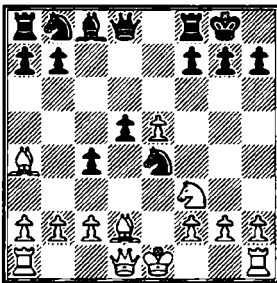
The most important law of chess

Centre Game
Abt – Inkol
 Ontario, 1979

1 e4 e5 2 d4 ed 3 ♖c4 ♗f6 4 e5
 d5 5 ♗b3?

He should have played a check. Then 5 ... c6 is bad because of 6 ef cb 7 ♗e2+. He would have had to close up with the bishop or the knight, the pawn would easily be won back, and the game would have continued.

5 ... ♗e4 6 ♗f3 ♗b4+ 7 ♗bd2 0-0
 8 ♗xd4 ♗xd2+ 9 ♗xd2 c5 10 ♗f3
 c4 11 ♗a4



11 ... b5! 12 ♗xb5 ♗b6

Having drawn a 'Great Bear' on the board (f1-c4-b3-a4-b5), the bishop perishes ingloriously.

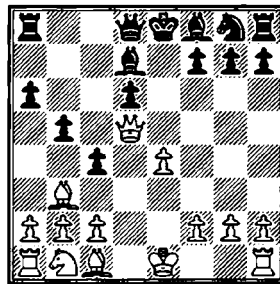
White resigned.

Ruy Lopez
Steiner – Capablanca
 Budapest, 1929

1 e4 e5 2 ♗f3 ♗c6 3 ♗b5 a6
 4 ♗a4 d6 5 d4 b5 6 ♗b3 ♗xd4
 7 ♗xd4 ed 8 ♗xd4?

A rash action. He could have retained a decent game with 8 c3 (but not 8 0-0 c5 9 c3 – 9 ... c4 10 ♗c2 d3).

8 ... c5 9 ♗d5 ♗e6 10 ♗c6+ ♗d7
 11 ♗d5 c4



White resigned.

Nimzo-Indian Defence
Botvinnik – Sorokin
 Leningrad, 1933

1 c4 ♗f6 2 ♗c3 e6 3 d4 ♗b4
 4 ♗c2 d5 5 cd ed 6 ♗g5 ♗d6

More solid is the plan with h7-h6, 0-0, c7-c6, ♗b8-d7 etc.

7 e3 ♗e4 8 ♗f4 ♗g6

With the prosaic trap: 9 ♗xc7? ♗xc3 10 ♗xg6 ♗e4+ and 11 ... hg.

9 ♖b3! c5 10 f3 ♜xc3

It was also possible to pay off the pawn – 10 ... ♜f6.

11 bc ♙a5 12 ♙xb8!

Black resigned. Taking the bishop on b8 means losing the bishop on a5.

Ruy Lopez

Hort – Zhelyandinov

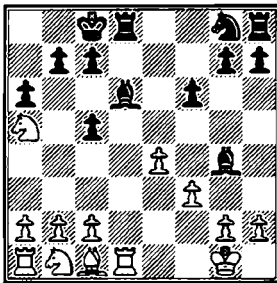
Havana, 1967

1 e4 e5 2 ♟f3 ♜c6 3 ♙b5 a6
4 ♙xc6 dc 5 0-0 f6 6 d4 ed 7 ♜xd4
c5 8 ♜b3 ♝xd1 9 ♜xd1 ♙d6
10 ♜a5 ♙g4?

We have to suppose this is home preparation that turns into an unexpected catastrophe.

11 f3 0-0-0

In the calculation for 12 fg ♙xh2+ 13 ♜xh2 ♜xd1 14 ♜c3 ♝e1 15 b3 h5 – the position is problematic, but ...



12 e5!

Black resigned.

English Opening

Petrosian – Ree

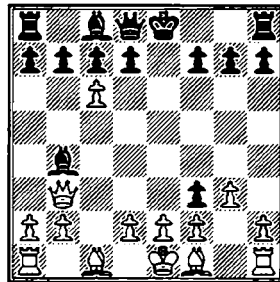
Wijk aan Zee, 1971

1 c4 e5 2 ♜c3 ♜f6 3 ♟f3 ♜c6
4 g3 ♙b4 5 ♜d5 ♜xd5 6 cd e4?

A loss. Correct is 6 ... ♜d4, as taking the pawn is foolhardy due to 7 ♜xe5 ♝e7 8 f4 (8 ♜d3 – 8 ... ♟f3 mate) 8 ... d6 9 ♜d3 ♝e4, and 7 ♜xd4 ed leaves Black the chance to fight for equality.

7 dc ef 8 ♝b3!

Black resigned, the bishop can't be saved: on 8 ... a5 follows 9 a3, and retreating from b4 is impossible because of 9 cb.



French Defence

Tseshkovsky – Shofman

Kiev, 1969

1 e4 e6 2 ♜c3 d5 3 ♟f3 d4?

Too early.

4 ♜e2 ♜c6 5 c3! e5 6 cd ed 7 ♝a4
♙c5 8 b4! ♙xb4

The most important law of chess

Now White is attacking the knight and the queen in turn, but his main aim is the 'hanging' b4 bishop.

9 dxd4 dxe7 10 xb5 wd6 11 e5
 wc5 12 db3 !

Black resigned.

Ruy Lopez

Imanaliev – Xuereb

Manila, 1992

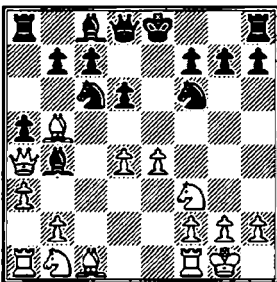
1 e4 e5 2 df3 dc6 3 xb5 df6
 4 0-0 xc5 5 c3 d6?

The correct decision is 5 ... 0-0, planning on 6 d4 xb6 7 de the rebuttal 7 ... dxe4 .

6 d4 ed 7 cd xb4

Retreating to b6 means losing the bishop: 7 ... xb6 8 d5 a6 9 xa4 .

8 wa4 a5 9 a3

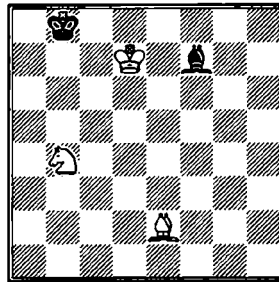


The bishop's individual life only continues for two more moves. Black resigned.

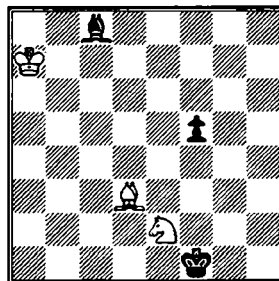
'A golden dozen of studies'

Hunting for powerful bishops completely indiscriminately is known as poaching. But we have 12 licences for you – so you can embark on a big hunt with a clear conscience. In each of the positions you have to win.

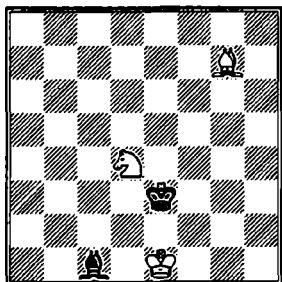
13



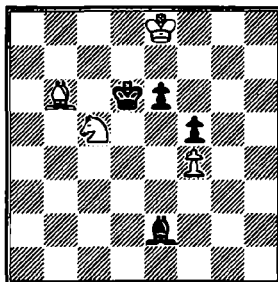
14



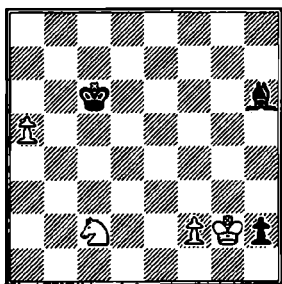
15



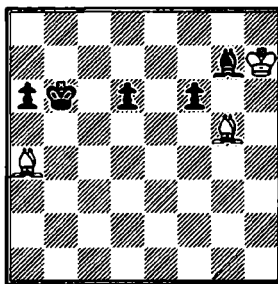
18



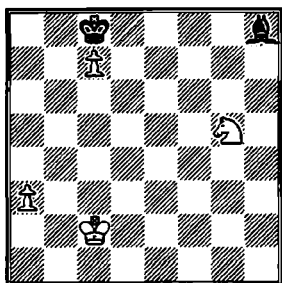
16



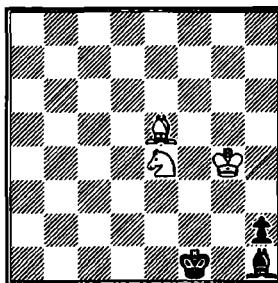
19



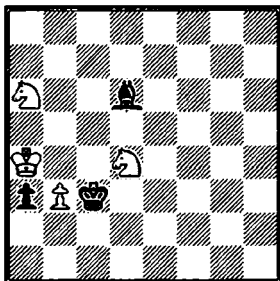
17



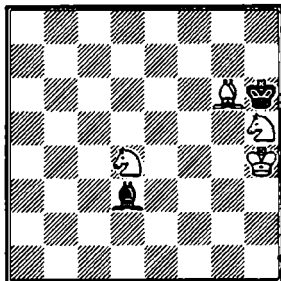
20



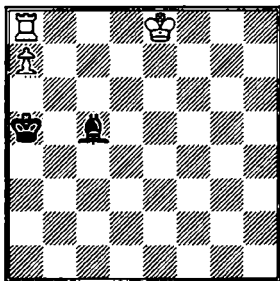
21



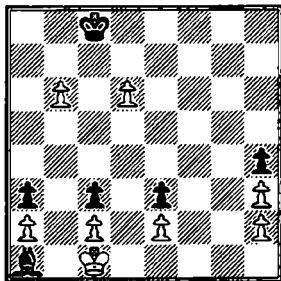
23



22



24



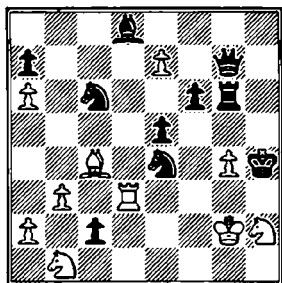
How difficult it is to be a rook

There was a time, back in the days of shatranj, when the rook was the most far-ranging, strongest piece on the board, but then its fate changed. The queen came out on top, and the bishops also increased their speed. In modern chess the rook usually slumbers behind a pawn enclosure in the opening. And the rook only becomes very

dangerous when the situation is turning into an open battle. Removing it from play even for a while is a big success.

Before getting into some not-so-great memories (which will indeed be our task), let's look at an example where the chubby little rook demonstrates a miracle of virtuosity, becoming fearless like a slalom racer and graceful like a figure skater.

A. Matsukevich, 1980



Mate in 15

Let's begin: 1 ♖h3+ ♕g5 2 ♖h5+ ♕f4 3 ♖f5+ ♕e3 4 ♖f3+ ♕d4 5 ♖d3+

A superb turn! The rook started its journey from here not so long ago, but now it's already driving the enemy king in front of it.

5 ... ♕c5 6 ♖d5+ ♕b6

On b4, as if in a snowstorm - 7 ♖b5 mate.

7 ♖b5+ ♕c7

Very clear also is the variation 7 ... ♕xa6 8 ♖b8+ ♕a5 9 ed♖+ ♕xd8 10 ♖b4+ ♕a4 11 ♖b3 mate.

8 ♖b7+ ♕d6

Of course, going to c8 with the king isn't interesting - 9 ♖e6 mate. Now, though, the journey continues on the other side.

9 e8=♖+! ♕c5 10 ♖b5+ ♕d4 11 ♖d5+ ♕e3 12 ♖d3+ ♕f4

He won't manage to hide behind the pawn: 12 ... ♕e2 13 ♖f3+ ♕d1 (e1) 14 ♖f1 mate.

13 ♖f3+ ♕g5 14 ♖f5+ ♕h4 (h6).

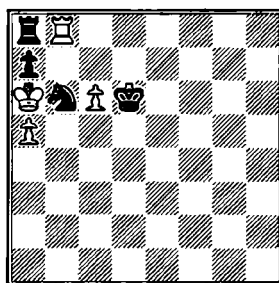
Congratulations on your return!

15 ♖h5 mate.

In the course of the resolution the black king received the highest form of chess punishment on the squares b4, a4, c8, d1, e1, h6 and h4.

This supply of optimism, we hope, will help us to endure a cascade of examples in which the rook is killed by all the chess pieces respectively.

Klyatskin, 1924



Win

It's easy to see that the immediate 1 ab doesn't lead to success, but there's a cleverer opportunity.

The most important law of chess

1 c7! ♖xc7

And now, when the black king goes into check, it's time.

2 ab+ ♖xb8 3 b7!

What a trick: Black is a rook up and it's his turn to move, but he has to resign.

A few more cases where the pawns are in the leading roles.

meanwhile time is passing ...

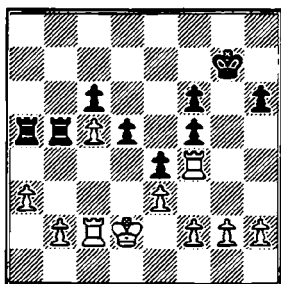
35 h3 ♖xc5 36 ♖xc5 ♖xc5 37 g4 fg 38 hg h4

So it's all come out. The rook has gained its freedom, but a very dangerous passed pawn has appeared for Black.

White resigned after 39 ♖f8 ♖g7 40 ♖f4 ♖b5 41 ♖c3 ♖g6

Porat – Bronstein

Interzonal Tournament, 1964



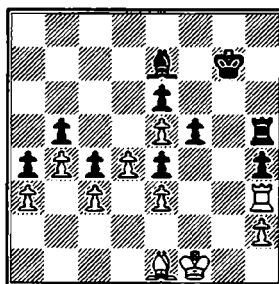
It seems that White shouldn't be particularly worried, as on 32 ... ♖g6 he has 33 g4. Grandmaster David Bronstein had taken this possibility into account.

32 ... h5! 33 ♖xf5 ♖g6 34 ♖f4 f5

At the price of a pawn he's managed to isolate the rook, even if only for a while. White will now take measures and get the prisoner out of trouble, but

Golovko – Orlov

Moscow, 1961



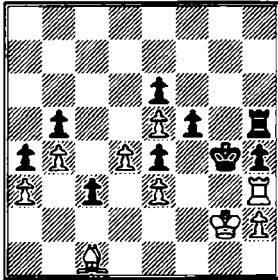
The h3 rook is in trouble. It's enough for Black simply to improve the position of his pieces in order to win. It's impossible to stop him.

31 ... ♖g6 32 ♖d2 ♖g5 33 ♖c1

On 33 ♖e1 Black prepared the breakthrough f5-f4: 33 ... ♖g4 34 ♖g2 ♖h8 35 ♖d2 ♖f8 36 ♖e1 ♖g5 37 ♖d2 f4 38 ef ♖xf4! 39 ♖xf4 ♖xf4 40 d5 ed 41 e6 ♖g5 42 ♖e3 ♖f5 with a win.

33 ... ♖g4 34 ♜g2 ♙xb4! 35 ab

There's an amusing thematic position after 35 cb c3!



35 ... ♖h8 36 ♙a3

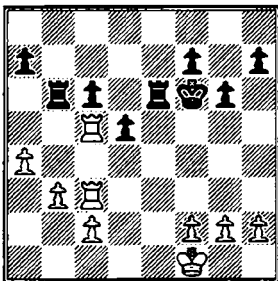
On 36 ♙b2 he can choose between 36 ... ♖a8 37 ♙a3 ♖a7 and 36 ... a3 37 ♙xa3 ♖a8.

36 ... ♖a8

White resigned.

Matsukevich – Borodin

By correspondence, 1965



A more complicated case.

31 a5 ♖a6 32 b4

White has managed to solidly brick up his opponent's rook. However, by comparison with the previous example Black's situation isn't so lamentable. For a win it's necessary to exchange off the e6 rook, then try to free the c5 rook for work, putting the king in its place. The plan isn't simple, but if it can be carried out, a win is guaranteed.

32 ... ♖e7 33 ♖e3! ♜d6 34 ♖e2 h6
35 ♖xe6+ ♖xe6

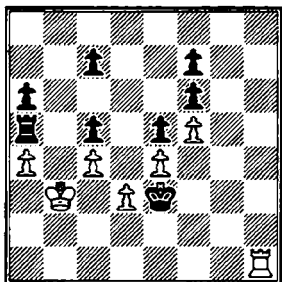
On 35 ... fe, of course, there's the immediate reaction 36 f4. A possible course of events: 36 ... e5 37 fe+ ♖xe5 38 ♖e3 g5 39 g4 ♜d6 40 ♜d4 ♖e6 41 ♖c3 ♜d6 42 h3 ♖e6 43 ♖c5 – the idea has been accomplished perfectly.

36 ♖e3 ♖e5 37 f4+

Soon after 37 ... ♖f5 38 ♖f3 ♖e6 39 h3 ♖f5 40 g4+ ♖e6 41 ♖e3 ♜d6 42 ♜d4 Black's position became hopeless.

In that example Black wasn't completely helpless, but nevertheless he didn't have enough counter-chances for equality. In the next episode, similar in construction, there was more than enough counterplay. All that remained was to find it.

Ivkov – Bauer
Belgrade, 1980



White's king should guard the important prisoner on a5, and the rook has to divide its energy between attacking the f6 and f7 pawns and defending the d3 pawn.

42 ♖h3+!

A sign of encouragement – for the correct choice. The impatient 42 ♖h6 led to this kind of play: 42 ... ♕xd3 43 ♖xf6 ♕xe4 44 ♖xf7 ♕f4 45 f6 ♕f5 46 ♖f8 e4 47 f7 ♕f6 48 ♖e8 ♕xf7 49 ♖xe4 ♕f6 50 ♖e1 ♕f5 51 ♖a1 ♕e4 52 ♕c3 ♕e3. But this is a draw, as White isn't strong enough to drive back the enemy king.

42 ... ♕d2

In the event of 42 ... ♕e2 White, with the waiting move 43 ♖g3, still forced the king to transfer to d2, as on 43 ... ♕f2 a new chance appears: 44 ♖g8 ♕e2 45 ♖d8 ♕e3 46 ♖d7 c6 47 ♕a3! ♕e2 48 d4!! –

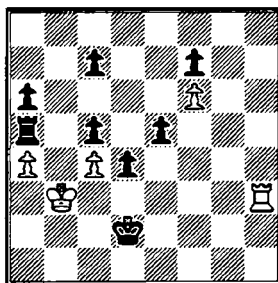
we'll come back to these variations again.

But if 42 ... ♕d4? What then? In that case two movements are enough – 43 ♖g3 c6 44 ♖h3, and the a5 rook will have to be given up.

43 d4!! ed

After 43 ... cd a path to the rook opens up – 44 ♕b4. Then possible is 44 ... ♖xa4+ 45 ♕xa4 d3 46 c5 ♕c2 47 c6 d2 48 ♖h1 d1 ♖ 49 ♖xd1 ♕xd1 50 ♕a5 ♕e2 51 ♕xa6 ♕e3 52 ♕b7 – White is quicker.

44 e5 fe 45 f6



Next in the game occurred 45 ... ♕e2 46 ♖h7 d3 47 ♖xf7 e4 48 ♖d7 e3 49 f7 d2 50 f8 ♖, and White soon won.

Salvation was hidden in 45 ... d3! 46 ♖h7 e4 47 ♖xf7 ♖xa4!! A worthy deed! The doomed rook changes the evaluation of the position at the cost of its own life.

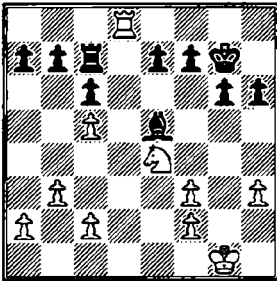
48 ♖xa4 ♖c3! 49 ♜d7 e3 50 f7 e2
51 f8♗ e1♗ 52 ♗g7+.

After 52 ♗xc5? ♗d1+ he can also lose.

52 ... ♖c2 53 ♗g2+ d2 54 ♗g6+ ♖b2 55 ♗g7+ ♖a2 56 ♗g2 ♗d1+ 57 ♖a5 ♗a1! 58 ♜xd2+! ♖b3+ 59 ♜a2 ♗xa2+, and draw.

The following example will help us switch to stories about a knight that turns out to be stronger than a rook.

Peresyarkin – Chekhov
Minsk, 1976



Both players' opportunities are about equal. In order to create a target for his opponent's activity in this completely harmless position, White played

23 a3!

The reaction was natural and mistaken.

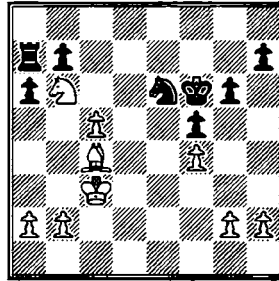
23 ... ♖b2?

It's obvious that the preliminary 23 ... f5 beat off the threats.

24 ♘d6!

Black resigned. The rook can still protect itself from the knight – 25 ... ed, but how then to save itself from the pawn?

Savon – Albur
Kiev, 1978



White only has a pawn for the exchange, but the position of the b6 knight is so good that he finds an elegant path to a win.

32 ♖xe6

The right recipe remains the same: you have to exchange off the 'extra' pieces.

32 ... ♖xe6 33 b4 a5

Otherwise White plays 34 a4, shutting in the rook for good.

34 b5 a4 35 a3 h6 36 h4 ♜a5

The most important law of chess

37 ♖b4 ♙a7 38 g3!

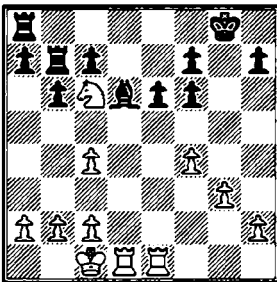
He can take the a4 pawn, but this would be a superficial decision – the rook would escape to freedom. Now, though, Black is in zugzwang: 38 ... ♜f7 39 ♘c8! ♙a8 40 ♘d6+ and 41 ♘xb7; 38 ... ♜f6 (38 ... ♜e7 39 ♘c8+) 39 ♘d5+ ♜f7 40 ♘c7!; 38 ... h5 39 ♜c3 ♙a5 40 ♜c4 ♙a7 41 ♖b4, and again it's his turn to move.

38 ... g5 39 hg hg 40 fg

The pawn has been lost, and counter-chances haven't increased. Black resigned after 40 ... ♜f7 41 ♘c8 ♙a8 42 ♘d6+ ♜e6 43 ♘xb7 ♙g8 44 b6 ♙xg5 45 ♘a5 ♙xg3 46 b7

A colourful use of the method we've just seen occurred in the game...

Radulov – Westerinen
Helsinki, 1972



The knight is solidly blockading the b7 rook.

29 f5! e5

In the event of 29 ... e4 appreciable chances for a win came with 30 ♘e7+ ♙xe7 31 ♙xe7 with the subsequent incursion 32 ♙dd7.

30 b4

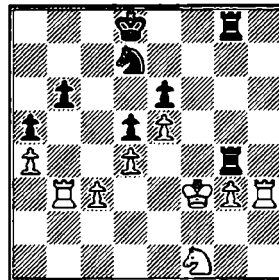
Now the attempt to break away 30 ... b5 can be met with 31 c5.

30 ... ♜g7 31 ♙e4 h5 32 h4 ♙g8

Now the most direct path to victory was 33 ♙g1! ♜h6 34 g4, exchanging off Black's active rook.

Knights have also triumphed over rooks in more complex situations.

Gaprindashvili – Ioseliani
Tbilisi, 1980



Exploiting the extra pawn wouldn't have been easy, if not for ...

45 ... ♖e4? 46 ♜e3!

Now White effectively has extra material. Accurate play was simply required from her:

46 ... ♜c7 47 ♜e2 ♖g5 48 ♜d2 ♖g7 49 ♖b1 ♜f8 50 ♖f1 ♜h7 51 ♜d3 ♜g5 52 ♖h6 ♜c6 53 ♖ff6 ♜d7 54 ♖hg6!

A tried and tested method: exchanging off the last active units in her opponent's camp.

54 ... ♖xg6 55 ♖xg6 ♜f3 56 ♖f6 ♜g5 57 ♖f8 ♜c6 58 ♜e2 ♜h3 59 ♖c8+ ♜d7 60 ♖h8 ♜g5 61 ♖h5 ♜f7 62 ♖h7 ♜e8 63 ♜d3 ♜g5 64 ♖b7 ♜f3 65 ♖xb6 ♜e1+ 66 ♜d2 ♜f3+ 67 ♜e2 ♜g1+ 68 ♜d3

Black resigned.

Two related examples will help us move from the rook and knight theme to the rook and bishop theme.

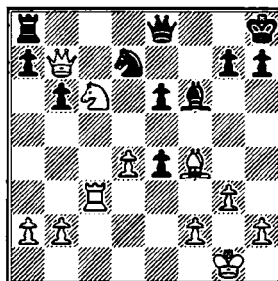
Queen's Indian Defence

Speelman – Short

Hastings, 1984

1 ♜f3 ♜f6 2 c4 b6 3 ♜c3 ♖b7 4 d4 e6 5 e3 ♖e7 6 ♖d3 c5 7 0-0 cd 8 ed d5 9 cd ♜xd5 10 ♜xd5 ♖xd5 11 ♜e5 0-0 12 ♜h5 f5 13 ♜e2 ♜d7 14 ♜c6 ♜e8 15 ♖f4 ♖f6 16 ♖ac1 ♜g6 17 g3 ♖fe8 18 ♜b4 ♖e4 19 ♖xe4 fe 20 ♖c7 ♜f8 21 ♜c6 ♖ac8 22 ♖xc8 ♖xc8 23 ♖c1 ♜h8

24 ♖c3 ♖a8 25 ♜a6 ♜e8 26 ♜b7 ♜d7

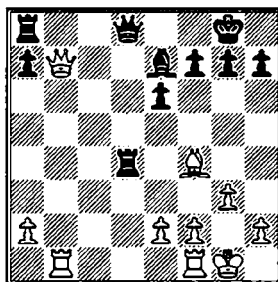


27 ♜b8!

Black resigned.

Queen's Gambit
Smyslov – Tolush
Moscow, 1961

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♜f3 d5 4 g3 c5 5 cd ♜xd5 6 ♖g2 ♜c6 7 0-0 ♖e7 8 ♜c3 ♜xc3 9 bc 0-0 10 ♖b1 ♜a5 11 ♜b3 ♖d8 12 ♖f4! cd 13 ♜xd4 ♜xd4 14 cd ♖xd4 15 ♖xb7 ♖xb7 16 ♜xb7 ♜d8



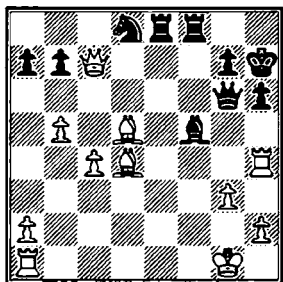
17 ♖b8!

Black resigned.

The most important law of chess

Fencing off the rook in a corner of the board even for a few moves is a decisive achievement in many situations.

Aronson – Tal
Moscow, 1957



A long arrow.

26 ... ♖b1!

Black has managed to cut off the a1 rook for a while. He now has a temporary material advantage on the kingside.

27 ♙e5 ♜e6 28 ♜d6 ♜f5 29 ♙f4
♜g5 30 ♜b4

He still has to unpack the box.

30 ... ♙e4

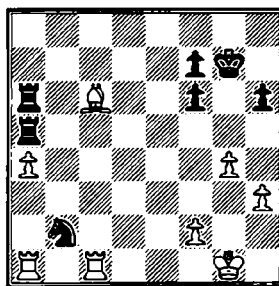
The rook has been 'absent' from the board for three moves, but in this time the black knight has succeeded in jumping into the scene of the action. This ends the battle:

31 ♙xe4 ♜xe4 32 ♜f1 ♜e2
33 ♜d6 ♜xa2 34 ♜d5 ♜c2 35 c5
♜d8 36 ♙d6 ♜e8

White resigned.

Two more little scenes in which the rook gets caught ... by a rook, and, even more surprisingly, by a queen.

Izvozhikov – Govashelishvili
Odessa, 1975



The fate of the game depends on whether or not White can hold onto the a4 pawn. At first glance it appears he can't. But at second?

35 ♜cb1! ♜xa4 36 ♜b5!

If only the a5 rook could retreat just one square back! Alas, it's caught. The threat is 37 ♜xa5 ♜xa5 38 ♜xa4, and 36 ... ♜xb5 37 ♙xb5 ♜a5 doesn't save the knight – 38 ♙xa4. Black has given up

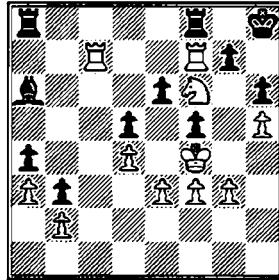
material, but only postponed his capitulation, of course:

36 ... ♖xc6 37 ♖xa5 ♘c3 38 ♖e1
♞c7 39 ♖e8 ♞d7 40 ♖aa8 f5
41 ♖g8+ ♔f6 42 ♖a6+ ♔e5
43 ♖xh6 fg 44 ♞h5+ f5 45 hg ♘e2+
46 ♔f1 ♘d4 47 gf ♘xf5 48 ♞f8

The knight is under attack from crossfire. He had to resign.

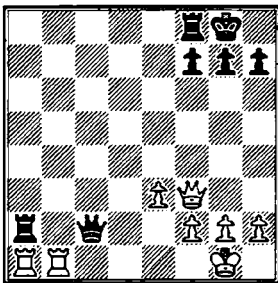
Alekhine – Yates

London, 1922



Fuster – Balogh

Budapest, 1964



White is a pawn up, but this is a mirage, not good fortune.

39 ... ♜b2!

White resigned, the rook has been caught.

We shouldn't forget the king either. It has managed to creep up stealthily to a rook along a diagonal on more than one occasion.

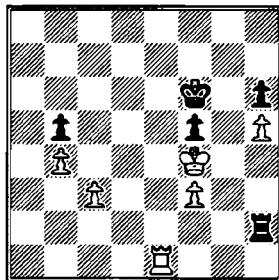
The rooks are plundering on the seventh rank. The following resolution was found:

37 ♖xg7 ♖xf6 38 ♔e5

The rook can neither be defended nor retreated to f8 – it's mate in two. Black resigned.

Makarov – Shekhodanov

Moscow, 1979



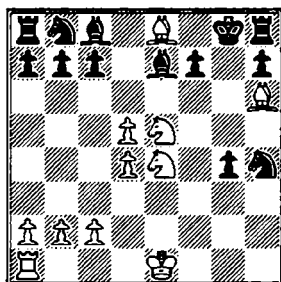
By retreating to c2, Black would retain chances for a draw, but time trouble led him down another path.

37 ... ♖h4+ 38 ♔g3 ♜xh5 39 f4

The ill-starred clocks had to be stopped. The rook is in a trap, and there's nothing with which to oppose the unavoidable 40 c4.

The first practical exploitation of the rook in the corner of the board in history (or as children call it, the punishment corner) is completely understandable.

Petrov – Journoud
Paris, 1863



White is a rook down, but so what! The h8 rook, which is clearly being hindered by its own king, can't be considered a fully-fledged fighting unit.

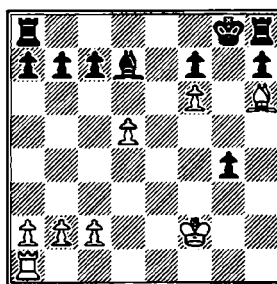
18 ... ♜f3+

No other opportunity to defend the point f7 exists.

19 ♔f2 ♜xe5 20 de ♔f5 21 ♜f6+

Choosing between other tempting moves, you have to remember that any blunder allows the enemy to disentangle the mess on the kingside. And then the now useless strength of the h8 rook decides the duel. So there's no time to joke around!

21 ... ♙xf6 22 ef ♞d7 23 ♙xd7 ♙xd7



Here White slipped: 24 ♖e1? ♖e8 25 ♜xe8+ ♙xe8 26 ♔g3 A draw is certain, but no more. After 26 ... ♙d7 27 c4 a5 28 a3 a4 29 c5 ♙c8 30 d6 cd 31 cd ♙d7 32 ♔f4 ♙e6 33 ♔g3 he had to go for a truce.

But meanwhile there was a win!

24 ♖h1 ♙f5

He has to defend against 25 ♖h5.

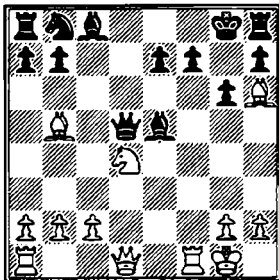
25 ♖e1!

The most important thing is to seize the file. The pawns don't count yet. Then again, on

25 ... ♖xc2 not only does 26 ♜c1 ♗f5 27 ♜xc7 ♜c8 28 ♜xb7 win (28 ♜xc8+ ♗xc8 is only a draw), but also 26 ♜e7 ♜c8 27 ♖g3 ♗f5 28 ♖f4 ♗g6 29 ♖xg4. Then the king goes to e5 and after d5-d6 clears a path to his opponent's queen's pawns.

The opportunity to deflect a rook and king to the corner of the board with a bishop has been the tactical basis of various opening systems.

In the Sicilian Defence there is the following variation: 1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 d6 3 d4 cd 4 ♖xd4 ♖f6 5 ♖c3 g6 6 f4 Here Black should accurately reply 6 ... ♖c6, but the impetuous 6 ... ♗g7 leads to immediate difficulties: 7 e5 de 8 fe ♖d5 (on 8 ... ♖g4 unpleasant is 9 ♗b5+, and not 9 ... ♖f8 due to 10 ♖e6+!) 9 ♗b5+ ♖f8 10 0-0 Now on 10 ... ♗xe5 there's 11 ♖xd5 ♗xd5 12 ♗h6+ ♖h8



Not to mention games in which there was a jump.

13 ♖f5!

Some people resigned immediately after this blow and others were mated after 13 ... ♗c5+ 14 ♗e3 ♗c7 15 ♖h6+ ♖g7 16 ♜xf7 mate.

Another twist in the Dragon Variation:

1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 d6 3 d4 cd 4 ♖xd4 ♖f6 5 ♖c3 g6 6 ♗e3 ♗g7 7 ♗c4 ♖c6 8 f3

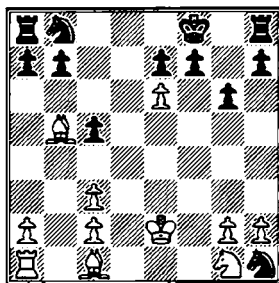
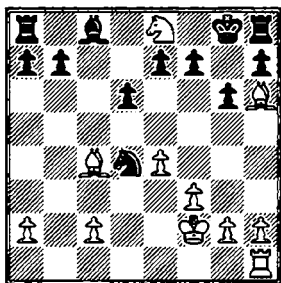
Black's usual choice is 8 ... ♗d7 or 8 ... 0-0, but there's also the brave lunge 8 ... ♗b6!?

White doesn't like it too much – he has to go out into the stormy sea.

9 ♖f5 ♗xb2 10 ♖xg7+ ♖f8 11 ♖d5 ♖xd5 12 ♗xd5 ♗xa1+ 13 ♖f2 ♗f6

This is how the scenario unfolded in the encounter Golenishchev-Lokhanin (Kaluga, 1968). It's clear that on 13 ... ♗xg7 White reacts with 14 ♗h6!

14 ♗h6 ♖g8 15 ♖e8! ♗d4+ 16 ♗xd4 ♖xd4

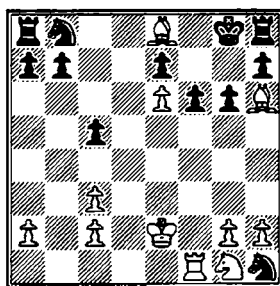


So, the little box has been constructed! Will he manage to use it? He did, and very effectively.

He's certainly managed to take the rook, but the variation didn't end there, alas.

14 ♖h6+ ♜g8 15 ♜f1 f6 16 ♖e8!

17 ♘c7 ♞b8 18 ♞d1 ♘c6
19 ♞xd6! ed 20 ♘e8 Black
resigned.



Let's continue the theme.

And now it's all over. Mate on f7 is unavoidable.

Pirc Defence

Stakhovich – Hechler

West Germany, 1955

1 e4 d6 2 d4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♖g7 4 f4
c5 5 d5 ♘f6 6 e5 de 7 fe ♘g4
8 ♖b5+ ♜f8 9 e6! ♖xc3+ 10 bc
♖xe6?!

Sometimes in similar situations the queen substitutes for the bishop.

Black has carefully calculated everything, and at the end of the variation he takes the rook.

Vienna Game

Nielsen – Jensen

Herning, 1926

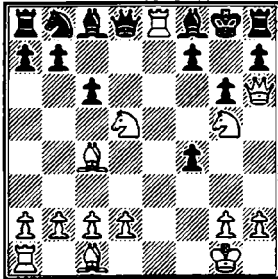
11 de ♜xd1+ 12 ♜xd1 ♘f2+
13 ♜e2 ♘xh1

1 e4 e5 2 ♘c3 ♘f6 3 f4 ef 4 e5
♘g8 5 ♖c4 d6 6 ♘f3 c6 7 ed ♖xd6

8 0-0 ♖e7 9 ♗g5

The main thing is to prevent him from castling (9 ... 0-0 10 ♜h5).

9 ... ♗d5 10 ♜e1+ ♔f8 11 ♜h5 g6
12 ♜h6+ ♔g8 13 ♗xd5 ♙f8
14 ♜e8!



Black resigned.

Other methods have also been preserved in the chess classics with the exploitation of the unfortunate cramming of the king and rook into the corner of the board.

Two Knights Defence
Maróczy – Vidmar
Ljubljana, 1923

1 e4 e5 2 ♗f3 ♗c6 3 ♙c4 ♗f6
4 d4 ed 5 0-0 ♙c5 6 e5 d5 7 ef dc
8 ♜e1+ ♙e6 9 ♗g5 ♜d5 10 ♗c3
♜f5 11 ♗ce4

A famous position from the Max Lange Attack. Generations of chess players have laboured over

it, but it hasn't been fully investigated, so it's been left for better times. Correct is considered 11 ... 0-0-0, moving the king away from the centre.

11 ... ♙f8 12 ♗xf7! ♔xf7 13 ♗g5+ ♔g8

The optimistic 13 ... ♔g6 doesn't bring equality either: 14 ♗xe6 gf 15 g4 ♜a5 16 ♙f4 ♜c8 17 ♜f3 with the threat of 18 ♙xc7 ♜xc7 19 ♜f5+!

14 g4

With the secret hope of 14 ... ♜xg4+ 15 ♜xg4 ♙xg4 16 f7 mate! More sensible than the others here was the retreat 14 ... ♜g6. After 15 ♜xe6 (on 15 fg – 15 ... ♙d5!) 15 ... gf 16 ♜f3 ♔g7 17 ♙f4 White's chances are still better, but there's so much fighting yet to come ...

14 ... ♜xf6 15 ♜xe6 ♜d8 16 ♜f3 ♜d7

Grandmaster Milan Vidmar was probably proud of the defence he had set up: everything is defended, everything is covered...

17 ♜e7!!

Black resigned. He's powerless to defend simultaneously the f7 and d5 squares (17 ♜xe7 18 ♜d5+).

'Club-12'

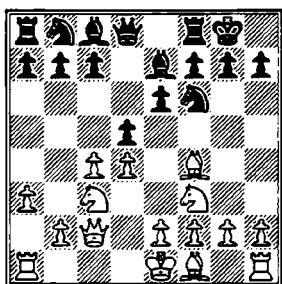
It isn't easy for the rook to get out of the corner in 12 moves. In the selection we offer, the rook is caught in its natural corner square.

Nimzo-Indian Defence

Nielsen – Hansen

Denmark, 2004

1 d4 ♟f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♞c3 ♟b4
4 ♚c2 d5 5 a3 ♟e7 6 ♟f3 0-0 7 ♟f4



This position has occurred so many times, and will occur many more times. Amongst other moves we can propose for Black

7 ... ♞bd7? 8 ♞b5!

Possibly Grandmaster Curt Hansen missed a small nuance: the a2 pawn has moved to a3, and there's no saving manoeuvre ♟e7-b4-a5.

8 ... dc 9 ♟xc7 ♚e8 10 ♞d6 ♟xd6
11 ♟xd6

The rook has perished. Black resigned.

Caro-Kann

Schuster – Carls

Oldenburg, 1914

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♞c3 de 4 ♞xe4
♟f6 5 ♞g3

The textbook game is developing harmlessly so far. All this has been seen over and over and over ...

5 ... h5 6 ♟g5

The pawn should have been halted – 6 h4.

6 ... h4 7 ♟xf6?

He still could have retreated the knight. Now, though – collapse.

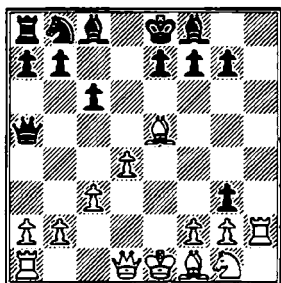
7 ... hg 8 ♟e5 ♚xh2!

The rook's a prisoner. Then again, after ...

9 ♚xh2

... it's apparently still defended. But that's a mirage.

9 ... ♖a5+ 10 c3



10 ... ♜xe5+!! 11 de gh

White resigned.

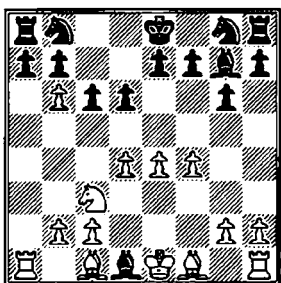
Fortunately such combinations haven't only been encountered at the beginning of the century.

Pirc Defence

Dagorov – Beckman

Bulgaria, 1976

1 e4 g6 2 d4 ♖g7 3 ♘c3 d6 4 f4
c6 5 a4 ♜b6 6 ♘f3 ♖g4 7 a5! ♖xf3?
8 ab ♖xd1



9 ♜xa7!

Black resigned.

Another twist on the theme is a double rook fork.

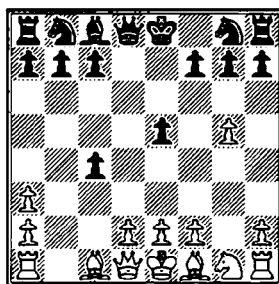
Grob Opening

Nemet – Knezevic

Yugoslavia, 1972

1 g4 d5 2 g5 e5 3 c4 dc 4 ♘a3
♖xa3 5 ba?

Missing the normal chance:
5 ♜a4+ and 6 ♜xa3.



5 ... ♜d4!

White resigned.

Ponziani Opening

Rusakov – Verlinsky

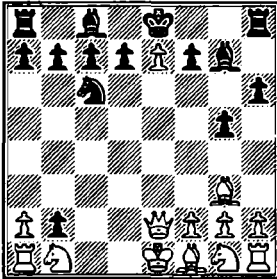
Moscow, 1948

1 e4 e5 2 c3 ♘c6 3 d4 ♘f6 4 ♖g5
h6 5 ♖h4 g5 6 ♖g3 ed 7 e5 dc 8 ef?

The most important law of chess

After 8 ♖xc3 White got quite sufficient initiative for the pawn. Now, though, he 'goes down in history'.

8 ... cb 9 ♜e2+ ♜e7!! 10 fe ♙g7!



White resigned.

In conclusion – two examples that make amusing twins.

French Defence

Pedersen – Karlsson

Hallsdall, 1996

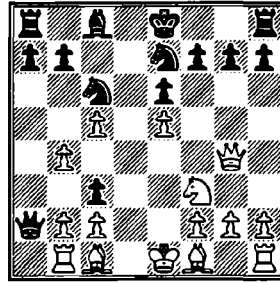
1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 ♙b4 4 e5 c5 5 ♜g4 (5 a3!?) 5 ... ♗e7 6 dc?!

On the correct 6 ♜xg7 – in the next game.

6 ... ♗bc6 7 ♗f3?

The last mistake. Only inferior chances was promised by 7 ♙d2 ♗e5 8 ♜g7 ♗5g6.

7 ... d4 8 a3 ♜a5 9 ♚b1 dc 10 ab ♜a2!



White resigned.

French Defence

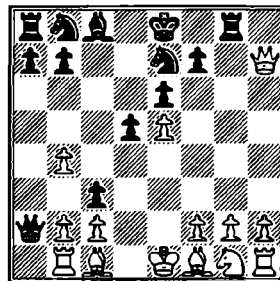
Sylvan – Antonsen

Farum, 1993

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 ♙b4 4 e5 c5 5 ♜g4 ♗e7 6 ♜xg7 ♙g8 7 ♜xh7?

Slipping from the correct path: 7 ♜h6! cd 8 a3, and now already on 8 ... ♜a5 possible is 9 ab! ♜xa1 10 ♗b5 with adequate counter-play.

7 ... cd 8 a3 ♜a5 9 ♚b1 dc 10 ab ♜a2!

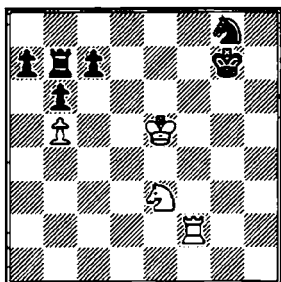


White resigned.

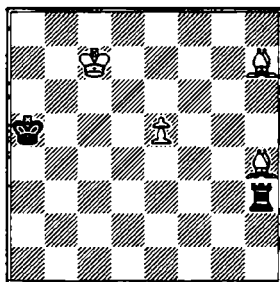
"A golden dozen of studies"

In chess life the rook isn't all that clumsy, but in our 12 examples (in each of which there's a win for White) the rook hardly manages to get its head above water.

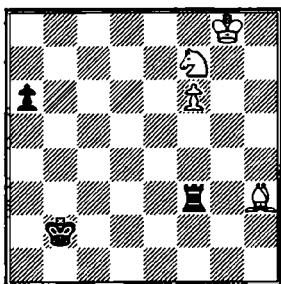
25



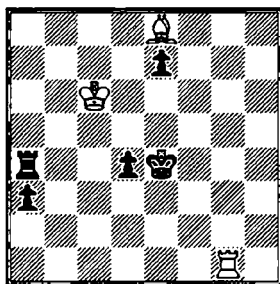
28



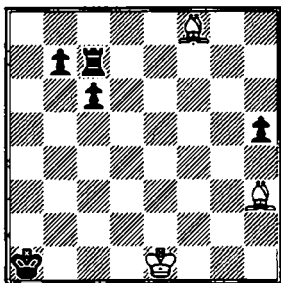
26



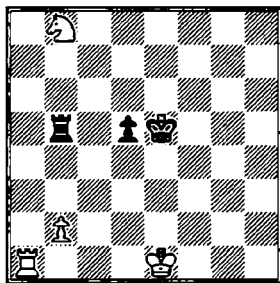
29



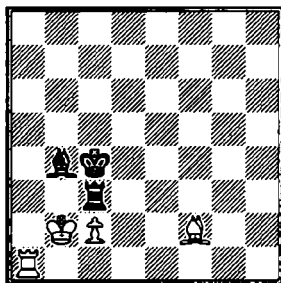
27



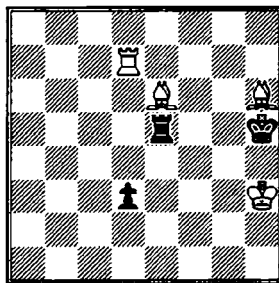
30



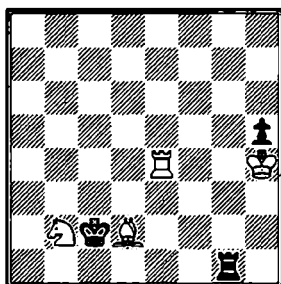
31



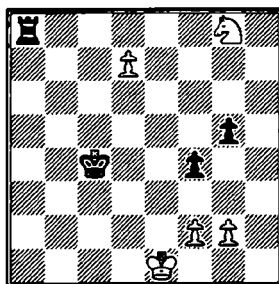
34



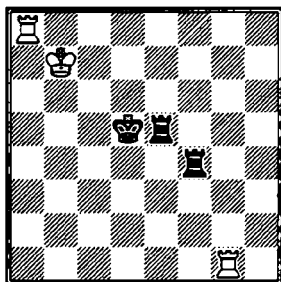
32



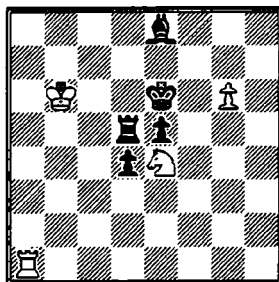
35



33

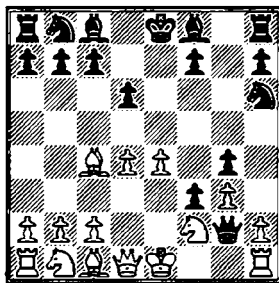


36



**The queen:
thorns and roses**

In the centuries-long history of chess the queen has had a brilliant career. Way back in ancient times it was slow and awkward, moving obliquely to the neighbouring square. Now the queen is the most emotional, most adroit and strongest piece. It's so mobile and unusual that it's been almost impossible to develop typical methods of fighting against it.



A pretty picture. The queen has been caught (12 ♕f1!).

Let's take a number of similar examples from more modern practice.

True, when the queen displays weakness, some kind of constant passion, quite cunningly-designed traps immediately appear in its path. In the French Defence the white queen quite often goes after the g7 pawn, and in the Sicilian the black queen goes for the b2 pawn.

Pirc Defence

Adamski – Grobler

Avgustov, 1969

1 e4 g6 2 d4 ♕g7 3 f4 c6 4 h3 d5
5 e5 ♕f5 6 ♖c3 h5 7 g3 ♖h6 8 ♕g2
e6 9 ♕f3

The officers standing in front of the troops have always attracted the enemy's attention.

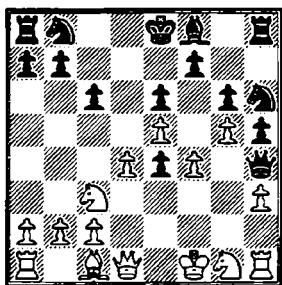
9 ... ♕f8 10 g4 ♗h4+?

Black has already sinned considerably in the opening, but this impulsive check is the last blunder.

11 ♖f1 ♕e4 12 ♕xe4 de 13 g5

And here's a variation from the ancient manuscript of Gioachino Greco.

1 e4 e5 2 f4 ef 3 ♖f3 g5 4 ♕c4 g4
5 ♖e5 ♗h4+ 6 ♖f1 ♖h6 7 d4 d6
8 ♖d3 f3 9 g3 ♗h3+ (it could go home, to e7, but the queen has something else in mind) 10 ♖e1
♗g2 11 ♖f2!



The knight is attacked and the queen is surrounded. No help now is 13 ... $\text{d}f5$ 14 $\text{d}xe4$ $\text{d}g3+$ (alert, 15 $\text{d}f3$ was threatened) 15 $\text{d}xg3$ $\text{w}xg3$ 16 $\text{w}e2$ – the imprisoned queen can't escape. For example, 16 ... $\text{c}5$ 17 $\text{w}e4!$ $\text{d}c6$ 18 $\text{d}e2$ $\text{w}h4$ 19 $\text{e}3$ $\text{d}xd4$ 20 $\text{d}xd4$ cd 21 $\text{e}f2$.

13 ... $\text{e}3$ 14 $\text{e}xe3$ $\text{d}f5$ 15 $\text{w}c1!$

Black resigned.

In the heat of the battle, when every tempo and every fighting unit counts, deflecting the queen from the main field of battle even for a short time is an achievement that's often enough for victory. Don't worry about paying the highest price for this. One of a few crystallised examples: your opponent's queen is enticed into the corner, seduced by a seemingly safe opportunity to eat up an undefended rook.

A rook sacrifice is a serious overture and so it requires precise

calculation and an accurate, far-sighted evaluation of the position.

Chigorin Defence
Cheremisin – Berezin
 Moscow, 1953

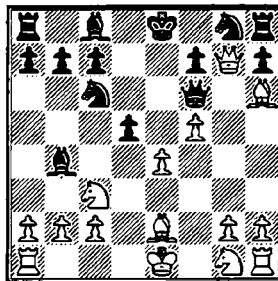
1 $\text{d}4$ $\text{d}c6$ 2 $\text{e}4$ $\text{e}5$ 3 de $\text{d}xe5$
 4 $\text{d}c3$ $\text{e}b4$ 5 $\text{w}d4$ $\text{w}e7$ 6 $\text{f}4$ $\text{d}g6$
 7 $\text{e}2$

The rash deed 7 $\text{w}xg7$ is punished after 7 ... $\text{w}xe4+$ 8 $\text{d}e2$ $\text{f}6!$ and 9 ... $\text{e}f8$.

7 ... $\text{d}5$ 8 $\text{f}5$ $\text{d}e5$ 9 $\text{e}f4$ $\text{d}c6$

And now White is resolved.

10 $\text{w}xg7$ $\text{w}f6$ 11 $\text{e}h6$



An entertaining tangle. The threat is 12 $\text{w}xf6$ $\text{d}xf6$ 13 $\text{e}g7$. At the same time neither 11 ... $\text{d}xh6$ 12 $\text{w}xf6$, nor 11 ... $\text{w}xh6$ 12 $\text{w}xh8$ apparently work out for Black.

11 ... $\text{w}xh6$ 12 $\text{w}xh8$ $\text{e}f8$

$\text{h}8$ immediately becomes a tight corner.

13 ed ♖e7 14 ♜e4

And in the event of 14 dc ♖f6 15 ♜xf6 ♜xf6 there isn't enough compensation for the queen. The game ended like this: 14 ... ♜h4+ 15 ♜d1 ♜xe4 16 ♖f3 ♜xf5 17 g4 ♜e5 18 ♜xe5 ♜xe5 19 h3 ♖f6 20 ♖e2 ♜e7 21 c4 b5 22 cb ♖b7 23 ♜f3 ♜xd5 24 ♜xe5 ♖xe5 25 ♜c1 ♖f4+ White resigned.

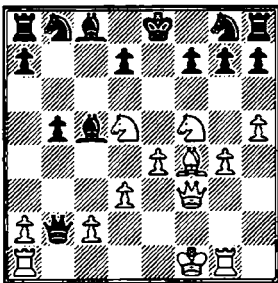
With a sharp development of opening events both rooks are often brought to the sacrifice – at least to seduce and deflect the ubiquitous queen. Let's look at this method in more detail.

King's Gambit

Anderssen – Kieseritzky

London, 1851

1 e4 e5 2 f4 ef 3 ♖c4 ♜h4+ 4 ♜f1 b5 5 ♖xb5 ♜f6 6 ♜f3 ♜h6 7 d3 ♜h5 8 ♜h4 ♜g5 9 ♜f5 c6 10 g4 ♜f6 11 ♜g1! cb 12 h4 ♜g6 13 h5 ♜g5 14 ♜f3 ♜g8 15 ♖xf4 ♜f6 16 ♜c3 ♖c5 17 ♜d5! ♜xb2



Both rooks are threatened. What to do? Attack!

18 ♖d6 ♖xg1

An unsuccessful journey is 18 ... ♜xa1+ 19 ♜e2 ♜xg1 20 ♜xg7+ ♜d8 21 ♖c7 mate.

19 e5 ♜xa1+ 20 ♜e2 ♜a6 21 ♜xg7+ ♜d8 22 ♜f6+ ♜xf6 23 ♖e7 mate.

The entertaining 'immortal game' also fits in here. After generously giving up both rooks, White obtained the necessary time for a colourful conclusion to his active opening policy. An important point: in pursuit of material achievements Black's queen and bishop found themselves deep in the enemy's home front. This laid the playing space bare and allowed his opponent to establish a decisive superiority of forces on the main part of the board. The final position is also instructive. The white rooks fell on the squares a1 and g1, and Black, like the Egyptian sphinx, unflinchingly and indifferently absorbed the tragedy that had occurred.

By boldly giving up serious material advances, White, as we see, wasn't propagating any kind of academic ideas, but setting himself a concrete goal bringing equivalent damages – to capture the enemy king.

The most important law of chess

So, the goal is the king, the means – a double rook sacrifice to deflect the opponent's queen.

Let's study!

Alekhine's Defence **Rodzynski – Alekhine** Paris, 1913

1 e4 e5 2 $\text{d}\text{f}3$ $\text{c}6$ 3 $\text{c}4$ d6 4 c3
 $\text{g}4$?

Quite a risky undertaking, but in it lies the genesis of the cascade of events that soon occurred.

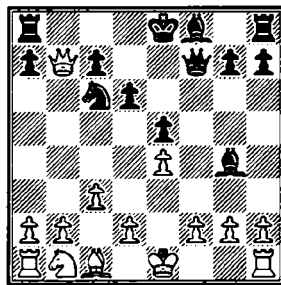
5 $\text{b}3$ $\text{d}7$ 6 $\text{g}5$

White's pride, warmed up by his partner's 'incorrect' move, didn't allow him to agree to the variation 6 $\text{c}4$ $\text{c}5$ 7 $\text{b}3$ $\text{d}7$ 8 $\text{g}5$ $\text{g}6$ 9 $\text{f}3$ $\text{c}6$ 10 $\text{g}4$ $\text{c}5$ 11 $\text{d}1$ $\text{f}3$ +, where Black has a draw at least. He most likely should have simply taken the pawn – 6 $\text{b}3$ $\text{b}7$ 7 $\text{a}6$ with chances of extinguishing his opponent's initiative.

6 ... $\text{h}6$ 7 $\text{c}4$ $\text{c}5$ +

Now this act leads only to trouble.

7 ... $\text{c}4$ $\text{c}5$ 8 $\text{c}4$ $\text{c}5$ 9 $\text{b}3$ $\text{d}7$



The desired moment has come.

9 ... $\text{d}7$! 10 $\text{xa}8$ $\text{c}4$

The white queen goes off on a well-meaning mission to a foreign land where the goods are cheap but shipping is expensive. And during this time the black pieces are plundering unpunished in that queen's own home, like the self-styled suitors of Penelope in the palace of the Odyssey.

11 $\text{f}3$ $\text{c}4$ 12 $\text{g}5$ $\text{d}4$! 13 $\text{d}3$?

It was still possible to pay off half the property: 13 $\text{c}d$ $\text{xc}1$ + 14 $\text{e}2$ $\text{hx}1$ 15 $\text{d}5$.

13 ... $\text{xd}3$ 14 cd $\text{e}7$!

The valve-piece (let's call it that) enters the battle with a decisive tempo.

15 $\text{hx}8$ $\text{h}4$ mate.

In the game the main junctions in the mechanism of the combination were clearly distinguishable: a certain doubtful

manoeuvre by one side (6 ♖g5 and 7 ♗xf7), leading to a severe lag in development, the sacrifice of the first rook (9 ... ♔d7) and, finally, the concluding exploitation of the confrontation between the queen and the rook to bring the last reserves into the game.

The situation is further complicated by the fact that the white queen has a certain amount of freedom to create interference with the enemy attack. Nevertheless he had to resign after 16 ♜xg7+ ♗e7 17 ♖f3 e4! 18 ♖e5+ ♖xe5 19 ♗f4 ♖f3+ 20 ♔h1 ♖d2.

The b7 pawn is tempting for many.

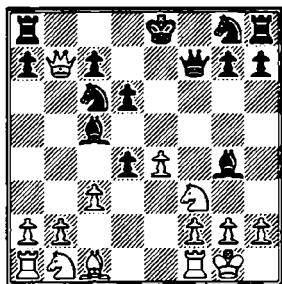
Let's look at two more short games in which the pieces revealing a battery are a bishop and a knight respectively.

Scotch Game

Strautmanis – Palau

The Hague, 1928

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 d4 ed 4 ♗c4 ♗c5 5 0-0 d6 6 c3 ♗g4 7 ♜b3 ♜d7! 8 ♗xf7+ ♜xf7 9 ♜xb7



Compare – history is almost completely repeating itself.

9 ... ♔d7! 10 ♜xa8 ♗xf3 11 gf ♜xf3 12 ♖d2 ♜h3 13 e5 de 14 b4

Attention!

14 ... ♖f6! 15 ♜xh8 ♖g4

Latvian Gambit

Borik – Novak

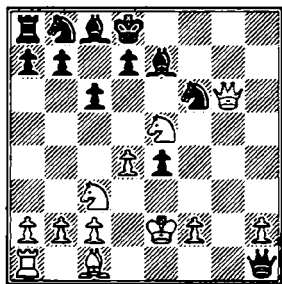
Czechoslovakia, 1969

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 f5 3 ♗c4 fe 4 ♖xe5 ♜g5 5 d4 ♜xg2 6 ♜h5+ g6 7 ♗f7+ ♔d8 8 ♗xg6 ♜xh1+ 9 ♔e2 c6 10 ♖c3

The c1 bishop is now very dangerous.

10 ... ♖f6 11 ♜g5! ♗e7 12 ♖f7+ ♔e8 13 ♖xh8+ hg 14 ♜xg6+ ♔d8 15 ♖f7+ ♔e8 16 ♖e5+ ♔d8

Half of the work is done. Having smashed the black king's cover at a high price, White must immediately bring in new forces, otherwise the attack will evaporate.



17 ♖f4!

The last number in the compulsory programme.

17 ... ♜xa1 18 ♜f7+ ♚e8 19 ♜d6+

On 19 ... ♚d8 now follows 20 ♜e8+! ♜xe8 21 ♜f7 mate, and 20 ... ♚c7 21 ♜c4+ ♚d6 22 ♜xe7+ ♚d7 23 ♜xd6+ ♚d8 24 ♜xf6+ is no less distressing. Black resigned.

Budapest Gambit

Heller – Krejcik

Vienna, 1947

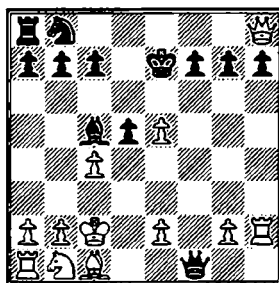
1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 e5 3 de ♜g4 4 f4(?) ♚c5 5 ♜h3 ♜xh2! 6 ♜xh2 ♜h4+ 7 ♚d2 d5

Threatening 8 ... ♜g3 9 ♜h1 ♚e3+ 10 ♚c2 ♚f5+.

8 ♜b3 ♚xh3 9 ♜xh3 ♜xf4+ 10 ♚c2 ♜xf1

White realises that he can't protect his king with peaceful play: 11 ♜c3 ♜c6. So he decides to drain his glass.

11 ♜c8+ ♚e7 12 ♜xh8



An instructive position. The queen is behind a fence of enemy pawns. White's other pieces are frozen on their starting squares. It's no wonder that his king is being chased into captivity.

12 ... ♜xe2+ 13 ♚d2 ♜c6!

The rest is obvious:

14 ♜xa8 ♜b4+ 15 ♚b3 ♜xc4+ 16 ♚a4 b5+ 17 ♚a5 ♚b6 mate.

Nice to look at. Almost a correct mate. It was completely optional for the valve-piece itself to immediately attack the enemy king after revealing the second rook. There were also more subtle ways to use it.

Philidor Defence

Bernstein – Tartakower

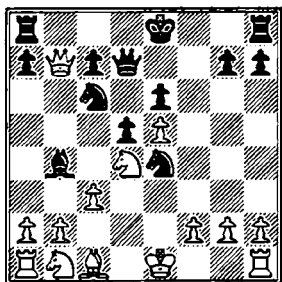
Paris, 1937

1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 d6 3 d4 ♜f6 4 de ♜xe4 5 ♚c4 ♚e6 6 ♚xe6 fe 7 ♜e2

d5 8 ♖b5+ ♘c6 9 ♘d4

Here it is, the essential manoeuvre – a prerequisite. Evidently he should have taken a risk on 9 ♖xb7 ♘b4 10 0-0.

9 ... ♗d7 10 ♖xb7 ♖b4+ 11 c3



Now follows the concluding part of the ritual.

11 ... ♘d4! 12 ♖xa8+ ♕f7
13 ♖xh8 ♖b5!

White resigned. The b4 bishop only indirectly participates in the mating attack, limiting the c3 pawn's capacity.

The pin method was used elegantly in the following game.

English Opening

Pytlakowski – Makarchik

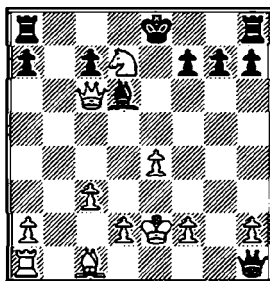
Lodz, 1947

1 c4 ♘f6 2 ♘c3 d5 3 cd ♘xd5
4 e4 ♘xc3 5 bc e5 6 ♘f3 ♘c6

7 ♖b5 ♖g4? 8 ♖xc6+ bc 9 ♖a4
♘d7 10 ♘xe5 ♖g5

Black made a mess of the opening, but now it seems that he's managed to organise some complications. However, White easily concludes the game according to the now familiar plan.

11 ♘d7 ♖xg2 12 ♖xc6 ♖xh1+
13 ♕e2 ♖d6



A curious moment. Trying to save the game, Black in turn offers to sacrifice both rooks.

14 ♘e5+!

It isn't smart to be greedy: 14 ♖xa8+ ♕xd7 15 ♖xh8 ♖xe4+ 16 ♕d1 ♖a4+ with perpetual check.

14 ... ♕f8

He doesn't manage to get out of the danger zone: 14 ... ♕e7 15 ♖d7+ ♕f6 16 ♖xf7+ ♕xe5 (16 ... ♕g5 17 d4+ ♕h4 18 ♖f4+) 17 d4+ ♕xe4 18 ♖e6+.

The most important law of chess

15 ♖a3! ♜xa1 16 ♜d7!

He had to resign.

On 16 ... ♜xa2 there's the 'switch' - 17 c4!

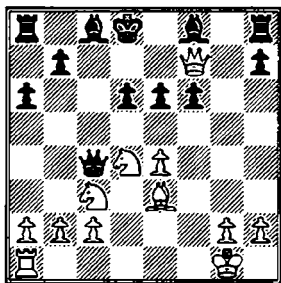
An attempt to sacrifice both rooks in a critical situation to knock the opponent out of his attacking mood and move his queen further from the main area of the battle has been seen many times in practice. Here, for example, is what happened at the Second Moscow International Tournament.

Sicilian Defence

Emanuel Lasker - Pirc

Moscow, 1935

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 d4 cd
4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 d6 6 ♖e2 e6
7 0-0 a6 8 ♖e3 ♜c7 9 f4 ♘a5(?)
10 f5! ♘c4 11 ♖xc4 ♜xc4 12 fe fe
13 ♜xf6! gf 14 ♜h5+ ♜d8 15 ♜f7



The premature manoeuvre ♘c6-a5-c4 allowed White to take advantage of his early opening initiative. Trying to disentangle himself from a jam, Black starts to consider a double rook sacrifice to banish White's queen from the board for a while. Alas, this medicine no longer helps.

15 ... ♖d7 16 ♜xf6+ ♜c7
17 ♜xh8 ♖h6 18 ♘xe6+

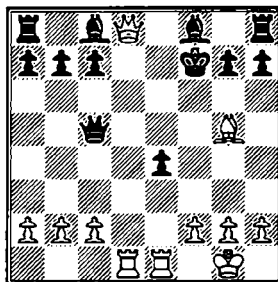
He could have taken the rook immediately, but this zwischen-zug is more accurate.

After 18 ... ♜xe6 19 ♜xa8 ♖xe3+ 20 ♜h1 the game finished.

Of course, the use of counter-sacrifices doesn't always end so uselessly.

Euwe - Réti

Amsterdam, 1920



White is on the attack. He has just sacrificed a piece and hopes

to reach the black king in the next few moves, but ...

14 ... ♔d6 15 ♖xh8 ♖xg5 16 f4

On 16 ♖xh7 convincing is 16 ... ♔f5.

16 ... ♖h4 17 ♖xe4 ♔h3!

The bishops, as if on springs, are bounding into the thick of the skirmish. The white queen, meanwhile, is fatally thrashing around on the eighth rank.

18 ♖xa8 ♔c5+ 19 ♖h1 ♔xg2+!
20 ♖xg2 ♖g4+ 21 ♖f1 ♖f3+
22 ♖e1 ♖f2 mate.

Two more examples. In them the double sacrifice, apart from isolating the opponent's strongest piece, made it possible to bring the queen's knight into play with a tempo.

Benoni

Alekhine – Levenfish

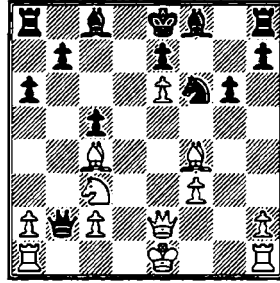
St. Petersburg, 1912

1 d4 c5 2 d5 ♘f6 3 ♘c3 d6 4 e4
g6 5 f4 ♘bd7 6 ♘f3 a6 7 e5 de 8 fe
♘g4 9 e6 ♘de5 10 ♔f4 ♘xf3+
11 gf! ♘f6 12 ♔c4 fe 13 de ♖b6

The variation 13 ... ♖xd1+
14 ♖xd1 ♔g7 15 ♘a4 0-0 16 ♘b6
♖a7 17 ♔b8 ended favourably for
the theme of our book with the

rook being surrounded.

14 ♖e2! ♖xb2



15 ♘b5!

Let's go!

15 ... ♖xa1+

In the event of 15 ... ab 16 ♔xb5+
♘d8 17 ♖d1+ ♔d7 18 ♔e5 Black
has no less trouble.

16 ♖f2 ♖xh1 17 ♘c7+ ♘d8
18 ♖d2+ ♔d7 19 ed

Black resigned.

Dutch Defence

Réti – Euwe

Amsterdam, 1920

1 d4 f5 2 e4 fe 3 ♘c3 ♘f6 4 ♔g5
g6 5 f3 ef 6 ♘xf3 ♔g7 7 ♔d3 c5(?)
8 d5 ♖b6

So many times there's been a
truce ...

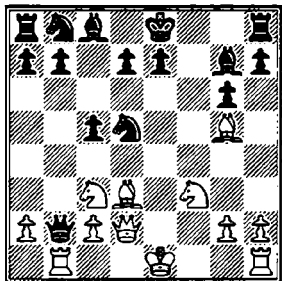
Alas, the hand playing Black
from time to time also sends the

queen on the route d8-b6xb2 for illusory material gain. Here, on this half-move, a catastrophe is born for Black.

9 ♚d2!

And on this one – a brilliant combinational attack.

9 ... ♜xb2 10 ♞b1 ♝xd5



It's obvious that on 11 ♞xb2 Black intends to remain three pawns up – 11 ... ♜xc3. So has he won? On the contrary.

11 ♝xd5! ♜xb1+ 12 ♜f2 ♜xh1
13 ♜xe7

The main threat is 14 ♜d6 with a reprisal against the king.

13 ... d6 14 ♜xd6 ♝c6 15 ♜b5
♜d7 16 ♜xc6 bc 17 ♜e2+

Black resigned, the king can't get out from under the 'carpet': 17 ... ♜f7 (17 ... ♜d8 18 ♜c7+ ♜c8 19 ♜a6 mate) 18 ♝g5+ ♜g8 19 ♝e7+.

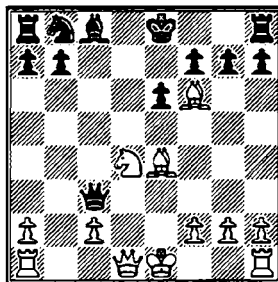
All that remains is to examine games in which the double sacrifice is undertaken only to gain some chess time, to drive the enemy queen away from the main part of the board at least for a few half-tempi.

French Defence

Vukcevic – Panov

Smederevo, 1955

1 d4 ♝f6 2 ♝c3 e6 3 e4 d5 4 ♜g5
♜b4 5 ♜d3 de 6 ♜xe4 c5 7 ♝e2 cd
8 ♝xd4 ♜a5(?) 9 ♜xf6 ♜xc3+
10 bc ♜xc3+



The position suggests: he can switch to decisive actions. It's enough to compare the development of the white and black pieces.

11 ♚d2! ♜xa1+ 12 ♜e2 ♜b2
13 ♞b1!

A curious moment. The queen rejected the second rook, so it's delivered forcibly to it.

13 ... ♖xb1

Even such a brief deflection of the queen from the central squares allows White to conclude his tactical idea colourfully. Other retreats also didn't bring any relief: 13 ... ♖a3 14 ♘b5; 13 ... ♖xa2 14 ♘xe6! ♖c4+ 15 ♕f3 ♘d7 16 ♘g7+ ♕f8 17 ♖d6+ ♕g8 18 ♘f5 etc.

14 ♘xe6!

Four pieces against one king!

14 ... ♘d7 15 ♘g7+ ♕f8 16 ♘e6+! fe 17 ♖d6+

He also could have approached the king from the other side: 17 ♖h6+ ♕e8 18 ♖g6+, but the path chosen by White is shorter and more elegant.

17 ... ♕g8 18 ♖g3+ ♕f8 19 ♖g7+ ♕e8 20 ♖e7 mate.

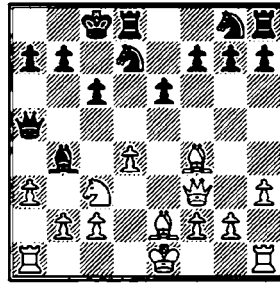
Scandinavian Defence

Canal – NN

Budapest, 1934

1 e4 d5 2 ed ♖xd5 3 ♘c3 ♖a5 4 d4 c6 5 ♘f3 ♖g6 6 ♖f4 e6 7 h3 ♖xf3 8 ♖xf3 ♖b4 9 ♖e2 ♘d7 10 a3 0-0-0

Black doesn't have long to regret the fact that instead of castling the move 10 ... ♘gf6 wasn't made.



11 ab! ♖xa1+ 12 ♕d2 ♖xh1 13 ♖xc6+ bc 14 ♖a6 mate.

Sicilian Defence

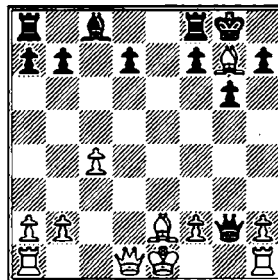
Gaprindashvili – Servaty

Dortmund, 1974

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 d4 cd 4 ♘xd4 g6 5 c4 ♖g7 6 ♖e3 ♘f6 7 ♘c3 ♘g4 8 ♖xg4 ♘xd4 9 ♖d1 e5 10 ♘b5 0-0 11 ♖e2 ♖h4(?) 12 ♘xd4 ed 13 ♖xd4 ♖xe4 14 ♖xg7

The operation that Black started on the eleventh move has reached its apogee. he can't stop halfway: 14 ... ♕xg7 15 0-0 leads to a dismal position. So ...

14 ... ♖xg2



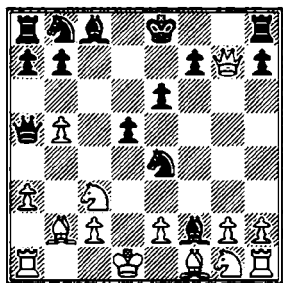
Black correctly calculated that after 15 ♖f3 ♜e8+ 16 ♔d2 ♜g5+ and 17 ... ♜xg7 he can continue the battle successfully – his opponent's king is actually homeless. At first glance there do not seem to be any other defences (there's no playing 17 ♜f1).

15 ♜d4! ♜xh1+ 16 ♔d2 ♜xa1 17 ♜f6!

An elegant conclusion to the attack. There's no salvation from the threat of 18 ♖h6. For example, 17 ... ♜xa2 18 ♖h6 ♜a5+ 19 ♔c1 ♜a1+ (19 ... ♜e1+ 20 ♖d1) 20 ♔c2 ♜a4+ 21 ♔b1.

Sokolsky Opening
Fleissig – Schlechter
 Vienna, 1895

1 b4 e6 2 ♖b2 ♘f6 3 a3 c5 4 b5 d5 5 d4 ♜a5+ 6 ♘c3(?) ♘e4 7 ♜d3 cd 8 ♜xd4 ♖c5! 9 ♜xg7 ♖xf2+ 10 ♔d1



The time for sacrificing has come!

10 ... d4! 11 ♜xh8+ ♔e7 12 ♜xc8 dc 13 ♖c1

There's no particular choice. With 13 ♜xb7+ ♘d7 14 ♖c1 ♜d8 the rook entered the game.

13 ... ♘d7!

To send the queen further away as soon as possible.

14 ♜xa8 ♜xb5 15 ♖f4 ♜d5+ 16 ♔c1 ♖e3+! 17 ♖xe3 ♘f2!

White resigned: 18 ♖xf2 (18 ♔b1 ♜b5+) 18 ... ♜d2+ 19 ♔b1 ♜d1+ 20 ♔a2 ♜xc2 – and mate with crooked epaulettes Excellent!

But if he had been greedy and not played 13 ... ♘d7, everything would have ended tragically – the white queen would go to c5 with a check and an exchange.

Dutch Defence
Edgar – Lott

By correspondence, 1955

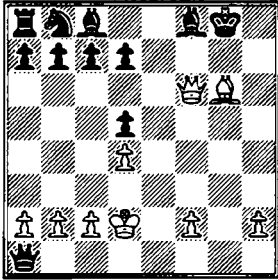
1 d4 f5 2 e4 fe 3 ♘c3 ♘f6 4 ♖g5 e6 5 ♖xf6 ♜xf6 6 ♘e4 ♜g6 7 ♖d3! ♜xg2 8 ♜h5+ g6 9 ♜e5!

History is repeating itself. A badly-played Staunton Gambit by Black – a clear lag in development, and now White is already boldly going for a sharp concluding attack, sacrificing all his units that are left on the first rank.

9 ... ♜xh1 10 ♜xh8 ♜xg1+ 11 ♔d2 ♜xa1 12 ♘f6+ ♔e7 13 ♘d5+! ed

On 13 ... ♖e8 convincing is
 14 ♜xh7 ed 15 ♙xg6+ ♖d8
 16 ♜h4+ ♙e7 17 ♜h8+.

14 ♜xh7+ ♖d6 15 ♜xg6+ ♖e7
 16 ♜g5+ ♖f7 17 ♙g6+ ♖g8 18 ♜f6!



An instructive picture. Black's queenside hasn't even stirred in 17 moves. His queen, after completing a gargantuan task, is deep in the rear. His opponent's last two pieces have succeeded in building an elegant final construction.

18 ... ♙b4+ 19 c3 ♜xb2+ 20 ♖d1
 ♜a1+ 21 ♖e2 ♜b2+ 22 ♖f3 ♜xc3+
 23 ♖g2

The king has slipped away, and mate is unavoidable.

From's Gambit

Kolodzheychik – NN

Bilsko, 1956

1 f4 d5 2 ♘f3 c5 3 d3 ♘f6
 4 ♘bd2 ♜a5 5 e4! de 6 de ♘xe4
 7 ♙d3 ♘xd2 8 ♙xd2 ♜b6

Take a look at what's happening. For now Black has won a pawn, White has brought three pieces into the game and is ready to castle. And what is the queen on b6 doing? Perhaps in its vainglorious pride it is aiming at the b2 pawn?

9 ♘e5 ♜xb2

And so it is. But now everything goes almost automatically.

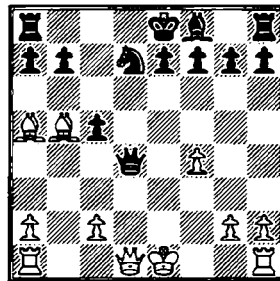
10 ♙a5! ♜d4

On 10 ... ♘c6 play ends 11 ♙e4 or 11 ♙c4.

11 ♙b5+ ♙d7

And if he covers with the knight? Then 12 ♜f3 intending 13 ♜d1.

12 ♘d7 ♘xd7



It's easy to see that Black has managed his opening time in a frivolous way. He only has his queen in play, and that will now be exiled on h1.

The most important law of chess

13 ♖f3! ♖xa1+ 14 ♔?2 ♖xh1
15 ♖d5

Possible also is 15 ♖xb7, but White thought that with 15 ♖d5 he would mate a move earlier: 15 ... ♖d8 16 ♗xd8 f6 17 ♗xd7+ and 18 ♗e6+.

Black resigned.

Sicilian Defence

Dolgiy – Malev

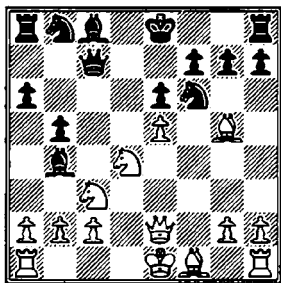
Chelyabinsk, 1969

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cd 4 ♘xd4
♘f6 5 ♘c3 a6 6 ♗g5 e6 7 f4 b5 8 e5
de 9 fe ♖c7 10 ♖e2

It's difficult to believe that our combination is also possible even in this most famous opening tabiya.

10 ... ♗b4

Usually 10 ... ♘fd7 is played, but why not also try out this active move?



11 e4! ♗xc3+ 12 bc ♖xc3+

13 ♖d2 ♖xa1+ 14 ♔f2 ♗d7

14 ... ♘d7 also led to the same unhappy finale. He would like to castle, but then the attack develops thus: 14 ... 0-0 15 fg (interesting too is 15 ♗h6) 15 ... ♗e8 16 ♗f6 ♘d7 17 ♗d3' ♖xh1 18 ♗xh7+! ♔xh7 19 ♖d3+ ♔h6 20 ♖e3+ ♔h7 21 ♖e4+ ♔g8 22 ♖h4 ♘xf6 23 ♖h8 mate.

15 fg ♗g8 16 ♖b4 f6 17 ♗e2!
♖xh1 18 ♗xf6

If Black had played 14 ... ♘d7, now White would have 18 ♗h5+ ♔d8 19 ♘xe6 mate.

18 ... ♔f7 19 ♖e7+ ♔g6 20 ♗e5

Black resigned.

French Defence

Torre – Adams

New Orleans, 1920

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 ♘f6 4 ♗g5
de 5 ♘xe4 ♗e7 6 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 7 ♘f3
c6 8 c3 ♖c7 9 ♗d3 ♘d7 10 ♖e2 b6
11 g4 c5(?)

The first unusual move upsets Black's equanimity and circumspection. By immediately opening up the centre, he intends to punish his opponent for his premature pawn foray. However, with this, paths to his king are cleared, and this 'flaw' turns out to be the most important thing. It

was more sensible to continue developing with 11 ... ♖b7.

12 d4 ♖xc5 13 ♖xc5 ♗xc5

The threat of 14 ... ♗xc3+ has appeared for Black. And it was for this reason that Black undertook his action in the centre. White can't successfully castle short, as he has made the provocative move 11 g4.

14 g5!!

Here White already had to foresee the game's final position.

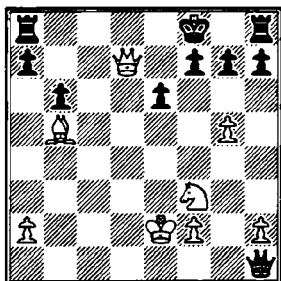
14 ... ♗xc3+

It's too late to retreat. After 14 ... ♗e7 15 ♖b5+ it's difficult for the black king to find a peaceful refuge.

15 bc ♗xc3+ 16 ♗d2 ♗xa1+
17 ♗e2 ♗xh1 18 ♖b5+ ♗d7

In the event of 18 ... ♔e7
19 ♗b4+ it's mate in two.

19 ♗xd7+ ♔f8



Both players were going for this position. It seems that Black has won: there does not appear to be any way to continue the attack...

20 g6!

The pawn makes rain! With its first move it provoked the opponent into premature activity, with its second it forced him to go for the isolation of the queen and with its third it clears the e-file approaches to the king.

20 ... hg 21 ♖g5

A masterpiece! Black resigned.

Sometimes the double rook sacrifice is not made in the game, but takes place only in parentheses – remaining out of frame yet significantly influencing the unfolding events.

Queen's Gambit

Rovner – Kotov

Leningrad, 1949

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 ♖c3 c6 4 e4 de
5 ♖xe4 ♖b4+ 6 ♗d2!? ♗xd4
7 ♗xb4 ♗xe4+ 8 ♗e2 ♖a6

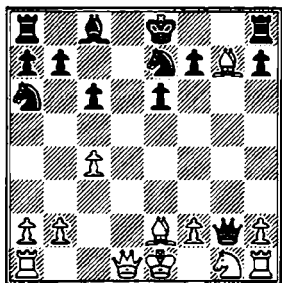
On the stubborn 8 ... ♗xg2 not bad is 9 ♗d6 ♖d7 10 0-0-0, and he cannot go further into the corner as then he would be punished by 10 ... ♗xh1 11 ♗f3.

The most important law of chess

9 ♖c3

There's also sense in 9 ♖d6.

9 ... ♜e7 10 ♖xg7 ♜xg2



11 ♖f6! ♜c5

Taking the rook would be catastrophic: 11 ... ♜xh1 12 ♜d6! Now the queen doesn't succeed in winning a piece on the first rank – it's mate, and in the event of 12 ... 0-0 13 ♜g3+ ♜g6 14 ♖f3 he himself falls into a trap.

12 ♜d6 0-0 13 ♖f3 ♜g6 14 ♖xe7

The short and stormy skirmish has brought White an extra piece.

The game ended after...

14 ... ♜d3+ 15 ♜e2 ♜xb2 16 ♜c1! ♜e8 17 ♜h3 e5 18 ♜hg1 ♖xh3 19 ♜xg6+ hg 20 ♖e4 ♖e6 21 ♜g1 Black resigned.

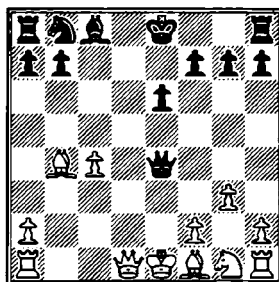
Possible is the finale 21 ... ♜xc4 22 ♖xg6 ♜xd6 23 ♖f5+ ♜h8 24 ♖f6 mate.

English Opening

Griffith – Brainin

Hampstead, 1943

1 c4 ♜f6 2 ♜c3 e6 3 e4 d5 4 e5 d4 5 ef dc 6 bc ♜xf6 7 d4 c5 8 g3 cd(?) 9 cd ♖b4+ 10 ♖d2 ♜xd4 11 ♖xb4 ♜e4+



The situation has been almost completely replicated.

12 ♖e2 ♜xh1 13 ♜d6 ♜c6

Again he can't capitalise on the first rank: 13 ... ♜xg1+ 14 ♜d2 ♜xa1 15 ♜e7 mate.

14 ♖f3! ♜xb4 15 0-0-0!

Black resigned. He can no longer save the queen or the king.

Of course, when giving away such large advances, you must calculate everything very carefully and precisely. The tiniest slip or hitch in the attack leads to irreversible consequences.

Latvian Gambit

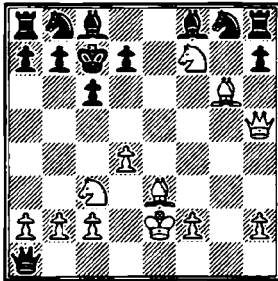
Benner – Draisberg

By correspondence, 1965

1 e4 e5 2 d3 f5 3 c4 fe 4 exe5
 ♖g5 5 d4 ♗xg2 6 ♗h5+ g6 7 f7+
 ♕d8 8 f6 ♗xh1+ 9 ♕e2 c6
 10 d3

Nothing new yet. We saw all this in the game Borik-Novak.

10 ... e3 11 d7+ ♕c7 12 fxe3
 ♗xa1



13 f4+

This ill-considered check is the reason for the defeat. The immediate 13 ♗g5! maintained the attack. For example, 13 ... b6 (13 ... f6 14 f4+ d6 15 fxd6+) 14 f4+ d6 (14 ... ♕b7 15 d8+ ♕a6 16 f3+ b5 17 fxb5+) 15 fxd6+! fxd6 16 ♗d8+ ♕b7 17 dxd6+ ♕a6 18 ♗xc8+ with a win. The natural defence would have been 13 ... b5, but then, too, 14 ♗d8+ ♕b7 15 ♗xf8 was going in the right direction.

13 ... d6 14 ♗g5 f6g4!

Here's the difference. Now on 15 ♕d2 he has 15 ... d7.

15 ♗xg4 hg 16 d8xh

The attack has gone wrong, but White doesn't succeed in winning back material – he's sacrificed too much. The rest was 16 ... d7 17 ♗xg6 dxf6 18 ♕d2 ♖e8, and White resigned.

To conclude the chapter, a unique game in which, along with both rooks, the queen was also given up in the name of victory.

Vienna Game

Steel – NN

Calcutta, 1886

1 e4 e5 2 d3 d6 3 f4 ef 4 d4
 ♗h4+ 5 ♕e2 d5 6 ed f6g4+ 7 d3
 0-0-0

The choice has been made. Black decides to attack, without considering the losses.

8 dc f5 9 cb+ ♕b8 10 d2b5 d6
 11 c3 ♖he8+ 12 ♕d3 f5+ 13 ♕c4
 f6+ 14 ♕xc5

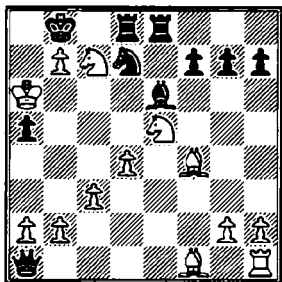
With contempt for the danger, the king fearlessly enters the heat of the battle.

14 ... a5

The most important law of chess

Readying himself for 15 ♖xh4
♜e4+ 16 ♜c6 ♙d5 mate.

15 ♖xc7! ♜h5+ 16 ♜e5 ♜d7+
17 ♜b5 ♜xd1 18 ♙xf4! ♜xa1
19 ♜a6



The fantastic march continues.
Now White is already threatening
to announce a picturesque mate –
20 ♜c6 mate.

19 ... ♜xe5 20 ♜xe8

Mate in two?

20 ... f6

The attempt to announce
perpetual check 20 ... ♜d5 21 ♙c4
♜xb2 22 ♙xd5 ♜e2+ is repelled
by 23 c4.

21 de

Mate in two?

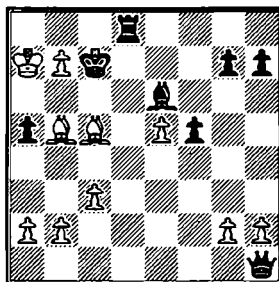
21 ... f5 22 ♙e3

Mate is threatened from the
other side. Where are all these
threats coming from?

22 ... ♜xe8 23 ♙b5! ♜xh1
24 ♙a7+ ♜c7 25 ♙c5 ♜d8

Exhausted from the endless
attacks, Black allows himself to
make a last slip. But there was a
draw – 25 ... ♙c8!

26 ♜a7!



Black resigned. Magical!

'Club-12'

If a queen is caught within a
dozen moves, then more often
than not this isn't all down to the
attacking side, but the fault of the
defender. It's fascinating to watch
when, sometimes because of the
queen's own self-confidence and
sometimes because of the
sluggishness of its 'teammates',
the strongest chess piece finds
itself in extremely delicate
situations.

King's Indian Defence
Epishin – Guseinov
 Paris, 2004

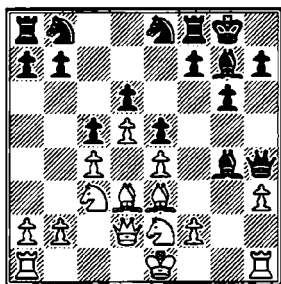
1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 c5 3 d5 d6 4 ♗c3 g6
 5 e4 ♙g7 6 h3 e5 7 ♙d3 0-0 8 ♗ge2
 ♗e8 9 g4 ♜h4

The other logically acceptable plan is ♗b8-a6-c7, preparing the attack b7-b5.

10 ♙e3

A good concept, well carried-out. The less aggressive 10 ♗g3 looks like the normal grand-master plan.

10 ... ♙xg4 11 ♜d2



It was unlikely that Vladimir Epishin's bold idea would have succeeded if Guseinov had now played 11 ... h6.

11 ... f5? 12 ♙g5 ♜h5 13 ♗g3

Black resigned.

Four Knights Opening
Rusan – Drtina
 Slovakia, 1994

1 e4 e5 2 ♗f3 ♗c6 3 ♗c3 ♗f6
 4 ♙c4

More promising is 4 ♙b5 or 4 d4.

4 ... ♗xe4!? 5 ♗xe4 d5 6 ♜e2?!

The start of a fatal journey. Approximate equality would be offered by 6 ♙d3 de 7 ♙xe4.

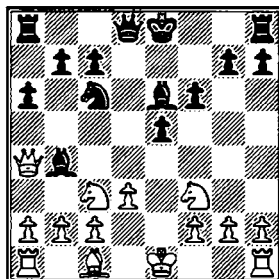
6 ... dc 7 ♜xc4 ♙e6 8 ♜a4

Returning to e2 is more circumspect.

8 ... f6 9 d3 a6!

Threatening 10 ... b5. Most likely, the best reaction now was 10 ♗ed2, opening a path to the kingside for the queen and retaining the opportunity to open up a second window – 10 ... ♙b4 11 c3.

10 ♗c3? ♙b4!



The most important law of chess

The combined forces have constructed a strong trap for the queen. There's no defence to 11 ... b5, so White resigned.

Caro-Kann

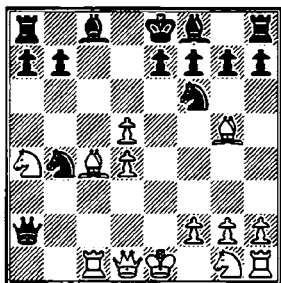
Botvinnik – Spielmann

Moscow, 1935

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ed c4 d4 f6
5 d3 d6 6 g5 b6 7 cd xb2?
8 c1 d4

The incorrectly calculated and stubbornly implemented plan leads to concrete problems.

9 a4! xa2 10 c4



That's it. On 10 ... xa3 there's 11 c3. Black requested a last word ...

10 ... g4 11 d3 xf3 12 gf

... and, having said it, immediately resigned.

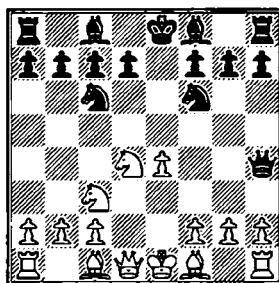
And here's a similar-looking tragedy, but on the other side.

Scotch Game

Fraser – Taubenhaus

Paris, 1888

1 e4 e5 2 f3 c6 3 d4 ed
4 xd4 Wh4 5 c3 d6?
(5 ... b4).



6 d5! Wh5 7 e2 Wg6 8 d4

Black resigned.

French Defence

Kotkov – Akopian

Krasnodar, 1966

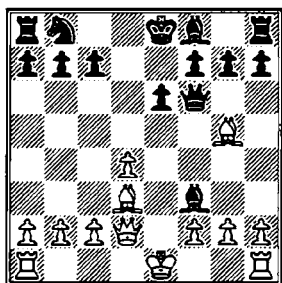
1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 d2 de 4 xe4
d7

Black tries to be clever on a road that has been well-trodden for centuries. However, this kind of cleverness, as we'll see, turns out to be self-deception.

5 d3 c6 6 d3 d6 7 dxf6+
Wxf6

A mistake that gives away the game. True, discerning this isn't easy yet.

8 ♖g5! ♙xf3 9 ♚d2!!



Black resigned.

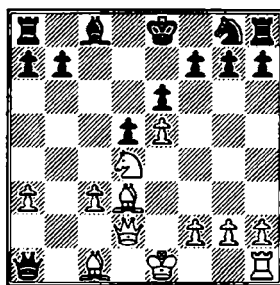
The next example shows a hyper-active queen.

French Defence
Butts – Fazekas
London, 1940

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 ♙b4 4 e5
c5 5 a3 ♙xc3+ 6 bc ♚c7 7 ♗f3 ♗c6
8 ♙d3 cd?

Chess would be far too simple a game if such combinations turned out to be correct. Black had a normal choice between 8 ... c4 and 8 ... ♗ge7.

9 cd ♗xd4 10 ♗xd4 ♚c3+
11 ♚d2! ♙xa1 12 c3



Black resigned: 13 ♗b3 can't be prevented.

Now – a queen surrounded by both its own and enemy pieces.

French Defence

Efremov – Amirkhanov
Kazan, 1980

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♗c3 de 4 ♗xe4
b6 5 ♗f3 ♙b7 6 ♙b5+ ♗d7

Of course, he needed a shield:
6 ... c6.

7 ♗e5 ♙c8 8 ♙g5!

The last hope – the h4 square – has been ruled out. Black resigned: 8 ... ♗f6 – 9 ♗c6.

King's Gambit

Larsson – Englund
Stockholm, 1942

1 e4 e5 2 f4 d5 3 ed ef 4 ♗f3 ♗f6
5 d4 ♗xd5 6 c4?

The most important law of chess

This should have been done on the previous move.

6 ... ♖b4+ 7 ♜bd2 ♜e3 8 ♜a4+ ♜d7 9 ♜b3 ♜e7 10 ♜f2 ♜d1+! 11 ♜g1 ♜c3

Threatening mate. White will still succeed in making a 'window' for the king.

12 h3 ♜a4!

... but not for the queen.

And now a different turn.

Philidor Defence

Krogius – Aratovsky

Saratov, 1945

1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 d6 3 d4 ♜d7 4 ♜c4 c6 5 ♜g5 ♜h6 6 a4

A completely appropriate positional move and at the same time a clever trap. The correct reaction would be 6 ... a5 or 6 ... ♜f6, but Black goes into automatic.

6 ... ♜e7? 7 ♜xf7+! ♜xf7 8 ♜e6 ♜b6 9 a5 ♜b4+ 10 c3 ♜c4 11 ♜c7+ ♜d8 12 b3!

The queen has gone too far behind the goalposts.

It's difficult to explain, but the b2 pawn has managed to imprison the enemy queen more often than the other characters on the chessboard. Evidently, as in

football or ice hockey: you have to be able to choose the spot for the goal.

Queen's Pawn Opening

Kraus – Kostin

Switzerland, 1938

1 d4 c5 2 dc ♜a5+ 3 ♜c3 ♜xc5 4 e4 e5 5 ♜f3 d6 6 ♜d5 ♜e7?

It's immediately clear that this is a mistake. Urgently, super-urgently, he should have taken the b5 square under control – 6 ... a6.

7 b4!

Black resigned: 7 ... ♜c6 8 ♜b5.

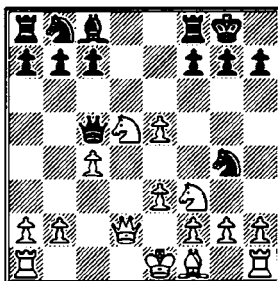
Queen's Gambit

Krejcik – Réti

Vienna, 1922

1 d4 d5 2 c4 ♜f6 3 ♜c3 e5 4 de ♜g4 5 ♜f3 ♜b4 6 ♜d2 ♜e7? 7 ♜xd5 ♜xd2+ 8 ♜xd2 ♜c5 9 e3 0-0?

Anything but that.



10 b4!

Black resigned.

Scandinavian Defence

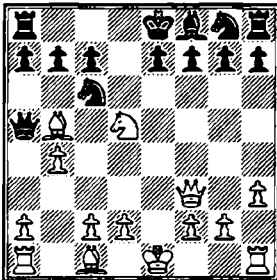
Wiesel – Weigel

By correspondence, 1923

1 e4 d5 2 ed ♖xd5 3 ♘c3 ♗a5
4 ♜f3 ♙g4 5 h3 ♚xf3 6 ♗xf3 ♘c6?

For peace and quiet, necessary
was 6 ... c6.

7 ♙b5 ♗b6 8 ♘d5 ♗a5 9 b4!



The queen will be lost. Black
resigned.

King's Indian Defence

Spitzer – Ilis

Belgrade, 1953

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 ♙g7 4 e4
0-0 5 e5 ♗e8 6 f4 d6 7 ♘f3 ♘d7
8 ♙e2 de 9 fe c5 10 dc ♗c7?

In sharp situations you have to
play accurately: 10 ... ♗a5.

11 ♘d5 ♗xc5 12 b4!

Black resigned.

Now for a word from the b7
pawn.

Scandinavian Defence

Lysenko – Voronova

Frunze, 1978

1 e4 d5 2 ed ♖xd5 3 ♘c3 ♗a5
4 d4 e5 5 ♗e2 ♘c6 6 d5 ♙b4 7 ♗c4
♘d4 8 ♙d3 b5!

White resigned.

As we say farewell to the
chapter, let's look at another two
miniatures.

Pirc Defence

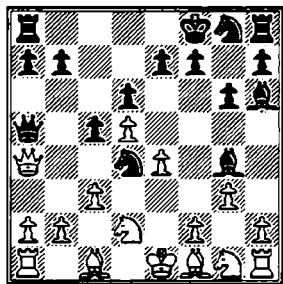
Gliksman – Popovic

Wroclaw, 1979

1 e4 g6 2 d4 ♙g7 3 ♘c3 d6 4 g3
♘c6 5 d5 ♘d4 6 ♙e3 c5 7 ♘b1?!

Severely damaging the
coordination in his own camp.

7 ... ♗b6 8 ♙c1 ♙h6! 9 c3 ♙g4
10 ♗a4+ ♜f8 11 ♘d2 ♗a5!!



White resigned. The queen has 'caught' the queen.

Ruy Lopez

Rubenchik – Suslov

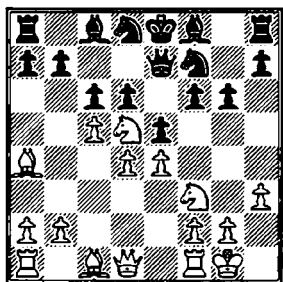
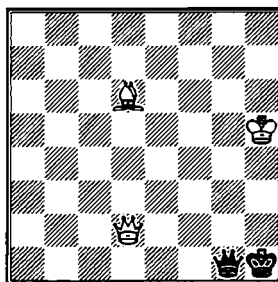
Minsk, 1977

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♘c6 3 ♗b5 ♜e7?
 4 0-0 ♘d8 5 d4 c6 6 ♗a4 d6 7 h3 g6
 8 c4 ♗h6 9 ♘c3 f6 10 c5! ♗hf7
 11 ♘d5!

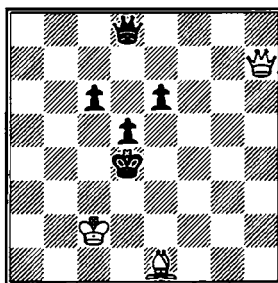
'A golden dozen of studies'

The queen can go many places. The spectrum of its work is wide. But there aren't only high points in its glorious life on the chessboard. There are also bad times. In each of the following positions White wins.

37

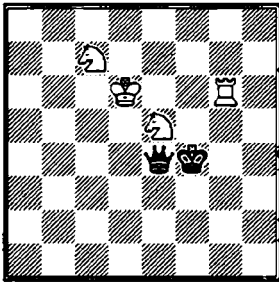


38

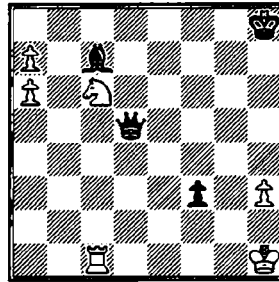


The queen falls in the midst of its entire chess population.

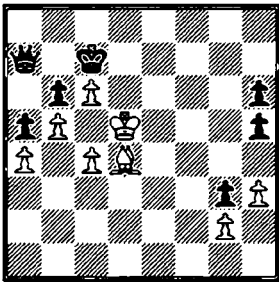
45



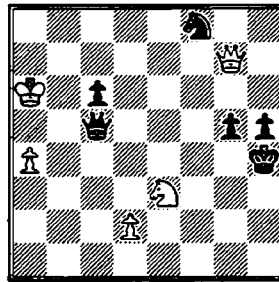
47



46



48

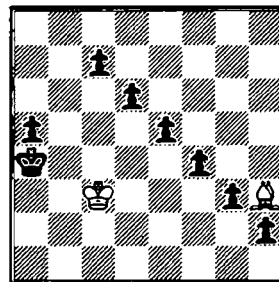


The obstinate pawn

"Any pawn that has even the faintest hint of an opportunity to advance, any passed pawn – restrain it!" Thus wrote grandmaster Aron Nimzowitsch in his book *The Blockade*.

In the next diagram play goes 1 ♙d7+ ♚a3 2 ♜c6 and the chain has been stopped. A wonderful illustration.

S. Loyd, 1868



Draw

A battle against the advance of the enemy infantry takes place in virtually every game. Here's a characteristic example:

Queen's Gambit
Alekhine – Rubinstein
The Hague, 1921

1 d4 d5 2 ♘f3 e6 3 c4 a6 4 c5 ♘c6

Starting a battle for the advance e6-e5.

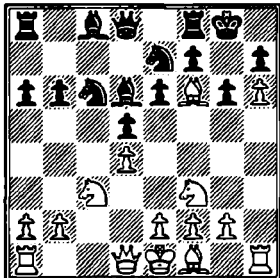
5 ♙f4 ♘ge7 6 ♘c3 ♘g6

It seems that Black will still manage to advance his king's pawn.

7 ♙e3!

Voluntarily occupying a strange position, the bishop defends the c5 pawn, and this means that 7 ... e5 is impossible now because of 8 de ♘cx5 9 ♘xe5 ♘xe5 10 ♗xd5.

7 ... b6 8 cb cb 9 h4! ♙d6 10 h5 ♘ge7 11 h6! g6 12 ♙g5 0-0 13 ♙f6!



The e6 and f7 pawns have been blockaded, and White "has obtained a position in sight of a win, if not actually a winning one" – Alekhine.

13 ... b5 14 e3 ♙d7 15 ♙d3 ♖c8 16 a4! b4 17 ♘e2 ♗b6 18 ♘c1!

This time preventing the advance 18 ... b3, which would have given the black pieces a convenient outpost on b4.

18 ... ♖c7 19 ♘b3 ♘a5 20 ♘c5!

The knight can't be taken because of the loss of material: 20 ... ♙xc5 21 dc ♗xc5 22 ♙d4 ♗c6 23 ♘e5 ♗d6 24 ♘g4.

20 ... ♘c4 21 ♙xc4 dc 22 ♘e5

"22 Kt-K4 (♘e4) would force the win of the Exchange, and also maintain the attack, in view of the double threat 23 KtxB (♘xd6) followed by 24 B-K5 (♙e5); and 23 B-Kt7 (♙g7), followed by 24 Kt-B6 (♘f6) mate" – Alekhine.

22 ... ♙xe5 23 ♙xe7 ♙d6 24 ♙xf8 ♙xf8 25 ♘xd7 ♖xd7 26 a5!

Another thematic action. White prevents a6-a5, reinforcing the pawn group on the queenside.

26 ... ♗c6 27 ♗f3 ♙d5 28 ♖c1 ♗c7 29 ♗e2 c3 30 bc bc 31 ♗xa6 ♖xa5 32 ♗d3 ♙a3 33 ♖c2 ♙b2 34 ♘e2 ♗c6 35 f3 f5 36 ♖b1 ♗d6

The most important law of chess

37 ♖c4 ♜f7 38 ♖c8 ♖a6+ 39 ♖xa6
 ♜xa6 40 e4 g5 41 ♜d3 ♜g6 42 d5
 fe+ 43 fe ed 44 ed ♜a4 45 ♜d1
 ♜xh6 46 d6 ♜h5 47 d7 ♜a8 48 ♜e4
 ♜d8 49 ♜f5 ♜h4 50 ♜h1+ ♜g3
 51 ♜h3 mate.

'Club-12'

There probably isn't a single chess game where somehow or other the method of impeding or blockading pawns wasn't used.

In the 'Club-12' for pawns we've compiled a thematic selection, at the basis of which are two well-known microgames.

Caro-Kann

Carame – Matto

Gibraltar, 2004

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜c3 de 4 ♜xe4
 ♜f5 5 ♜d3

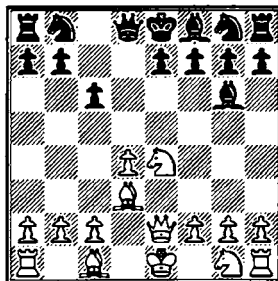
There is a durable initiative-seeking plan discovered long ago – 5 ♜g3 ♜g6 6 h4. Does he have to look for another plan? Well, perhaps he does.

5 ... ♜g6

Nevertheless, retreating is boring. More fun and promising is 5 ... ♖xd4 6 ♜e2 ♖b6.

6 ♖e2

A pure trap. More appropriate is 6 ♜f3.



As the bishop has already come out from behind the pawn line he could calmly play 6 ... e6. But ...

6 ... ♜d7? 7 ♜d6 mate!

The main misfortune for Mr. Matto, probably, was that he didn't read the book by Anatoly Matsukevich, *Encyclopaedia of Opening Mistakes*, published by the Moscow company Astrel in late 2002. Among 4,000 super-minatures in the book, number 1,194 is M.Serrano – D.Perez, played 10 years ago in the city of Cordoba (in neighbouring Spain!). As you've already guessed, everything was repeated move for move.

Queen's Pawn Opening

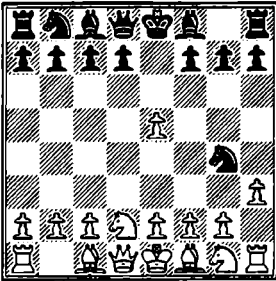
Gibaud – Lazard

Paris, 1924

1 d4 ♜f6 2 ♜d2 e5 3 de ♜g4

Of course, in this position it wouldn't occur to anyone to play the f2 pawn. Out of the remaining 20 possible moves only one leads to immediate defeat.

4 h3?? Merci, merci, Gibaud!

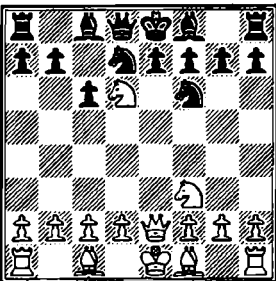


4 ... ♖e3! A pity for both the queen and the king (5 fe ♜h4+), so White resigned.

Caro-Kann

Keres – Arlamowski
Szcawno Zdroj, 1950

1 e4 c6 2 ♘c3 d5 3 ♗f3 de
4 ♗xe4 ♗f6 5 ♜e2 ♗bd7??
6 ♗d6 mate!



There's the mate. It's said that when Arlamowski – a well-known Polish master – made the fateful fifth move, Keres came up behind him and extended his arm behind his opponent's back to move his knight from e4 to d6.

That tragic game had a serious predecessor.

Caro-Kann
Alekhine – Allies
Poland, 1935

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 de 4 ♗xe4
♗d7 5 ♜e2 ♗gf6?? 6 ♗d6 mate.

Later a very curious series of ideological twins was formed.

Ending exactly the same way were the encounters **Vogt – Lehmann** (Weidenau, 1947), **Keres – Dvorzhansky** (Moscow, 1956), **Kosterin – Lancias** (Olympiad, Havana, 1956), **Guzden – Krzhishtanovsky** (Elblon, 1973) and **Nizimura-Marco** (Olympiad, Lucerne, 1982).

It's possible that even now, as you're reading these lines, someone is already advancing their knight to d6 ...

Ruy Lopez

Vasyukov – Giterman

Odessa, 1960

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♘c6 3 ♗b5 ♗c5
4 c3 f5 5 d4 fe 6 ♘g5 ♗e7 (6 ... ed)
7 de ♘xe5

There was no need to lose so much right away. Then again, also with 7 ... ♗xg5 8 ♖h5+ g6 9 ♖xg5 ♖xg5 10 ♗xg5 ♘xe5 11 ♗f4! White's chances are appreciably greater.

8 ♗e6!

Black resigned.

Queen's Pawn Opening

Venert – Meckharov

Bulgaria, 1970

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 ♘c6 3 ♘f3 d6
4 ♘c3 ♗g4 5 d5 ♗e5

It's hard to believe, but there is only one more move left before the end of the game.

6 ♗d2?? (6 ♗xe5) 6 ... ♗d3+!

White resigned.

English Opening

Poldauf – Steudtmann

Rerik, 1980

1 c4 e5 2 ♘c3 ♘f6 3 ♘f3 ♘c6
4 g3 ♗c5

All the indications are that this is a Sicilian Defence with colours reversed. The bishop isn't very

conveniently placed on c5. More convincing is 4 ... ♗e7.

5 ♘xe5

In vain. Natural and strong is 5 ♗g2.

5 ... ♘xe5 6 d4 ♖e7

Cunningly thought out. The curious variation 7 de ♖xe5 8 ♗f4 ♖e7 9 ♗xc7 d6 10 ♗a5 b6 11 b4 ♗xf2+ 12 ♖xf2 ♗g4+ is clearly to Black's advantage.

7 dc??

"The mistakes are all there waiting to be made!" said Tartakower.

7 ... ♘f3 mate!

A similar tragedy has also befallen White on more than one occasion in the Budapest Gambit.

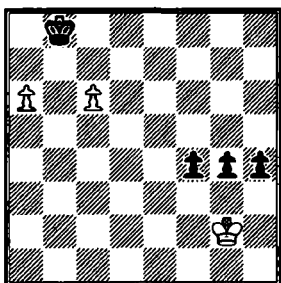
1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e5 3 de ♗g4 4 ♘f3 ♘c6 5 ♗f4 ♗b4+ 6 ♗bd2 ♖e7 7 a3 ♗gxe5 8 ab?? ♗d3 mate.

Thus ended the games Rubinstein – Vidmar (Berlin, 1918), Peshkxonov – Olkhovsky (Kalinin, 1959), Kharitonyuk – Struchkov (Minsk, 1979), Taylor – Fowler (1st Zimbabwe Championship, 1980). Who's next?

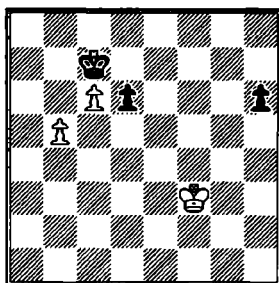
'A golden dozen of studies'

In the solutions to these studies there are various examples of the "taming of the obstinate" ... pawn. In numbers 54 and 57-60 there is a draw. In the others – a win.

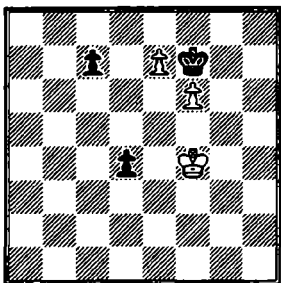
49



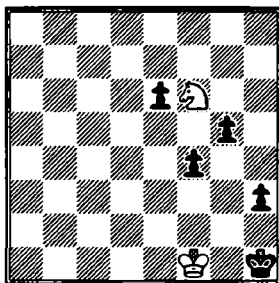
52



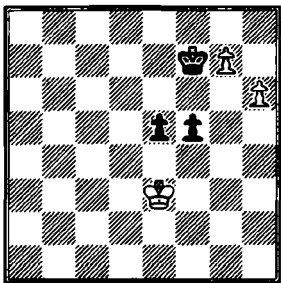
50



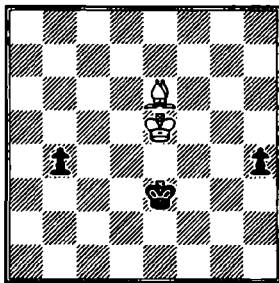
53



51

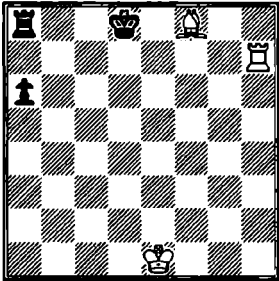


54

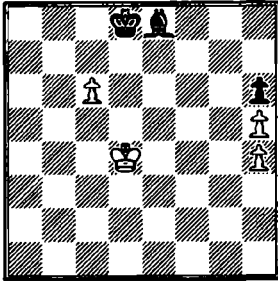


The most important law of chess

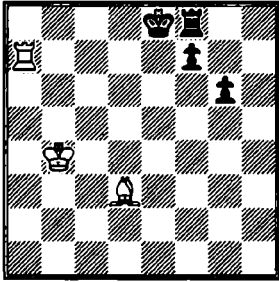
55



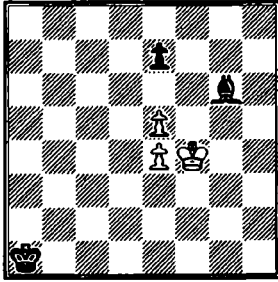
58



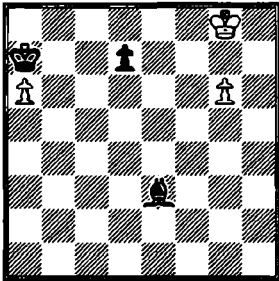
56



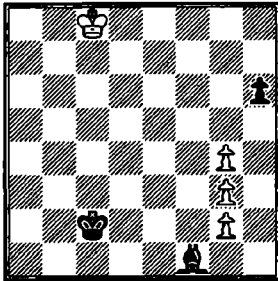
59



57



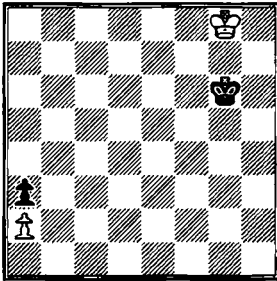
60



Kings under arrest

In this chapter we're interested in restricting the freedom of the enemy king in the peak period of its activity – in the endgame, when the king comes out on the prowl.

F. Zakman, 1923



Draw

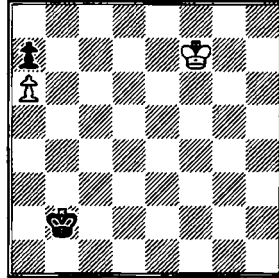
White's situation is complicated, and with the weak-willed move 1 ♖f8 he really lets the game slip: 1 ... ♜f6 2 ♜e8 ♜e5 3 ♜e7 ♜d4 4 ♜d6 ♜c3 5 ♜d5 ♜b2 6 ♜c4 ♜xa2 7 ♜c3 ♜b1. So we won't allow ourselves to come undone, let's start looking:

1 ♜h8!

Very good! It turns out there's a draw now: 1 ... ♜f6 2 ♜h7 ♜e5 3 ♜g6 ♜d4 4 ♜f5 ♜c3 5 ♜e4 ♜b2 6 ♜d3 ♜xa2 7 ♜c2 Exactly what was required! The black king is under arrest: 7 ... ♜a1 8 ♜c1 a2 (8 ... ♜a2 9 ♜c2 – *ad infinitum*) 9 ♜c2 Stalemate.

With the same ideas this study is also interesting.

I. Maizelis, 1921

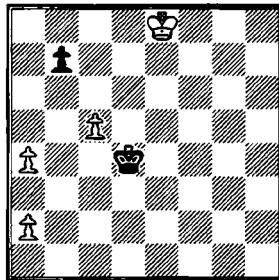


There are five steps from the point f7 to the point a7, but they can be made in different ways. Unthinkingly, by the direct route – the black king gets to c7. The best path is sinusoid:

1 ♜e6 ♜c3 2 ♜d5!

Shouldering the black king away. Now – see for yourself – it will not manage to close and latch the door in time.

M. Levitt, 1930



Win

The most important law of chess

1 c6! bc 2 a5 ♖c5 3 a4!

A cunning little box. Problems can't be avoided.

3 ... ♖d6 4 ♖d8 c5 5 a6 ♖c6 6 a5!

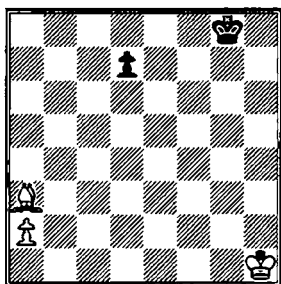
The pawns, like experienced mountain climbers, have ascended to the summit, firmly protecting each other.

6 ... c4 7 ♖c8 c3 8 a7, and that's all.

The king has hit a wall off which it has to rebound. But this spells the end.

So, the kings were driven away. But in some endgames there's another concern. The enemy king must be lured, caught and surrounded, and only then is it possible to think about winning.

O. Duras, 1908



Win

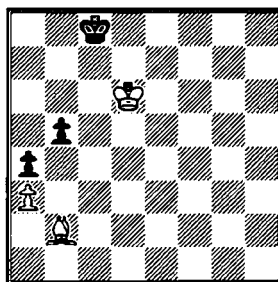
Surprisingly, on a deserted board (move wherever you like!) there is strictly one way only to a win.

1 ♖b4! ♖f7 2 a4 ♖e6

Dive down? You might not be able to resurface: 2 ... ♖e8 3 a5 ♖d8 4 ♖d6!

3 a5 ♖d5 4 a6 ♖c6 5 ♖c5!

Y. Averbakh, 1954

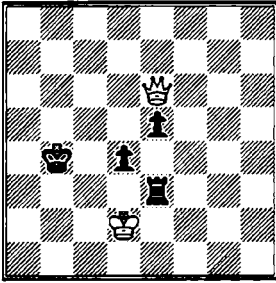


The task has been set: force Black to go b5-b4:

1 ♖f6! ♖b7 2 ♖d8 ♖c8 3 ♖b6 ♖b7 4 ♖c5 ♖c8 (the breakthrough 4 ... b4 5 ab a3 6 ♖b5 a2 7 ♖d4, as we see, doesn't work – it's not the right moment) 5 ♖c6 ♖b8 6 ♖d8 ♖a8! (there's less resistance in 6 ... ♖a7 7 ♖c7 ♖a8 8 ♖b6) 7 ♖b6 ♖b8 8 ♖c7+ ♖c8 9 ♖c6 b4 10 ab

In three moves Black will have a queen, and he will be mated.

V. Khenkin, 1960



White wins

What must be done? The e3 rook must be forced to abandon its post: either the rook itself will be left without any defence, or the e5 pawn will. But this can't be done while the black king is at large. Here are the brief contents of the endgame:

1 ♖d5 ♗a4 2 ♜c4+ ♗a5 3 ♜c5+ ♗a4

In the event of 3 ... ♗a6 4 ♜b4 ♗a7 5 ♜b5 ♗a8 6 ♜b6 one of the thematic positions arises.

4 ♜b6 ♗a3 5 ♜b5 ♗a2 6 ♜b4 ♗a1

Now 7 ♜b3 would be preferable, but the rook can take, and the manoeuvre ♜b4-d2-c2 doesn't work: your own king is in the way. So:

7 ♖c1 ♜c3+ 8 ♖d1 ♜d3+ 9 ♖e1 ♜e3+ 10 ♖f2 ♗a2 11 ♖f1 ♜f3+

12 ♖g2 ♜e3 13 ♖f2 ♗a1 14 ♜d2! ♖b1

The subtle work is crowned with another waiting move.

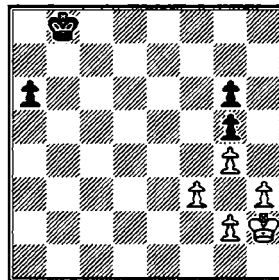
15 ♖g2 ♗a1 16 ♜c2

The king is under arrest. Victory: 16 ... ♜a3 17 ♜d1+, and then 18 ♜e2+ and 19 ♜xe5 or 16 ... ♜c3 17 ♜a4+, 18 ♜b5+ and 19 ♜xe5

But sometimes - that's how chess is! - the critical position where the king can't move is a blessing rather than a curse, and moreover - the only route to salvation.

It seems that in the next example White no longer has any ideas for opposing the march of the a6 pawn. Absolutely not. Except for one ...

J. Berger, 1980



Draw

The most important law of chess

It's no use even trying to chase the rook's pawn. Then again, the white king has something else in mind.

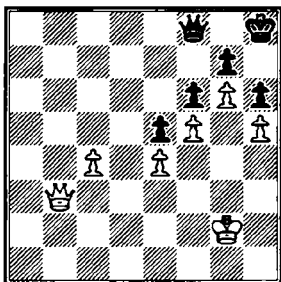
1 f4! ♖c7

The rash 1 ... a5 may also be regretted: 2 f5! gf 3 h4!

2 fg

No matter what Black does there are just three more moves: 3 ♖g3, 4 ♜h4, 5 g3 – self-stalemate.

The idea of self-stalemate isn't only important for problemists.



The finale of the game Nesis-Kolker from the 13th Soviet Correspondence Championship (1979).

Now he can be saved with an only move, and Black found it.

46 ... ♖g8!

Due to the threat of 47 ... ♖xc4! – it's a draw.

'Club-12'

Kings have been mated within 12 moves so often, it's simply a marvel.

All chess players – geniuses and amateurs alike – were beginners at one time. Every one of them has experienced the shock opening 1 f4 e6 2 g4 ♜h4 mate. It's impossible to mate the king any faster. But White can deliver mate in three moves and in a more fanciful manner after 1 e4 e5 2 ♜h5 ♖e7 3 ♜xe5 mate.

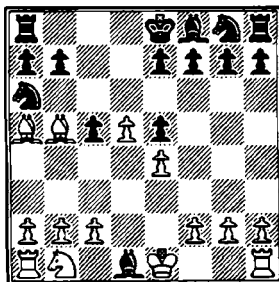
And now – tournament sensations.

Benoni

Karosz – Jaffe

New York, 1936

1 d4 c5 2 d5 ♘a6? 3 ♘f3 d6 4 e4 ♙g4? 5 ♘e5! ♜a5+ 6 ♙d2 de?? 7 ♙xa5 ♙xd1 8 ♙b5 mate



Sicilian Defence

Anand – NN

Bad Mergentheim, 1998

1 e4 c5 2 d3 d6 3 g2 e5
(3 ... d6; 3 ... e6; 3 ... g6) 4 d5!
d6 5 e3 a6 6 a4 g6?? (6 ... d6;
6 ... d5) 7 f6 mate!

This game was in fact played in a simultaneous exhibition.

King's Gambit

Manko – Jankowitz

By correspondence(!), 1900

1 e4 e5 2 e2 c5 3 f4 f6 4 c3
d6 5 g3 h6 6 g2 g4 7 f1
h2 8 fe?? xf1+! 9 xf1 f3
mate.

Ruy Lopez

Benko – Sawyer

New York, 1964

1 e4 e5 2 f3 d6 3 b5 g7
4 c3 a6 5 c4 h6? 6 d4 d6 7 b3
a5? 8 xf7+ d7 9 xe5+! de
10 e6 mate.

Bishop's Opening

Pratt – Korkeblad

USA, 1965

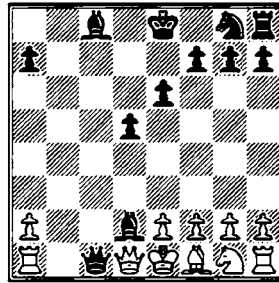
1 e4 e5 2 d3 f6 3 c4 xe4
4 h5 d6 5 b3 d6 6 d4 ed?
(6 ... xd4 7 xe5+ de6) 7 d5 g6
8 e2+ e7 9 f6+ f8 10 h6
mate.

Queen's Pawn Opening

Regan – Michell

London, 1905

1 d4 d5 2 f4 c5 3 xb8 xb8
4 dc e6 5 d4 c7 6 b4 b6 7 cb
xb6 8 c3 xb4! 9 cb c1+ 10 d1
xb4+ 11 d2 xd2 mate.



A non-standard setup.

Ruy Lopez

Berger – Frohlich

Graz, 1888

1 e4 e5 2 f3 d6 3 b5 a6
4 a4 d6 5 d3 g4 6 d5 de??
7 c3 b5 8 b3 a7 9 xe5! xd1
10 f6+! gf 11 xf7 mate.

Alekhine's Defence

Rabinovich – Levenfish

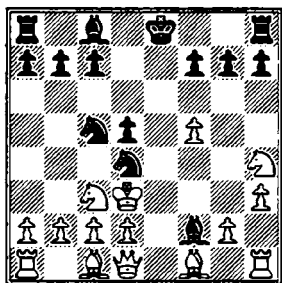
Moscow, 1927

1 e4 f6 2 e5 d5 3 f3 d6
4 e2? (4 d4, 4 c4) 4 ... f4
5 f1 de 6 xe5? d5 7 f3
e4+ 8 e2 xg2+ 9 f1 h3
10 d3 h4+ 11 e1 xf3 mate.

The most important law of chess

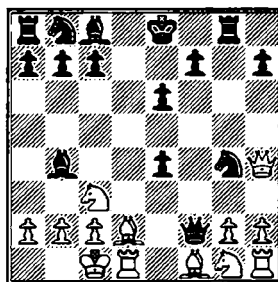
Vienna Game
Oudheusden – De Vries
 Amsterdam, 1934

1 e4 e5 2 ♖c3 ♘c6 3 f4 ♗c5
 4 ♘f3 d6 5 f5? ♘f6 6 h3? d5!
 7 ♗xe5 ♗xe4 8 ♘f3 ♖h4+!!
 9 ♗xh4 ♗f2+ 10 ♖e2 ♗d4+
 11 ♗d3 ♗c5 mate.



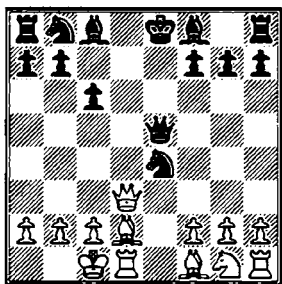
French Defence
Lundquist – Phillips
 Austria, 1980

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 ♗b4 4 ♗d2
 de 5 ♗g4 ♘f6 6 ♗xg7 ♗g8 7 ♖h6
 ♗xd4? (7 ... ♗c6, 7 ... ♗g6) 8 0-0-0
 ♗g4 9 ♖h4 ♗xf2?



Caro-Kann
Réti – Tartakower
 Vienna, 1910

1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 de 4 ♗xe4
 ♘f6 5 ♗d3 e5? (5 ... ♗xe4) 6 de
 ♖a5+ 7 ♗d2 ♗xe5 8 0-0-0! ♗xe4?
 (8 ... ♗e7).

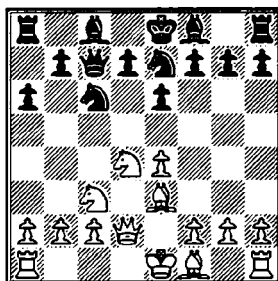


9 ♗d8+!! ♖xd8 10 ♗g5+ ♖c7
 11 ♗d8 mate

10 ♗d8+ ♖xd8 11 ♗g5+ ♖e8
 12 ♗d8 mate

Sicilian Defence
Taranin – Zubkov
 Sverdlovsk, 1972

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 e6 3 d4 cd 4 ♗xd4
 a6 5 ♖c3 ♗c6 6 ♗e3 ♗c7 (6 ... ♘f6)
 7 ♗d2 ♗ge7?

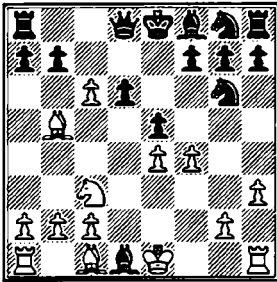


(7 ... ♖b4, 7 ... ♗f6, 7 ... b5,
7 ... d6) 8 ♗db5! ab 9 ♗xb5 ♖a5
10 ♗d6+ ♗d8 11 ♖xa5+ ♖xa5
12 ♖b6 mate.

Nimzowitsch Defence

Saulson – Phillips
Chicago, 1907

1 d4 ♗c6 2 e4 e5 3 d5 ♗ce7 4 f4
d6 5 ♗f3 ♖g4 6 ♗c3 ♗g6 7 h3
♗xf3 8 ♖b5+! c6 9 dc ♖xd1?
(9 ... ♗h4+)



10 cb+ ♗e7 11 ♗d5+ ♗e6 12 f5
mate

Ruy Lopez

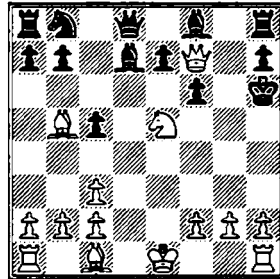
Nimzowitsch – Riskoff
Berlin, 1910

1 e4 e5 2 ♗f3 ♗c6 3 ♖b5 ♗f6
4 0-0 d6 5 d4 ♗xe4 (5 ... ♖d7) 6 d5
a6 7 ♖d3 ♗f6? (7 ... ♗e7 8 ♖xe4
f5) 8 dc e4 9 ♖e1 d5 10 ♖e2! ef
11 cb ♖xb7 12 ♖b5 mate.

Sicilian Defence

Thomas – Sapira
Antwerp, 1932

1 e4 c5 2 ♗f3 ♗f6 3 ♗c3 d5 4 ed
♗xd5 5 ♖b5+ ♖d7 6 ♗e5 ♗xc3
(6 ... ♗c6!) 7 ♖f3! f6 8 ♖h5+ g6
9 ♗xg6 ♗f7 10 ♗e5+ ♗g7 11 ♖f7+
♗h6 12 dc mate.



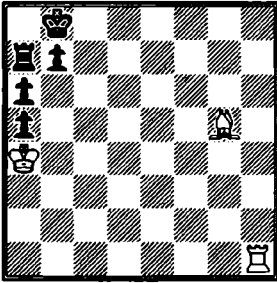
Incredible: the c1 bishop gives
mate, without having made a
single move in the game.

'A golden dozen of studies'

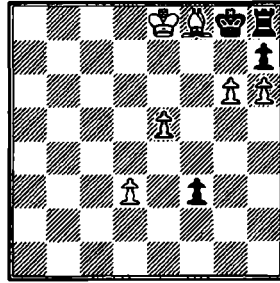
In each of the studies White has
a win. These are achieved because
the 12 awkward black kings not
only fall into traps themselves,
but also hinder their own pieces
in the process.

The most important chess law –
restricting the mobility of your
opponent's pieces – is illustrated
particularly distinctively and
expressively in these examples.

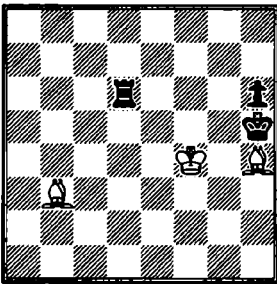
61



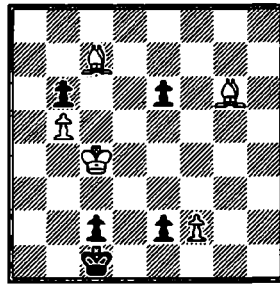
64



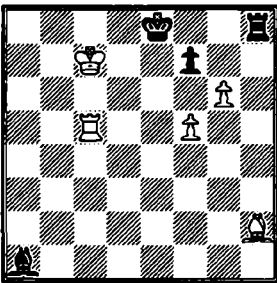
62



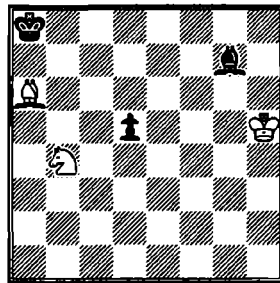
65



63

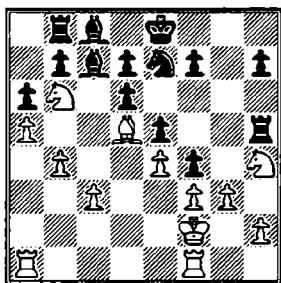


66



Zugzwang

Apart from mini-zugzwangs, which individual pieces fall into in nearly every game (as has been discussed in the previous chapters), rarer forms of it are also encountered. In these the flank, the centre or (of most interest to us) all the remaining forces are subjected to a blockade.



Black's queenside is completely paralysed. The knight has blockaded the c8 bishop and the b8 rook. For a win it's necessary only to open up play accurately on the kingside. So White sets about doing this.

23 ♖h1! f5 24 ♘g2 fe 25 fe ♘g6
26 h4 fg+ 27 ♜xg3 ♙d8 28 ♞af1
♙e7 29 ♜g4 ♞h6 30 h5 ♘f8

He has to retreat. Though the forces are nominally equal, White has an extra rook and king in play.

31 ♞f7 ♘e6 32 ♞h1 ♜d8 33 ♘e3

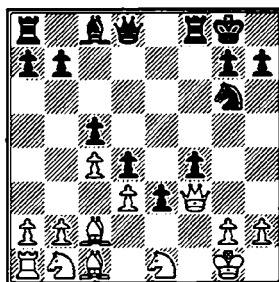
Black resigned. This position was from the game Estrin-Nisman played in the 1967 Moscow Championship. And now a goal at the opposite end of the pitch.

Italian Game

Albin – Winawer

Nuremberg, 1896

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♙c4 ♙c5
4 c3 ♘f6 5 0-0 ♘xe4 6 ♙d5?! ♘xf2
7 ♞xf2 ♙xf2+ 8 ♜xf2 ♘e7 9 ♞b3?
(9 ♙b3) 9 ... 0-0 10 ♙e4? d5 11 ♙c2
e4 12 ♘e1 ♘g6 13 c4 d4! 14 ♞g3 f5
15 ♜g1 c5 16 d3 f4 17 ♞f2 e3
18 ♞f3



White's play in the opening was below average, but the game has been included in the book because of this instructive position.

The agony didn't last long.

18 ... ♞h4 19 ♞d5+ ♜h8 20 ♘f3
♞f2+ 21 ♜h1 ♘h4 22 ♞g5 ♙h3!
White resigned.

Sicilian Defence

Bronstein – A. Zaitsev

Berlin, 1968

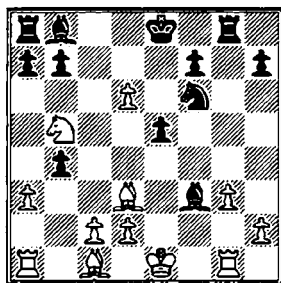
1 e4 c5 2 ♘c3 e6 3 ♗f3 ♘c6
4 ♙b5 ♗d4 5 ♙d3 ♗xf3+ 6 ♚xf3
♙d6 7 ♚e3! e5 8 ♗b5 ♚e7 9 b4! cb
10 ♚g3 ♙b8

On 10 ... ♗f8 not bad is 11 a3.

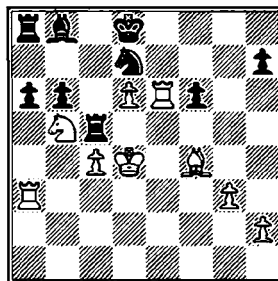
11 ♚xg7 ♚f6 12 ♚xf6 ♗xf6 13 a3
d5 14 f3 ♙g8 15 g3 ♙h3?! 16 ed!
♙g2 17 ♙g1 ♙xf3 18 d6

Non-standard solutions have led to an original position.

After oscillating, the scales have started tilting to White's side. His d6 pawn is brave and strong and is severely constraining the b8 bishop.



18 ... ba 19 ♙f1 e4 20 ♙e2 ♙g5
21 c4 a6 22 ♙xa3 ♙xe2 23 ♚xe2
♗d7 24 d4! ed+ 25 ♗xd3 ♙c5
26 ♙f4 f6 27 ♗d4 b6 28 ♙e1+ ♗d8
29 ♙e6



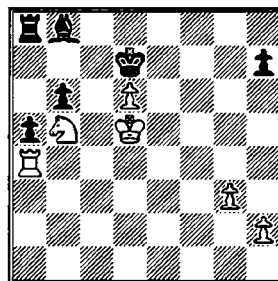
By comparison with the previous diagram Black's situation has noticeably worsened. As before, his flank is frozen and all of White's pieces have now come out to the hunt.

29 ... ♗e5 30 ♙xe5 fe+ 31 ♙xe5
♙xc4+ 32 ♗d5!

It's clear that on 32 ♗xc4? follows 32 ... ab+ and everything is ruined.

32 ... ♙c5+ 33 ♚e6 ♙xe5+
34 ♗xe5 ♗d7 35 ♗d5 a5 36 ♙a4!

Not letting the pawn get to a4.



The players each made one more move: 36 ... h5 37 ♙f4, and Black resigned.

English Opening
Karpov – Ribli
Amsterdam, 1980

1 c4 c5 2 ♘f3 ♘f6 3 ♘c3 ♘c6
4 g3 d5 5 cd ♘xd5 6 ♗g2 g6 7 0-0
♗g7 8 ♘xd5 ♗xd5 9 d3 0-0 10 ♗e3
♗d7 11 ♘d4 ♗d6 12 ♘xc6 ♗xc6
13 ♗xc6 ♗xc6 14 ♗c1 ♗e6 15 ♗xc5
♗xa2

We've just seen a considerable number of opening subtleties, but it isn't our task to bury our heads in them. The main thing is not to miss the crucial moment and to grasp what it is that turns the game into the tragic situation in which Black finds himself in the next diagram.

16 ♗b5! b6 17 ♗a1

The idea of the last moves is to weaken the a7 pawn and tie the queen's rook to its defence.

17 ... ♗xa1?!

Here's the key moment! Black doesn't sense the danger that awaits him in the endgame. After the exchange, in the best case scenario, he is doomed to a rook ending with four pawns against White's five. He should have preferred 17 ... ♗e6.

18 ♗xa1 ♗fb8

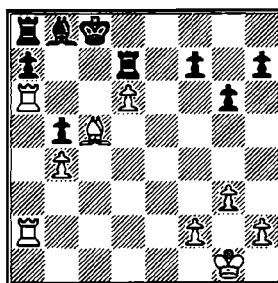
After the move 18 ... ♗fc8 the consequences would have been the same: 19 ♗a6 ♗c2 20 b3 ♗xe2

21 ♗xb6 and 22 ♗b7.

19 ♗a6 ♗f8 20 ♗b4 ♗e5 21 ♗ba4
b5 22 ♗a2 ♗b7 23 b3 ♗b8 24 ♗c5
♗e8 25 d4

The black pieces' habitat is gradually being eroded.

25 ... ♗d7 26 e4 e6 27 b4 ♗c8
28 d5 ed 29 ed ♗d7 30 d6



The sad result of the ill-considered exchange of queens. The entire queenside is blockaded. Now to exploit that.

30 ... ♗d8 31 ♗g2

The king should say the deciding word.

31 ... ♗d7

Black dreams of getting his rooks out to freedom via e8, but an immediate 31 ... ♗e8 is dangerous because of 32 d7+! ♗xd7 33 ♗f6. Passive defence is no good either: 31 ... ♗b7 32 ♗f3 ♗e8 33 ♗f4 h6 (not letting

the king through) 34 h4 with a breakthrough on the flank.

32 ♖e2! ♜c8

He has to retreat. In the event of 32 ... ♖e8 33 ♖xe8 ♜xe8 34 ♜f3 ♜d7 35 ♜e4 ♜e6 36 g4 White easily repels the king.

33 ♖e7 ♜d7 34 ♖a2! a5

What is this? Freedom? Oh, no. A mirage.

35 ♖c2

Black resigned.

White has won many colourful duels by paralysing the opponent's centre with the help of the wedge d5-d6 or e5-e6.

Sicilian Defence

Vasyukov – Chikovani

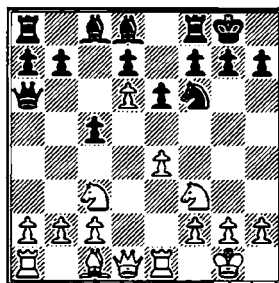
Moscow, 1963

1 e4 c5 2 ♟f3 ♟c6 3 ♟b5 ♜b6
4 ♟c3 e6 5 0-0 ♟f6 6 ♖e1 ♟e7
7 ♟xc6 ♜xc6 8 d4 0-0?

Of course, he needed to blockade the d4 pawn with the response d7-d5.

9 d5! ♜a6 10 d6! ♟d8

Taking the pawn is prohibited because of the fork e4-e5.



Black has clearly lost the first skirmish in the centre, and a very important one. Defeat in the centre inevitably leads to defeat on the flank.

11 ♟g5 h6 12 ♟h4 g5

This harsh attempt to free himself is met by a severe punishment.

13 ♟xg5! hg 14 ♟xg5 ♜a5
15 ♖e3 ♟h7 16 ♟h6 ♜h8 17 ♖g3
♟h4 18 ♟g7+ ♜g8 19 ♟f6+

Black resigned.

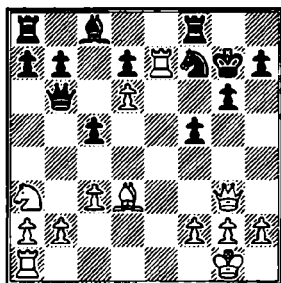
Sicilian Defence

Nikolaevsky – Lenchiner

Kharkov, 1962

1 e4 c5 2 ♟f3 ♟c6 3 ♟b5 ♜b6
4 ♟a3 g6 5 0-0 ♟g7 6 c3 ♟f6 7 d4
♟xe4 8 d5 ♟d6 9 ♟d3 ♟e5
10 ♟xe5 ♟xe5 11 ♖e1 ♟g7 12 ♜e2
e5 13 ♟h6! 0-0 14 ♟xg7 ♜xg7
15 ♜xe5+ f6 16 ♜g3 f5 17 ♖e7+
♟f7 18 d6!

The pawn wedge has cut the opponent's position in two. The pieces on the queenside and kingside are playing as if independent of each other, apparently unaware of what's happening on the other part of the board.



18 ... ♖xb2 19 ♜ae1 ♜xc3

On 19 ... ♜xa3 moreover there's 20 ♜e5+ ♔h6 (20 ... ♔g8 21 ♙c4) 21 ♜f6 with a speedy win.

20 ♔b5 f4 21 ♔xc3!

An interesting moment. White's position is so overwhelming that he calmly agrees to an exchange of queens, despite being down on material.

21 ... fg 22 fg

The f7 knight can't be protected from the cross-pin. The rest was 22 ... b5 23 ♙xb5 ♜b8 24 ♙c4 ♜b4 25 ♙xf7 ♜xf7 26 ♜f1! Black resigned. I wonder if the c8

bishop explained itself to its teammates after the game?

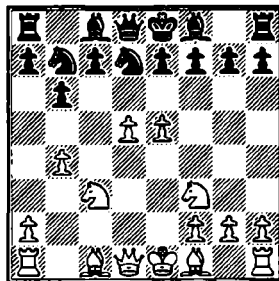
And now – a wedge from the king's pawn.

Queen's Gambit
Korsten – Hansen
 By correspondence,
 Denmark, 1949

1 ♖f3 ♔c6 2 d4 d5 3 c4 ♔f6?

All the problems stem from here. He should have chosen either 3 ... dc or 3 ... ♙g4.

4 cd ♜xd5 5 ♔c3 ♜d8 6 d5 ♔a5
 7 e4 b6 8 e5 ♔d7 9 b4 ♔b7



A striking position. Black has spent nine moves on what? He can't really be surprised by his opponent's fierce attack.

10 e6! fe 11 ♔d4 ♔e5 12 ♜h5+ ♔g6 13 ♙b5+ ♔f7

On 13 ... ♙d7 easily winning is 14 ♔xe6 ♜c8 15 ♔f4.

14 ♖c6 ♗d6 15 ♙c4

The result of the blockade of the centre is obvious. White's pieces come into play one after another, precisely, as if according to a timetable. At the same time Black is reduced to drawing helplessly chaotic patterns on the board. The finale of the game was conducted flawlessly.

15 ... ♜g8 16 ♘e4 ♗d7 17 de!
♗e8

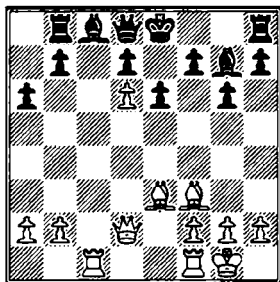
A piquant variation is
17 ... ♗xc6 18 ♗f3 ♘e5 19 ♗f7+
♘xf7 20 ef mate.

18 ♗f3 h6 19 ♗f7+ ♗xf7 20 ef+
♘h7 21 h4 ♙f5 22 ♘g5+

Black resigned – 22 ... hg 23 hg+
♘h4 24 ♜xh4+ ♜g6 25 ♘e5 mate.

Romanovsky – Ravinsky

Moscow, 1943



Black has a number of concerns.
But, apparently – what a trifle –

if the queen's rook were placed
not on b8, but on a8, then
defending would be much easier.

21 ♙h6! ♗f6

How he'd love to castle. But
therein lies the joke, on 21 ... 0-0
there's the ticklish 22 ♙xg7 ♜xg7
23 ♗d4+ and 24 ♗a7.

22 ♙xg7 ♗xg7 23 ♗e3!

An unexpected idea. Black
resigned. As it turns out, 23 ... ♜a8
isn't a defence. White still wins
by 24 ♗a7!

A blockade of the centre in
different forms can be found in
virtually every game.

Sicilian Defence

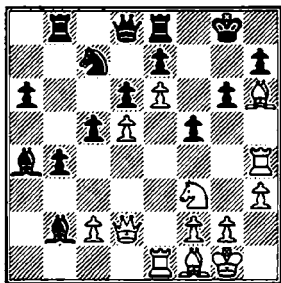
Tal – Benko

Bled, 1959

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 g6 3 d4 ♙g7 4 d5
d6 5 ♘c3 ♘f6 6 ♙b5+ ♘bd7 7 a4
0-0 8 0-0 a6 9 ♙e2 ♜b8 10 ♜e1 ♘e8
11 ♙f4 ♘c7 12 ♙f1 b5 13 ♗d2 ♜e8
14 h3 ♘f6 15 ♜ad1 ♙d7 16 e5 b4
17 ♘e4 ♘xe4 18 ♜xe4 ♙xa4
19 ♙h6 ♙h8 20 ♜de1

Black's best chance now would
be 20 ... e6, but he decides to
plunder his opponent's queenside
to the end.

20 ... f6 21 e6! f5 22 ♜h4 ♙xb2



Though completely lost on the queenside, White has managed to blockade his opponent's central pawns at the very source.

So what comes of it?

Only the distant b2 bishop will endeavour to help its king. The other five pieces don't even make a symbolic attempt to provide any assistance. It's no wonder that a disaster occurs.

23 ♖f8! ♜xf8 24 ♜h6 ♜f7 25 ef+ ♜xf7 26 ♜xh7+ ♖g7

Entertainment of the type 26 ... ♜e8 27 ♜xg6+ ♜d7 28 ♜xf5+ e6 29 ♜h7+ ♜c8 30 ♖xa6+ ♜xa6 31 de is pleasant only for White. Then again, the belated assistance given by the bishop to the black king is no longer of any use. After 27 ♜h6 ♜g8 28 ♜xg6+ ♜f8 29 ♜g5 ♜xd5 30 ♜h8+! he hoisted the white flag.

"The ideal of any restraint is and always will be the blockade!" Nimzowitsch asserted in his book

with the characteristic title *The Blockade*, published in Leningrad in 1925.

Nimzowitsch knew what he was talking about, and as it turned out the most famous games on the theme of the blockade are associated with his name.

French Defence

Alekhine – Nimzowitsch

San Remo, 1930

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 ♖b4 4 e5 c5 5 ♖d2 ♜e7 6 ♜b5 ♖xd2+ 7 ♜xd2 0-0 8 c3 b6

When you look through the score of a famous game, you always search for the sources of the defeat of one of the players. Strange as it may seem, the start of all Black's problems is hidden precisely here. He will not manage to exchange off the light-squared bishops (meaning, the idea isn't correct). Natural-looking is 8 ... ♜f5, not allowing the rival knight to get to d6.

9 f4 ♖a6 10 ♜f3 ♜d7 11 a4 ♜bc6 12 b4!

The refutation of the plan with 8 ... b6: after provoking a2-a4 Black had counted on getting through to c4 with his knight via a5.

12 ... cb 13 cb ♖b7 14 ♔d6 f5?

"The decisive positional mistake in an already compromised position. Due to the threatening advance of the a-pawn the only chance to obtain a little more space lay with 14 ... a5" – Alekhine.

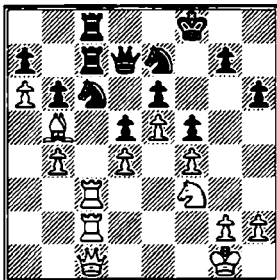
15 a5! ♔c8 16 ♗xb7 ♜xb7 17 a6 ♜f7

If he really 'wanted' to lose the knight, he could play 17 ... ♜e7 18 ♖b5! ♗b4 19 ♖b1.

18 ♖b5 ♗8e7 19 0-0 h6 20 ♜fc1 ♜fc8 21 ♜c2 ♜e8

"Black perishes not from a shortage of time, but from a shortage of space" – Alekhine. An illustration: 21 ... ♗d8 22 ♜ac1 ♜xc2 23 ♜xc2 ♜c8 24 ♜xc8 ♗xc8 25 ♜c3 ♗e7 26 ♜c7.

22 ♜ac1 ♜ab8 23 ♜e3 ♜c7 24 ♜c3! ♜d7 25 ♜1c2 ♖f8 26 ♜c1 ♜bc8



Now for the final, winning action.

27 ♖a4! b5

To gain time to defend the rook with the king.

28 ♖xb5 ♖e8 29 ♖a4 ♖d8 30 h4!

Black has only two pawn moves left, after which he has to retreat his queen to e8. But then comes 33 b5. So he resigned.

Queen's Indian Defence
Sämisch – Nimzowitsch
Copenhagen, 1923

1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♗f3 b6 4 g3 ♖b7 5 ♖g2 ♖e7 6 ♗c3 0-0 7 0-0 d5 8 ♗e5 c6 9 cd cd 10 ♖f4 a6

Intending to gradually widen the bridgehead on the queenside.

11 ♜c1 b5 12 ♜b3 ♗c6 13 ♗xc6 ♖xc6 14 h3 ♜d7 15 ♖h2 ♗h5 16 ♖d2 f5

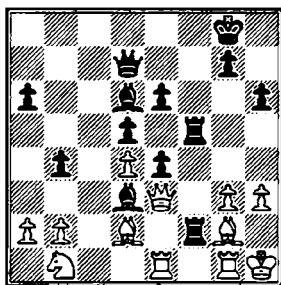
Combined purposeful play on both flanks has brought noticeable results. The black pieces, closing in on the enemy, are grabbing more and more space, whereas White hasn't even managed to decide upon a precise course of action for himself.

17 ♜d1 b4 18 ♗b1 ♖b5 19 ♜g1 ♖d6 20 e4 fe!

The most important law of chess

In his notes to the game Nimzowitsch wrote: "The idea of the sacrifice is to conclusively pin down White, who has neither lines nor squares at his disposal. Black's occupation of a second line, in tandem with the b5 bishop standing in readiness (preventing the move ♖f1), paralyses the opponent."

21 ♜xh5 ♞xf2 22 ♜g5 ♞af8
23 ♜h1 ♞8f5 24 ♜e3 ♙d3 25 ♞ce1
h6!!



This absolutely ironic move forces White to lay down his arms. The threat is 26 ... ♞5f3, although there's no need to hurry with this, instead he could reinforce the position with ♜d7-f7-g6.

His contemporaries didn't skimp on their epithets. They called this duel 'the immortal zugzwang game'.

Caro-Kann Defence

Nimzowitsch – Capablanca

New York, 1927

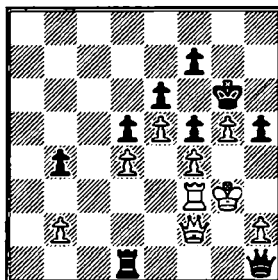
1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 ♙f5 4 ♙d3
♙xd3 5 ♜xd3 e6 6 ♘c3 ♜b6
7 ♘ge2 c5 8 dc ♙xc5 9 0-0 ♘e7
10 ♘a4 ♜c6 11 ♘xc5 ♜xc5 12 ♙e3
♜c7 13 f4 ♘f5 14 c3 ♘c6 15 ♞ad1
g6 16 g4 ♘xe3 17 ♜xe3 h5 18 g5
0-0 19 ♘d4 ♜b6 20 ♞f2 ♞fc8 21 a3
♞c7 22 ♞d3 ♘a5 23 ♞e2 ♞e8
24 ♔g2 ♘c6 25 ♞ed2 ♞ec8 26 ♞e2
♘e7 27 ♞ed2 ♞c4 28 ♜h3 ♔g7
29 ♞f2 a5 30 ♞e2 ♘f5 31 ♘xf5+ gf
32 ♜f3

A lengthy manoeuvring battle has led to a noticeable advantage for Black. His task in the new 'major piece' stage is to gradually seize space.

32 ... ♔g6 33 ♞ed2 ♞e4 34 ♞d4
♞c4 35 ♜f2 ♜b5 36 ♔g3 ♞cxd4
37 cd ♜c4 38 ♔g2 b5 39 ♔g1 b4
40 ab ab 41 ♔g2 ♜c1!

His opponent's habitat is shrinking with each move, like shagreen leather.

42 ♔g3 ♜h1 43 ♞d3 ♞e1 44 ♞f3
♞d1



45 b3

Forced. On a rook retreat there's
45 ... ♖f1, and 45 ♖h3 loses
because of 45 ... ♗d2.

45 ... ♖c1! 46 ♖e3

There's a nice finale in the event
of 46 h3 ♖g1+ 47 ♖h4 ♖g4 mate.

46 ... ♖f1

White resigned. Awaiting him is
47 ♗e2 ♗g1+ 48 ♖h3 ♖e1!

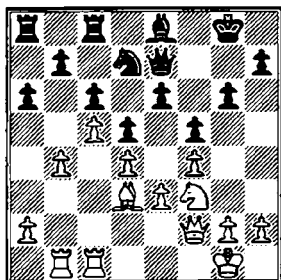
Such subtle games aren't
unusual in Capablanca's work.

Queen's Gambit

Capablanca – Treybal

Carlsbad, 1929

1 d4 d5 2 c4 c6 3 ♘f3 e6 4 ♙g5
♙e7 5 ♙xe7 ♗xe7 6 ♘bd2 f5 7 e3
♘d7 8 ♙d3 ♘h6?! 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♗c2
g6 11 ♖ab1 ♘f6 12 ♘e5 ♘f7 13 f4
♙d7 14 ♘df3 ♖fd8 15 b4 ♙e8
16 ♖fc1 a6 17 ♗f2 ♘xe5 18 ♘xe5
♘d7 19 ♘f3! ♖dc8 20 c5



Capablanca's strategic plan was
revealed on the fifth move. After
exchanging off Black's dark-
squared bishop, without getting
distracted he then logically
proceeded to blockade the other
one. Treybal didn't find an active
counter-plan (8 ... ♘h6?! – more
forthright is 8 ... ♘f6 and then
♘f6-e4), and his pieces became
more and more cramped. The
retreat 19 ♘f3 was beautiful. The
Cuban player's finely-tuned
intuition assigned to this knight
the role of principal reserve, who
will strike the final winning blow
at the end of the game.

20 ... ♘f6 21 a4 ♘g4 22 ♗e1 ♘h6
23 h3 ♘f7 24 g4! ♙d7 25 ♖c2 ♖h8
26 ♖g2 ♖g8 27 g5 ♗d8 28 h4 ♖g7
29 h5

The game now goes on for
about another 30 moves, but we
have to suppose that Black's
position is already lost.

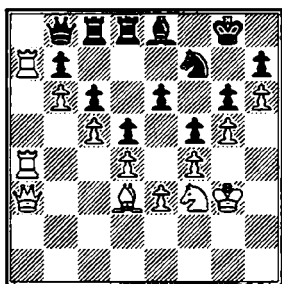
29 ... ♖h8 30 ♖h2 ♗c7 31 ♗c3
♗d8 32 ♖f2 ♗c7 33 ♖bh1 ♖ag8
34 ♗a1 ♖b8 35 ♗a3 ♖bg8 36 b5
ab

In the event of 36 ... ♗a5 37 b6!
the queen falls into an amusing
trap that is pleasantly suited to
our theme. White prepares the
manoeuvre ♘f3-d2-b3 without
interference.

37 h6+ ♖f8 38 ab ♖e7 39 b6 ♗b8

A textbook position. Now he can already reckon on a decisive attack against the b7 pawn. It wouldn't be bad for Black to let his rook through to b8. Alas, there isn't a ninth rank that would allow him to do that.

40 ♖a1 ♜c8 41 ♜b4 ♜hd8 42 ♖a7 ♜f8 43 ♜h1 ♙e8 44 ♜ha1 ♜g8 45 ♜1a4 ♜f8 46 ♜a3 ♜g8 47 ♜g3



A striking picture. White has two superfluous ranks.

47 ... ♙d7 48 ♜h4 ♜h8 49 ♜a1 ♜g8 50 ♜g3 ♜f8 51 ♜g2 ♙e8 52 ♙d2 ♙d7

He cannot prevent the attack ♙b3-a5 with the move ♜d7. Then comes ♙xb7!, and on ♜xb7 - ♜a8, when the queen falls.

53 ♙b3 ♜e8 54 ♙a5 ♙d8

Having completed the pointless journey b8-d7-f6-g4-h6-f7-d8, this knight fails to get rid of the problems ...

55 ♙a6! ba 56 ♜xd7 ♜e7

57 ♜xd8+!

... and suffers an ignominious end. Black resigned.

Queen's Indian Defence

Karpov - Miles

Las Palmas, 1977

1 c4 b6 2 d4 ♙b7 3 d5 e6 4 a3 ♙f6 5 ♙c3 ♙d6

What's going on? Can he play this way? Don't worry, everything's fine with the classics. This is just a trick, which, as we'll soon see, doesn't work.

6 ♙f3 ed 7 cd 0-0 8 ♙g5 ♜e8 9 e3 ♙e7

That's it. The pieces are back in their normal places. True, Black is two tempi down.

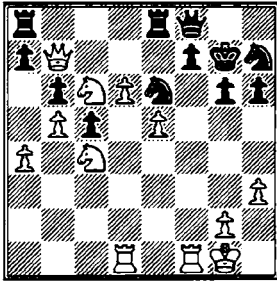
10 ♙c4 h6 11 ♙f4 ♙h5 12 ♙e5 ♙f6 13 ♙d4 ♙a6 14 ♙a6 ♙a6 15 0-0 c5 16 ♙f6 ♙f6 17 ♜d3 ♜c8 18 ♙d2 d6 19 ♙c4 ♜d8

He's paid a high price for taking a liberty in the opening. Black's situation is hopeless.

20 e4 ♙c7 21 b4 ♙a6 22 b5 ♙c7 23 a4 ♜d7 24 f4 ♜e8 25 ♜ad1 ♜ad8 26 h3 ♜e7 27 e5 de 28 d6 ♜f8 29 fe ♙h7

One of three pieces retreats on every move.

30 ♜f3 ♙e6 31 ♜b7 ♜a8 32 ♙d5 g6 33 ♙e7 ♜g7 34 ♙c6



This final position appeared in the pages of several British newspapers at the time. Black resigned.

King's Indian Defence
Danailov – Kasparov
 Dortmund, 1980

1 c4 g6 2 d2 f3 3 g3 4 c3 d6 4 d4
 5 e4 0-0 6 e2 e5 7 de de
 8 ♖xd8 ♜xd8 9 g5 ♘bd7 10 ♘d5
 c6 11 ♗e7+ ♜f8 12 ♘xc8 ♜dxc8!
 13 0-0-0 ♘c5 14 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 15 ♙d3
 a5

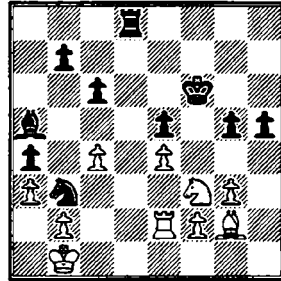
Step by step, thinking only about exchanges, White hands over the opening initiative.

16 ♜he1? ♜e8! 17 ♙f1? ♙d8!

Two instructive moves, one planless the other specific. He should have immediately placed the bishop on c2 (16 ♙c2) and doubled his rooks on the queen's file.

18 g3 a4 19 ♜c2 ♙a5 20 ♜e3
 ♜ad8 21 ♙xd8 ♜xd8 22 ♙h3 f6
 23 ♜e2 ♜e7 24 ♙g2 ♘d3 25 a3 ♘c5

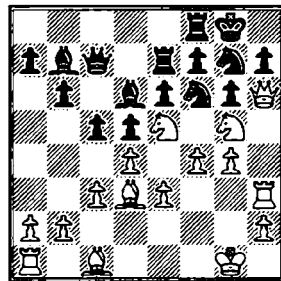
26 h4 h5 27 ♜e3 g5 28 hg fg 29 ♜e2
 ♘b3 30 ♜b1 ♜f6



There's something to move, as we can see, but nowhere to go. White resigned.

Queen's Pawn Opening
Deken – Dieks
 Amsterdam, 1979

1 d4 ♘f6 2 e3 b6 3 ♙d3 ♙b7
 4 ♘f3 e6 5 ♘bd2 d5 6 ♗e5 c5 7 c3
 ♙d6 8 f4 ♘bd7 9 0-0 ♜c7 10 ♜f3
 0-0 11 g4 ♗e8 12 ♜h3 g6 13 ♘df3
 ♘df6 14 ♘g5 ♘g7 15 ♜h6 ♜ae8
 16 ♜f3 ♜e7 17 ♜h3

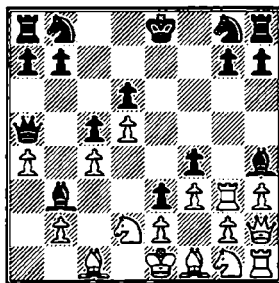


All the pieces are still standing, but Black resigned (the h7 square).

A Page of Studies

What, here too? What kind of studies can there be for this chapter?

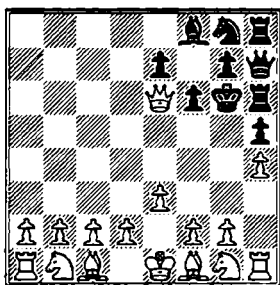
This kind. Entertaining ones.



1 e3 a5 2 ♖h5 ♙a6 3 ♜xa5 h5
4 ♜xc7 ♙ah6 5 h4 f6 6 ♜xd7+ ♔f7
7 ♜xb7 ♗d3 8 ♜xb8 ♜h7 9 ♜xc8
♔g6 10 ♜e6

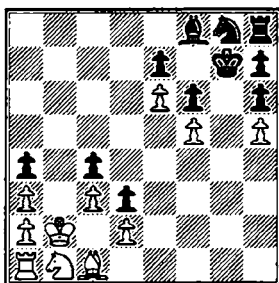
If you please: stalemate with all 16 white pieces!

1 e4 d5 2 e5 d4 3 c3 f6 4 ♜f3 ♔f7
5 ♜xb7 ♜d5 6 ♔d1 ♜xg2 7 ♔c2
♜xf1 8 ♜xc8 ♜xg1 9 ♜xb8 ♙b8
10 ♙xg1 ♙b3 11 ♙g6 ♙a3 12 ♙h6
gh 13 ba ♔g7 14 ♔b2 d3 15 e6 a5
16 h4 a4 17 h5 c5 18 f4 c4 19 f5



Stalemate! A record game created by S. Loyd. It seems that neither side could possibly give stalemate any quicker. There's also another version, conjured up by an American composer.

1 d4 d6 2 ♜d2 e5 3 a4 e4 4 ♜f4
f5 5 h3 ♙e7 6 ♜h2 ♙e6 7 ♙a3 c5
8 ♙g3 ♜a5+ 9 ♗d2 ♙h4 10 f3 ♙b3
11 d5 e3 12 c4 f4



Mutual stalemate!

A more complicated expression of the same idea arises with an additional condition: both sides must make symmetrical moves.

1 ♗f3 ♗c6 2 ♗c3 ♗f6 3 ♗b5
♗g4 4 h3 a6 5 ♗a7 ♗h2 6 ♗hx2

Solutions

In this final chapter you will find the solutions to the many curious situations that occurred in the 'study pages'.

A lasso for the knight

(Pages 139-140)

1 T. Dawson, 1925

Clearly the b1 knight must be caught. Better hurry, the knight won't wait.

1 f7 ♖g7 2 ♙e7 ♜xf7 3 ♙b4 The lasso has been thrown rather adroitly. All that's left is to come in with the king.

2 G. Zakhodyakin, 1931

1 ♜c5 ♘c7 2 ♜d6 ♘e8+ 3 ♜e7 ♘g7 For now, everything's simple. The knight has rushed over to the king for help – and also to help. If now he frivolously bounded over to the other side – 3 ... ♘c7, then 4 ♜f7! and ... and it's frightening to think what would happen in two moves' time.

4 ♙g6! Begins a decisive siege.

4 ... ♜g8 5 ♙f7+ ♜h7 Nor would there have been any change to Black's fate on 5 ... ♜h8, which you can soon easily confirm for yourself.

6 ♜f6 ♜h8 7 ♜e5! 'Brave heroes always take the roundabout route' – the direct 7 ♜g6? would have ruined everything – 7 ... ♘e6!

7 ... ♜h7 8 ♜e4 ♜h8 9 ♜f4 ♜h7 10 ♜g4 ♜h8 And now it's time.

11 g6! A wonderful performance!

3 E. Pogosyants, 1962

1 ♙h8 Otherwise Black attacks the d6 pawn with all his forces, and – it's a draw.

1 ... ♜g7 2 ♜g5! ♜xh8 He doesn't have to take the rook and can instead play 2 ... ♘f6, but that will not stave off his problems for long. Possible is the variation 3 ♜f5 ♘d5 4 ♙e8 ♜f7 5 ♙e5 ♘b6 6 ♙e7+ ♜f8 7 ♜e5.

3 ♜g6 The rook must be paid for with a knight, but this spells the end: 3 ... ♘h6 4 ♜xh6 ♜g8 5 ♜g6 ♜f8 6 ♜f6 ♜e8 7 ♜g7.

4 I. Fritz, 1950

The rather obtuse position of the rook on a2 spoils the picture a little. But everything is quickly forgotten as soon as play begins.

1 ♖a1 ♗b7 Not only was mate threatened, but also an attack on two pieces – 2 ♖c1.

2 ♖a7 ♖b5 No help is 2 ... ♗d5+ as after 3 ♗f6 the knight is hobbled by difficulties.

3 ♖xb7! ♖d6+ 4 ♗e7 ♖xb7 5 b4! A complete surprise. The knight has three moves left to live.

5 G. Farni, 1922

1 ♗g4 ♖g7 Going down to g3 is risky because of 2 ♖c3! with an attack by the king.

2 ♖f6! The knight is successful here, too, and it's easy for the white king to deal with the pawns: 2 ... a4 3 ♗d3 a3 4 ♗c3 c4 5 ♗c2.

6 V. Fedorov, 1947

1 ♖e6 ♖a6 On 1 ... ♖a2 a long-range rifle fires: 2 ♖c7+, and in the event of 1 ... ♖c2 2 ♗h7 it's necessary to choose between the knight (3 ♗xc2) and the king (3 ♗g6 mate).

2 ♗h7 ♗f7 3 ♗d3 ♖b4 Meek is 3 ... ♖b8 4 ♖c5.

4 ♗c4! The rifle has been loaded at the other end: 4 ... ♖c2 – 5 ♖d4+.

4 ... ♗f6 5 ♖d4 ♗g5 6 ♗c5 Victory.

7 G. Adamson, 1924

Out of the two apparently equivalent jumps by the e7 knight 1 ♖d5 is the correct path to a win, and 1 ♖f5 is the false path to a draw. Here's the proof:

1 ♖d5! ♖d7! Not 1 ... ♖f7 – 2 ♗h5.

2 ♗d6! Subtle work! On 2 ♗b5 there's 2 ... ♗d8, and now both 3 ♗xd7 and 3 ♗d6 ♖b6! 4 ♖xb6 lead to stalemate. It's the same result after 2 ♗h5+ ♗d8 3 ♗d6 ♖b6! 4 ♖xb6.

2 ... ♗d8 An explanation is only needed for 2 ... ♖f8 – 3 ♗h5+ ♗d8 4 ♖f6.

3 ♗d3! ♗e8 The knight also perishes in other variations: 3 ... ♖b8 4 ♖b6; 3 ... ♖f8 4 ♖f6; 3 ... ♗c8 4 ♖e7+ ♗d8 5 ♖c6+ ♗c8 6 ♗f5. Then again, in the last one there is also a mate by 6 ♗a6.

4 ♖c7+ ♗d8 5 ♖e6+ ♗c8 6 ♗a6+

And now let's test the other path: 1 ♖f5? ♖f7! 2 ♗f6 ♗f8 3 ♗f3 ♗e8! 4 ♖g7+ ♗f8 5 ♖e6+ ♗g8! This is a dead end – draw.

8 F. Simkhovich, 1940

- Who's he going to catch? There doesn't seem to be a knight.

- Soon to be announced.

1 ♔a3! A retreat to e1 doesn't work: 1 ... d2 (there isn't any other) 2 ♙xd2 Stalemate.

1 ... d2 2 ♜e4 d1♜! Otherwise there's a fork on c3.

3 ♙c5 ♖b5 4 ♖b3 ♜c6 5 ♙g1 ♜d5 6 ♜d2 The new knight is in a solid cage.

9 I. Aleshin, E. Murasov and B. Sevitov, 1941

Three authors and not a single black knight! Don't rush. It will appear soon.

1 ♙e3 d1♜! Otherwise comes simply 2 ♜f1.

2 ♙d2 b1♜! Traces of resistance by 2 ... ♜g6 quickly disappear: 3 ♜b4 ♜f5 4 ♜d6.

3 ♙c1! ♜bc3 A king retreat doesn't change anything.

4 ♜f1+ ♜h5 5 ♙d2, and the knights perish in one harness. For example, 5 ... ♜g4 6 ♜e1 ♜f3 7 ♜c6 ♜f2 8 ♜c5 ♜f3 9 ♜c4.

10 H. Rinck, 1923

The main thing is to prevent the knights from coordinating.

1 ♜f1! ♜e7 The threat was 2 ♜f3 ♜g5 3 ♜g3.

2 ♜f3 ♜g5 Nor can he disperse to the side of the board: 2 ... ♜g1 3 ♜g3 ♜e2 4 ♜e3.

3 ♜g3! Wherever the knight retreats to now, a double attack is guaranteed.

11 J. Berger, 1921

A similar story. Instead of a pawn, White has a knight, but the example is a little more complex.

1 ♜c5 ♜ac4 2 ♜f5 ♜g6 Black cannot unite his army: 2 ... ♜g6+ 3 ♜f6 ♜ce5 4 ♜c7+ ♜g8 5 ♜h6+ ♜h8 6 ♜f5. There's also 2 ... ♜g8 when we transpose into the main finale: 3 ♜e6 ♜h8 4 ♜c7 ♜g8 5 ♜e7+ ♜f8 6 ♜d5 ♜g8 7 ♜f6+ ♜f8 8 ♜a7.

3 ♜e6 ♜h7 It's not possible to break through and come to the aid of the knights: 3 ... ♜g5 4 ♜e3 ♜xe3 5 ♜xe5+.

4 ♜c7+ ♜g8 On 4 ... ♜g6 there's 5 ♜g7+ ♜h5 6 ♜g3 ♜c6 7 ♜f6.

5 ♜e7+ ♜f8 6 ♜d5 ♜g8 7 ♜f6+ ♜f8 8 ♜a7 The bond between the knights disintegrates.

12 E. Somov-Nasimovich, 1941

The end of the study. Its starting position is this: White – ♜c2, ♙g1,

♘d6, pp b4, b6; Black – ♜f6, ♞a8, ♚b2, ♛c3, pp a4, c6, d5.

The solution begins with 1 b7 ♞b8 2 ♙a7 ♞xb7 3 ♙d4+ ♜e6 4 ♛xb7 ♚a2 5 ♛c5+ ♜d6, and the necessary position has come about. Now the natural 6 ♜xb2 ♛xb4 doesn't lead to anything good.

6 ♜b1!! ♛xb4 7 ♜xb2 The same thing, but it's now Black's move, and this is death for him.

7 ... a3+ 8 ♜b3.

The bishop hunt

(Pages 158-160)

13 H. Rinck, 1927

A win? Where to find it? But – patience!

1 ♛c6+ ♜a8 No joy comes from 1 ... ♜b7 2 ♛d8+. It's not a hunt, more like a shooting-range.

2 ♙f3! The rifle is loaded, the bishop can't escape. It has five squares and every one of them is covered: 2 ... ♙a2 3 ♛b4+, 2 ... ♙b3 (c4) 3 ♛a5+, 2 ... ♙g8 (g6) 3 ♛e7+.

14 H. Rinck, 1926

The hunters are already poised for the ambush. Beaters, begin!

1 ♜b8 ♙d7 2 ♜c7 ♙e8 The bishop retreats carefully, sensing

the danger: 2 ... ♙e6 3 ♛f4+, 2 ... ♙a4 3 ♛c3+.

3 ♜d8 ♙f7 Only in the thicket! It's dangerous to come out to an open place (g6 or h5) – 4 ♛f4+.

4 ♜e7 ♙g8 Perhaps, at a dash, escape to a2? But a well-aimed shot can reach there, too: 5 ♛c1+.

5 ♜f8 ♙h7 Now an empty salute in the air for fun – 6 ♛f4+ could spoil the whole thing: 6 ... ♜f2 7 ♜g7 ♜e3. Let's show endurance to the end.

6 ♜g7 The bishop has fallen.

15 V. Neistadt, 1929

1 ♜d1 ♙d2 No one wants to fall under a battery: 1 ... ♙b2 (a3) 2 ♛c2+.

2 ♛c6! There's a novelty! The bishop can't get out.

2 ... ♜d3 3 ♛e5+, and then – the winning check on c4 or f3.

16 R. Réti, 1922

Who could suppose that here, too, in a couple of moves the black bishop won't be able to find a single peaceful square? But ...

1 ♛d4+ ♜c5 Weak-willed play by 1 ... ♜b7 2 ♜xh2 ♜a6 3 ♛b3 leads to an obviously hopeless endgame.

2 ♖h1!! A grandiose idea. The black king should guard the a5 pawn. And the bishop? Try to find it a place on this spacious board.

17 H. Rinck, 1935

Surely here, on the long diagonal, the bishop has nothing to fear.

1 ♖f7 ♙a1 2 ♖b1 ♙g7 On 2 ... ♙c3 or 2 ... ♙d4, as it turns out, there's 3 ♖d6+ ♖xc7 4 ♖b5+, but it doesn't manage to sit tight behind the knight's back either.

3 ♖d6+! ♖xc7 4 ♖e8+ This is the manoeuvre that refuted 2 ... ♙f6.

18 S.Isenegger, 1959

If the f4 pawn can be exchanged off, it's a draw. But there's apparently nothing to prevent 1 ... e5, as on 1 ♖d7 follows 1 ... ♙b5.

1 ♖d7! ♙b5 2 ♖d8! ♙xd7 3 ♙c7+ ♖c6 4 ♙e5! That's it.

19 E. Pogosyants, 1980

1 ♙e3+ ♖a5 2 ♙c6! Only to here, otherwise in the future the bishop will impede its own king.

2 ... ♙f8 3 ♖g8 ♙e7 4 ♖f7 ♙d8 5 ♖e8 ♙c7 6 ♖d7 ♙b6 The only opportunity to get the bishop out of the thicket (6 ... ♙b8 7 ♖c8).

7 ♙d2 mate!

20 H. Junkson, 1937

1 ♖g3+ ♖e1 It's funny, but now taking the bishop is a draw! Let's test it: 2 ♖xh1 ♖f1 3 ♖g3 ♖g1 – indeed a draw.

2 ♙c3+! ♖f2 3 ♙d4+! ♖g2 4 ♖h4! ♖f3 5 ♖h3 ♙g2+ 6 ♖xh2 A deserved triumph.

21 A. Havasi, 1922

1 ♖b5+ ♖b2 2 ♖xa3! ♙xa3 3 ♖b4! A little box!

22 S. Isenegger, 1950

1 ♖d7 ♖a6 In the event of 1 ... ♖b6 2 ♙c8 everything would be too easy.

2 ♖c6 ♙a3 It's necessary to hide behind the king. There's an easy win by 2 ... ♙g1 3 ♙g8 ♙xa7 4 ♙a8.

3 ♙b8! ♖xa7 4 ♙b1! ♙f8 5 ♙h1! The main thing is to take the h6 square away from the bishop. Now it can't hide. 5 ... ♙b4 6 ♙a1+ ♖b8 7 ♙b1.

23 F. Koenig and A. Mandler, 1924

1 ♙f7! Three pieces are gradually overcoming one, so urgent measures must be taken.

1 ... ♖g6! 2 ♙a2! A wonderful manoeuvre and the only one sufficient for a win.

2 ... ♙xh5 3 ♖f5+ ♜g6 4 ♙b1 The deed is done. On a bishop move there's a simple shoot-off – 5 ♖d4+ or 5 ♖e3+. But if the white bishop were on c2, say (we could have played inaccurately by 2 ♙b3 instead of 2 ♙a2), the game would be saved with 4 ... ♙d1!

24 O. Bláthy, 1890

In order to catch the a1 bishop, it turns out that first you have to ... run away from it.

1 ♖d1! ♙b2 2 ♜e1 ♙c1 3 ♜f1 ♙d2 4 ♜g1 (g2) ♙e1 5 ♜g2 (g1)! ♙d2 It's necessary to fight to the end: 5 ... ♙f2 6 ♜f1. By the way, did you notice that the black king can't move from its spot? It has to guard the passed pawns.

6 ♜f1 ♙c1 7 ♜e1 ♙b2 8 ♖d1 ♙a1 9 ♖c1 It's turned out to be the starting position, but with Black to move.

9 ... ♙b2+ 10 ♜b1 Victory.

How difficult it is to be a rook

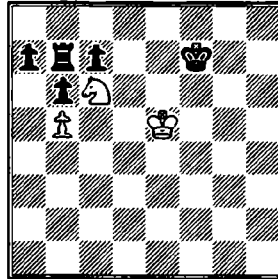
(Pages 177-178)

25 B. Horwitz, 1889

What's the rook doing on b7? Let's test it now.

1 ♖f5+ ♜h7 2 ♜h2+ ♜g6 3 ♜g2+ ♜f7 A small provocation (it was also possible to retreat to h7): now White is suddenly tempted by 4 ♜g7+ ♜f8 5 ♜e6. Then 5 ... ♖h6!

4 ♜xg8! ♜xg8 5 ♖e7+ ♜f7 6 ♖c6



A comedy!

6 ... ♜f8 7 ♜f6! The indiscriminating 7 ♜e6? turns out to be costly: 7 ... ♜e8 8 ♜e5 ♜d7 9 ♖d5 ♜c8 10 ♜e6 ♜b8!

7 ... ♜e8 8 ♜e6 Now going back by 8 ... ♜f8 fails to 9 ♖d7, while the illusion 8 ... ♜b8 is quickly dispelled: 9 ♖xb8 ♖d8 10 ♖c6+ ♜c8 11 ♖xa7+ ♜b7 12 ♖c6.

26 R. Bianchetti, 1924

Surely here there's enough space for the rook. 1 ♖e5! ♜xf6 Why not also take this pawn, although, of course, it's necessary to test 1 ... ♜xh3 Let's do so: 2 ♖f7 ♜g3+ 3 ♜h7 ♜h3+ 4 ♜g7 ♜g3+ 5 ♜f6 ♜g1 6 ♖d3+ ♜c3 7 ♖f4! – it doesn't work.

2 ♖g7! The study has unexpectedly come to an end. The rook falls.

27 H. Rinck, 1914

1 ♙d6 ♜f7 The edge of the board is even more cramped: 1 ... ♜h7 2 ♙f5 ♜h6 3 ♙f4 (possible also is 3 ♙f8) 3 ... ♜h8 4 ♙e5+.

2 ♙e6 ♜f3 Now on 2 ... ♜h7 it's enough for the bishops to merely mark time a little: 3 ♙e5+ ♖b1 4 ♙f5+.

3 ♖e2 ♜c3 By a right-angled route the rook seems to have escaped to freedom, but ...

4 ♙e5 ♖b2 5 ♖d2.

28 T. Gorgiev, 1929

The bishops need to be cut loose from the troublesome rook, while not losing the little pawn.

1 ♙e1+ ♖b5 Leave the king on the edge? It doesn't seem right. Then again, let's convince ourselves: 1 ... ♖a4 2 ♙c2+ ♖a3 3 ♖d6 – now everything is clear. 1 ... ♖a6 2 ♙g8! ♜e3 3 ♙c4+ – here too.

2 ♙g6! ♜e3 3 ♙d2 At the moment White's moves are barely comprehensible.

3 ... ♜xe5 4 ♖d6! And now everything is in place: 4 ... ♜c5 5 ♙d3+

29 H. Rinck, 1922

1 ♖b5 ♜a7 2 ♖b6 There are so many squares, it would seem, but a peaceful little place for the rook can't be found. Ah, if only the a3 pawn wasn't there!

30 I. Fritz, 1939

There's nothing to even think about, the knight and the pawn can't be saved simultaneously. Draw? But White is helped by a little trick.

1 ♖c6+ ♖d6 2 ♖a5 ♜xb2 3 ♖c4+! dc 4 0-0-0+!

31 L. Kubbel, 1934

1 ♜a4 It all seems to be over. On 1 ... ♖b5 there's 2 ♜xb4+ ♖xb4 3 ♙e1, while on 1 ... ♜f3 sufficient is 2 ♙e1.

1 ... ♜a3! Ah, no! Everything is only just beginning. After 2 ♜xa3 ♙xa3+ 3 ♖xa3 ♖c3 the pawn can't be saved.

2 ♜xb4+! ♖xb4 3 ♙e1+ An attack from the rear doesn't bring victory: 3 ♙c5+ ♖xc5 4 ♖xa3 ♖c4 5 ♖b2 ♖b4 – draw.

3 ... ♖a4 4 ♙c3! Oh, how crowded.

32 D. Petrov, 1955

How can we talk about a win, as on 1 ♖c4 comes 1 ... ♖d3 2 ♜f4

♠g4+ (thank you, h5 pawn).

1 ♠e2! ♠h1+ An immediate 1 ... ♗xb2 doesn't work because of 2 ♠e3+.

2 ♔g3 ♗xb2 3 ♠e1+! ♗c1! 4 ♔g2 ♗d1 Nothing to worry about, now we'll take the bishop and – on to freedom!

5 ♠d2+! ♗xe1 6 ♠d4 Yes, if only there were no h5 pawn ...

6 ... ♠f1 7 ♠e4+.

33 H. Rinck, 1921

1 ♠d1+! It's necessary to start with precisely this check.

1 ... ♗e6 In the event of 1 ... ♗e4 play is similar: 2 ♠e1+ ♗f5 3 ♠f8+ ♗g6! 4 ♠g1+! ♠g5 5 ♠g8+.

2 ♠e8+ ♗f5 More obvious is 2 ... ♗f6 3 ♠f8+ ♗g5 4 ♠g1+ ♠g4 5 ♠g8+.

3 ♠f8+ ♗e4 4 ♠e1+ ♗d3! The black king is getting dizzy, but on 4 ... ♗d5 would now follow 5 ♠d8+ ♗e6 6 ♠e8+.

5 ♠d8+ ♠d4 6 ♠d1+.

34 H. Matisons, 1930

In order to preserve both bishops, it turns out you have to ... lose the rook.

1 ♠d5! ♠xd5 2 ♠e3!! ♠g5 3 ♠f7+ ♠g6 On 3 ... ♗h6 the bishop carefully moves away: 4 ♠e8 (to prevent 4 ... ♗g7 with a tempo).

4 ♗h2! The king can't move. A win.

This is clear, but why are there two exclamation marks after the second move? It turns out that in the event of the reflexive 2 ♠d2 salvation can be found – 2 ... ♠f5! With 2 ♠e3 the feint doesn't work: 2 ... ♠f5 3 ♠xf5 d2, and the light-squared bishop can choose between 4 ♠g4+, 4 ♠c2 and even 4 ♠d7.

35 L. Kubbel, 1925

1 ♔h6! ♗d3! The main motif of the study is heard first in the variation 1 ... ♠d8 2 ♔f7 ♠xd7 3 ♔e5+.

2 f3 ♗e3 Reprise: 2 ... ♠d8 3 ♔f7.

3 ♔f5+ ♗d3 4 ♔e7! ♗e3 Variation: 4 ... ♠d8 5 ♔c6 ♠xd7 6 ♔e5+.

5 ♔d5+ ♗d3 6 ♔c7! Finale: 6 ... ♠d8 7 ♔e6 ♠xd7 8 ♔c5+

36 A. Troitsky, 1895

1 g7 ♠f7 The king can't be included in the play immediately: 1 ... ♗f7 2 ♠a7+, and with any

move to d7 (2 ... ♖g8 3 ♘f6+) there's 3 g8♖+ ♗xg8 4 ♘f6+. Unsuccessful too is 1 ... ♜b5+ 2 ♕a6 ♗f7 - 3 ♘d6+.

2 ♘g5+ ♗f6 3 ♘xf7 ♗xf7 Of course, the pawn is more important, but 3 ... ♗xg7 is prohibited - 4 ♗c6!

4 ♜a7+ ♖g8 5 ♜a8+ ♗xg7 6 ♗c6! An efficient little cage!

The queen: thorns and roses

(Pages 202-204)

37 J. Berger, 1890

Black is on the defensive, but still full of optimism. He's prepared to confidently repel the artless attack 1 ♗h4 with 1 ... ♗f2+!

1 ♗h6! Here's a novel approach! The king clears some space for the manoeuvres of its queen.

1 ... ♗f2! 2 ♗d5+! Returning the queen to the corner: 2 ... ♗g1 3 ♙c5.

2 ... ♗g2 3 ♗h5+ ♗g1 4 ♙c5+ ♗f1 5 ♗d1 mate.

38 H. Rinck, 1908

1 ♙f2+ ♗e5 A retreat to e4 allows mate in three.

2 ♙g3+ ♗d4 3 ♙d6! ♗xd6 There's no other defence to 4 ♗d3

mate, but the queen still goes to the chosen square.

4 ♗d3+ It's necessary to resign: 4 ... ♗c5 5 ♗a3+; 4 ... ♗e5 5 ♗g3+.

39 L. Kubbel, 1935

First a little ladder: 1 ♗a1+ ♗h7 2 ♗b1+ ♗h8 3 ♗b2+ ♗h7 4 ♗c2+ ♗h8 5 ♗c3+ ♗h7 6 ♗d3+ ♗h8

And now - a big triangle: 7 ♗h3+! ♙h7 8 ♗c3+ ♖g8 9 ♗c8 Threatening a hidden check. Uniting with the king (9 ... ♗f7?) is impeded by 10 ♙h6+. But it's possible to escape from the attack ...

9 ... ♗f7 10 ♙c5! Who'd have thought it - a trap!

40 L. Korsky, 1957

The white pieces are so out of it that it doesn't seem worth even thinking about a win.

1 ♗d8+! ♗c5 It becomes clear: there aren't that many squares for a retreat.

2 ♗a5+ ♗d4 Again the only way to escape the knight fork.

3 ♗a7+! This check had to be found. The queen is lost in two moves.

41 I. Aleshin, 1947

1 ♖a6+ ♗a8 2 ♙g2+ ♜b7 3 ♙d5!
 No good is the straightforward
 3 ♙xb7 ♗xb7 4 ♘c5+ because of
 4 ... ♗c6 5 ♘e6 ♘d6 6 ♘g5 ♗e5!
 7 ♘xh7 ♗f5 with a certain draw.

3 ... h6! It's too early to take the
 bishop: 3 ... ♜xd5 4 ♘c7+ ♗b7
 5 ♘x7 ♗c6 6 ♘f6, and the king
 fails by a tempo.

4 ♘b4! You can check it, the
 endgame is won: 4 ... a5 5 ♙xb7+
 ♗xb7 6 ♘d5 ♗c6 7 ♘e7+ ♘d6
 8 ♘f5+ ♗e5 9 ♘xh6 ♗f6 10 ♘g4+
 and 11 h6.

42 J. Kling, 1849

1 ♙a4! ♜c8 On 1 ... ♜xa4 – two
 checks from the right: 2 ♙h3+ ♘d4
 3 ♙h4+.

2 ♙h3+! ♜xh3 3 ♙a3+

We're unintentionally reminded
 of an ancient work by an
 unknown master: White – ♘d8,
 ♙a8, ♙c5; Black – ♘d6, ♙h1 –
 1 ♙h5!

An amusing moment. If we
 rotate this position 180 degrees,
 another way to win arises – 1 0-0!

43 D. Petrov, 1963

Black repels the impulsive
 1 ♙d7+ with a clever retreat,
 1 ... ♗a8.

1 ♙h7! ♜xh7 2 ♙d7+ ♗a8! 3 ♗c7!
 ♜h6 The white rook was only just
 in this little house.

4 ♙d8+ ♗a7 5 ♗c6 The queen
 has to move away from the gate:
 the walls are familiar, but it's
 someone else's house.

5 ... ♜g7 6 ♙d7+

44 V. Smyslov, 1936

1 ♙b1! An immediate 1 g7
 doesn't work due to 1 ... a1♜+
 2 ♙a4 ♜g1 3 f6 ♙xh4 4 ♙b3 ♙e1.

1 ... a1♜+ 2 ♗b5 ♙g3 3 g7 ♙b8!
 Taking into account that on
 4 g8♜ Black has 4 ... ♜a5+.

4 g8♙!! Threatening 5 ♙d5
 mate.

4 ... ♙f4 5 ♙ga2! There's a little
 box!

5 ... ♙xd2 6 f6 ♙f4 7 f7 ♙d6
 8 ♗c6 ♙f8 9 ♗c7 That's it. Mate is
 unavoidable.

45 H. Rinck, 1929

A rare occasion: the king is
 protecting the queen.

1 ♘d5+ ♗f5 2 ♘e7+ ♗f4 3 ♙g4+
 ♗e3 4 ♘d5+ ♘d4 5 ♘c6+ ♘d3
 6 ♘cb4+ ♘d4 7 ♘c2+ ♘d3
 8 ♘db4+ It's necessary to part
 with the queen, and that's the end.

46 S. Kozlovsky, 1931

The situation here is even more unusual: now the white king ... catches the opponent's queen.

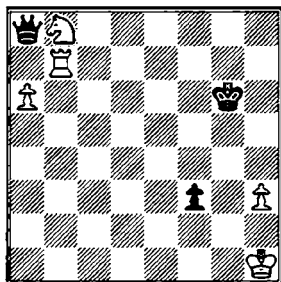
1 ♔xb6+! ♚xb6 2 c5 ♚b8 3 b6+ ♚c8 4 ♚e4! h4 5 ♚f5! h5 6 ♚e4!
The deed is done. The queen gives herself up.

47 N. Kononov, 1929

At first it's not all that interesting.

1 a8♚+ ♚h7 2 ♖b8! ♚xa8 3 ♜xc7+ ♚g6 4 ♜b7!

This is why the little garden was fenced in! The queen can no longer get out. The rest is simple.



4 ... ♚g5 5 ♚g1 ♚f5 6 ♚f2 ♚f4 7 h4 ♚g4 8 h5 ♚xh5 9 ♚xf3 ♚g5 10 ♚e4 ♚f6 11 ♚d5.

48 A. Troitsky, 1897

1 ♚b2! Here the solution

ends unexpectedly. There's no adequate defence to 2 d4.

The obstinate pawn

(Pages 209-210)

49 P. Carrera, 1817

The white pawns and the black king are in mutual zugzwang. The white king's task is to stop the trio f4, g4 and h4.

1 ♚g1! The only way. With 1 ♚f2? h3! or 1 ♚h2? f3 it's also possible to lose.

1 ... h3 On 1 ... g3 decisive is 2 ♚g2, and 1 ... f3 is met by 2 ♚f2.

2 ♚h2 f3 3 ♚g3 The pawns have been stopped. Victory!

50 K. Betins, 1894

Here the white king's work is more subtle than in the previous example. It not only has to keep a duet of black pawns under observation, but also stop them in such a way that he retains chances of attacking the black king.

1 ♚f3! The straightforward 1 ♚e4 c5 2 ♚d3 ♚e8 3 ♚c4 ♚f7 leads only to a draw.

1 ... c6! 2 ♚f4! c5 3 ♚e4 And now it's time!

3 ... ♖e8 4 ♖d5 Possible also is 4 ♖d3, but this is quicker. Mate in two is threatened, and for this it was also necessary to win a tempo.

4 ... ♖d7 5 ♖c4 ♖e8 6 ♖xc5! d3 7 ♖d6 Again threatening 8 ♖e6.

7 ... ♖f7 8 ♖d7.

51 M. Karsted, 1921

A similar situation. You must first weaken the mobile tandem of black pawns (force one of them to advance), and then lie in wait for the black king the moment it leaves for g8.

1 ♖f3 ♖g8 2 ♖f2! Playing without originality by 2 ♖g3, would achieve nothing: 2 ... ♖f7 3 ♖h4 e4 4 ♖g3 e3 5 ♖f3 f4 Draw.

2 ... ♖f7 3 ♖g3 ♖g8 4 ♖h4! Now in the event of 4 ... e4 5 ♖g5 Black is forced into the urgent defence 5 ... ♖f7, after which winning is 6 ♖f4 ♖g8 7 ♖xf5.

4 ... ♖f7 5 ♖g5 f4 6 ♖g4 ♖g8 7 ♖f5 ♖f7 8 ♖e4 ♖g8 9 ♖xe5! with an easy win.

52 B. Horwitz, J. Kling, 1851

You have to keep a very close eye on the pawn scissors.

1 ♖f4! ♖b6 2 ♖f5! ♖c7 3 ♖f6!

Not one of the pawns can advance yet: as it would be destroyed immediately.

3 ... ♖b6 4 ♖e6! Seizing the moment, White changes the direction of the attack. Now he intends to support the c6 pawn.

4 ... ♖c7 5 ♖d5 h5 6 b6+ ♖xb6 7 ♖xd6 The white pawn gets through sooner than its rival.

53 J. Mendheim, 1832

What kind of a win can there be? Can this formidable chain really be stopped? Nevertheless ...

1 ♖g4! f3 On 1 ... h2 thank you – 2 ♖f2 mate, while 1 ... e5 is refuted by means of 2 ♖xe5 ♖h2 3 ♖f2 ♖h1 4 ♖g4 transposing to the main variation.

2 ♖f2 e5 3 ♖xe5 ♖h2 4 ♖g4+ ♖h1 5 ♖f1 f2 6 ♖xf2! h2 7 ♖e3 g4 8 ♖f1 g3+ 9 ♖xg3 mate.

54 A. Seleznev, 1917

Here the main thing is not to make a mistake about which side the king should go to.

1 ♖d6! If you go to the right, you fail: 1 ♖f6 ♖f4 2 ♖g6 ♖g3 3 ♖f5 h3 4 ♖e5 h2 5 ♖d5 b3.

1 ... ♖d4 2 ♖c6 ♖c3 3 ♖d5!! b3

4 ♖e4! The h4 pawn is held back by the king. And the b3 pawn?

4 ... b2 5 ♗a2! And this one – by the bishop! Now the difference in the king's routes is clear.

55 L. Kubbel, 1909

Clearly the bishop should start.

1 ♗c5! The first shot had to be right on target. The miss 1 ♗d6 – 1 ... ♜c8, and nothing decisive can be found. 1 ♗b4 – overshot: 1 ... ♖c8!, and again everything is all right.

1 ... ♜c8 On 1 ... ♜b8 simple play – 2 ♜h8+ ♖c7 3 ♗d6+, while 1 ... ♖c8 is met with the thematic 2 ♗a7! after which the white king calmly takes care of the a-pawn. Then again, we'll see all this now in its finest execution.

2 ♗b6+ ♖e8 3 ♗c7! Neither the king nor the rook can stir because of the immediate reply 4 ♜h8+. All hopes are invested in the pawn.

3 ... a5 4 ♖d1 a4 5 ♖c1 a3 6 ♖b1 a2+ 7 ♖a1! Now the pawn has been stopped too (7 ♖xa2? ♜a8). Of course, the king could have rushed to a1 and taken another path. For example, e1-d2-c2-b1-a1, but here there's already nothing you can do. It's possible to place the king on e4, and then its route would be straight, like a

string: e4-b1 But in that case on 3 ... a5 possible is the direct attack 4 ♖e5 a4 5 ♖e6.

56 I. Khazek, 1937

It's clear what should be done here. Before Black disentangles himself, it's necessary to take with the king on d6. But rushing to it immediately ruins everything: 1 ♖c5 f5! 2 ♖d5 ♜f6! There's nothing here any more.

1 ♗f5!! Bravo! Excellent find!

1 ... g6 On the stubborn 1 ... f6 there's 2 ♗xg6+ ♖d8 3 ♗f7! with obvious consequences.

2 ♖c5 f6 3 ♖d6 There's the goal. Black's choice is limited and poor: 3 ... ♜g8 4 ♖e6; 3 ... ♜f7 4 ♜a8 mate.

57 H. Mesman, 1959

1 ♖f7 ♗h6 2 ♖g8!! A paradoxical saving move.

2 ... d5 And why not?

3 ♖h7 ♗f8 4 ♖g8 ♗a3 5 ♖f7 ♗b2 6 ♖e6, and the pawn falls: although the finishing line is already in sight, the pawn can't cross the long diagonal.

58 K. Feyter, 1932

An immediate breakthrough by the king doesn't work: 1 ♖e5 ♖e7

2 ♖f5 ♖f7 First a deflecting operation is needed.

1 c7+! ♜xc7 And now – it's time!

2 ♖e5 ♙xh5 3 ♖f6 ♙e8 4 h5! The black pawn must be kept on h6 at any price, even for a half-move.

4 ... ♙xh5 5 ♖g7 Draw.

59 L. Olmutsky, 1963

Before the main reserves arrive, you need to successfully deal with the e7 pawn.

1 e6 First blockade it on a dark square.

1 ... ♙h7! Preventing the withdrawal 2 ♖g5 ♙xe4 3 ♖h6 ♙f5 4 ♖g7 ♙xe6 5 ♖f8, on which now 2 ... ♙g8! can be conceived.

2 ♖e5! ♖b2 3 ♖d5 ♙g8 4 e5! The last prophylactic move.

4 ... ♖c3 5 ♖c6 ♙xe6 6 ♖c7 ♙h3 7 e6 The second, decisive brake.

7 ... ♙xe6 8 ♖d8 Draw.

60 A. Wotawa, 1939

1 ♖d7 ♙e2 2 g5 hg 3 g4! ♙xg4+ 4 ♖e7 ♙e2 5 g4! The pawns are perishing one after the other, but the king is getting closer and closer to the cherished f6 square.

5 ... ♙xg4 6 ♖f6 Draw.

Kings under arrest

(Pages 218-219)

61 T. Gorgiev, 1928

1 ♜h8+ ♖c7 2 ♙d8+ ♖c6 3 ♙b6! ♖xb6 4 ♜c8! In order to catch the rook, it was necessary to catch the king.

62 H. Rinck, 1916

Also in this study the rook only manages to win because after 1 ♙e7! the king gets into trouble. The threat is 2 ♙f7+ ♜g6 3 ♖e3. Closing the breach with its body – 1 ... ♜g6 – is possible, but useless. White plays not 2 ♙f7, but 2 ♙d1+.

1 ... ♜d4+ 2 ♖e3 The board is wide, but there are no safe squares for the rook to be found.

2 ... ♜d7 Or 2 ... ♜h4 3 ♙d1+ ♜g4 4 ♖f2.

3 ♙f7+ ♖g4 4 ♙e6+

63 S. Kryuchkov, 1928

It's not possible to win by normal routes: 1 ♙d6 fg 2 fg ♜g8! (to unnecessary complications leads 2 ... ♜h1 3 ♜a5 ♜c1+ 4 ♙c5 ♙e5+ 5 ♖c6) 3 ♜c1 (3 ♜g5 ♜g7+ 4 ♖c8 ♙f6 5 ♜g4 ♙e7 6 ♜e4 ♖f8 – draw) 3 ... ♜g7+ 4 ♖c6 ♙f6 5 ♜e1+ ♙e7 6 ♙xe7 (hoping for 6 ... ♜xe7

7 g7!) 6 ... ♖xg6+. Again a draw.

1 ♖e5! ♖xe5 2 ♜xe5+ ♜f8 What now, then? Again the natural path leads only to a draw: 3 ♜d7 ♜g7! (not 3 ... ♜h1 4 ♜e8+ ♜g7 5 ♜e7! or 3 ... fg 4 ♜e8+ ♜g7 5 f6+ ♜h7 6 f7) 4 ♜e7 ♜f8.

3 ♜e8+! ♜xe8 4 g7 ♜g8 5 f6 There's nowhere for the king to go. The rook must be given up.

64 A. Gulyaev, 1940

1 g7! The king and the rook are in the same tight trap.

1 ... f2 2 ♖e7 f1♖ 3 ♖f6 ♜xf6 4 gh♖+! ♜xh8 5 d4 This time the king was able to impede even its own queen.

65 L. Kubbel, 1924

And in this example even the free-roaming queen can't help the king when it's in trouble.

1 ♜b3 e1♖ 2 ♖f4+ ♜b1 3 ♖xc2+ ♜a1 The king is in the corner, but so what? The queen will help.

4 ♖d6! Intending with the move 5 ♖b4 to attack the queen and the king.

4 ... ♜e2 5 ♖b4 ♜xb5 Everything's OK?

6 ♖e4! No, not really.

6 ... e5 7 f3 The queen has to set the bishop free, and that's the end.

66 V. Halberstadt, 1953

1 ♖c6 The first move is clear.

1 ... d4 It's possible to let the bishop go ahead, but useless: 1 ... ♖c3 2 ♜g4 d4 3 ♜f4 d3 (or 3 ... ♖e1 4 ♜e4 ♖f2 5 ♜d5 d3 6 ♜d6 ♖g3+ 7 ♜d7 d2 8 ♜c8 – all very timely) 4 ♜e3 d2 5 ♜e2, and the pawn must be given up.

2 ♜g6 ♖h8 To f8? But then 3 ♜f7 d3 (3 ... ♖h6 4 ♜e6 d3 5 ♜d7 d2 6 ♜c8) 4 ♖xd3 ♜b7 5 ♖a5+ ♜b6 6 ♖c4+, taking the bishop.

3 ♖d3 ♜b7 There simply isn't another move.

4 ♖d8+ ♜c7 The king is out, but at the cost of a bishop.

5 ♖f7.

67 B. Horwitz, J. Kling, 1851

Clearly you have to chase the king into the already-prepared little box.

1 ♜g7 ♖b7 2 ♖f6+ ♜d8 Not desirable, but necessary.

3 ♜f8 ♖a8 4 ♖g8 ♖b7 5 ♖h6 ♖a8 Inaccurate is 5 ... ♖c8 – 6 ♖f7 mate.

6 ♖f7+ ♜c8 7 ♜e8 ♖b7 8 ♖e5

♙a8 9 ♘g6 ♖b7 A bishop move would be careless: 10 ♘e7 mate.

10 ♖d8 ♗a7 11 ♗c7 ♙b7 12 ♘h8 ♙a8 13 ♘f7 ♙b7 14 ♘d8 ♙a8 15 ♗c8 The king has no moves. The bishop perishes.

68 G. Zakhodyakin, 1930

Change the position of the black king, for example, to c2. Draw. But there's the joke, the king is impeding its own pieces.

1 ♚a6 ♖g8 In the event of 1 ... ♘f8 2 f5 it's too late to go back with the knight – 3 ♚g6 mate, and 2 ... ♖g8 quickly loses: 3 ♚a8 ♙g7 4 f6 ♙h6 5 f7+.

2 ♚a8+ ♖g7 3 ♚xh8! ♖xh8 4 ♖f7 This time the king has failed its knight.

69 H. Rinck, 1935

One knight can easily be won: 1 ♙g4+ ♗c7 2 ♙f5, but that isn't much for a win. Both steeds must be removed, which can be done with the aid ... of the black king.

1 ♙a4! Now both knights are under arrest.

1 ... ♗c7 2 ♗a7 ♗c8 3 ♖b6 And now let's start to surround the king. It can't go to b8 now: 4 ♙d7 ♘b3 5 ♙d6+ ♗a8 6 ♙c6 mate.

3 ... ♖d8 4 ♖b7 The king has fallen into a net, and the knights perish one after the other.

70 A. Troitsky, 1912

1 ♖d8 ♙f7 2 ♖xe7 ♙xh5 So how on earth is White going to win?

3 ♘f4! g6 4 ♘e2+ ♖d3 5 ♘g3 A curious position. White's task is to pin down the opponent's king. When it doesn't have any moves, Black will be forced to go g6-g5. Here's a provisional variation: 5 ... ♗c4 6 ♖d6 ♖b5 7 ♖d5 ♗a6 8 ♗c6 ♗a5 9 ♙c5 ♗a4 (9 ... ♗a6 just what White was waiting for – 10 ♙b6) 10 ♖b6 ♖b3 11 ♖b5 ♗c3 12 ♙b6 ♖d3 (12 ... ♖b3 13 ♙a5, and the king is locked in the corner) 13 ♖b4 ♗c2 14 ♗c4 ♖d2 15 ♙d4 ♗c2 16 ♙c3 ♖d1 17 ♖b3 ♗c1 18 ♙b4 ♖b1 19 ♙a3 ♗a1 20 ♙c1 ♖b1 21 ♙b2 The end.

71 F. Amelung, 1896

The king is already under arrest, and this circumstance makes it easy to deal with the knight. You only need to restructure a little.

1 ♘d5 ♖g8 2 ♘e7+ ♖h8 3 ♙e3 ♘f4(f8)+ 4 ♖h6 ♘e6 5 ♙f2! ♘g7 6 ♙e1 In the author's edited version the e6 knight is on d4, and the win is achieved with Black to move. This additional work gave

another thematic variation:
 1 ... ♖f5 2 ♙f8 ♖h4+ 3 ♜f7 ♖f5
 4 ♗e4 ♜h7 5 ♗g5+ ♜h8 6 ♙c5
 ♖d6(h6)+ 7 ♜f8 ♖f5 8 ♙b6 ♗g7
 9 ♙a5.

72 G. Kasparian, 1948

A masterpiece of study composition.

1 c6 ♗e5 The best. The simple
 1 ... ♖f6 automatically provokes
 2 ♙h3+ ♜b8 3 ♖c5 ♗e8 (otherwise
 the b7 square can't be defended)
 4 ♖xa6+ ♜a8 5 ♜c4, and the king
 gets through to d7 without
 hindrance.

2 ♙h3+ ♜b8 3 ♖c5! ♖xc6
 4 ♖d7+ ♜b7 Other moves are
 worse.

5 ♙g2 ♙g3 Defending against
 6 ♗e5.

6 ♜c4 a5! The start of a clever
 counter-plot.

7 ♖c5+ ♜b6 8 ♗a4+ ♜b7 9 ♜d3
 White's task is to get through
 to d7. It seems that Black is
 powerless to impede this.

9 ... ♙f2! 10 ♜e2!! Destroying a
 crafty idea. On 10 ♙d5 Black had
 conceived 10 ... a6 11 ♜e4 ♙a7
 (a mutual zugzwang position)
 12 ♜f5 ♙b8!! 13 ♜e6 ♜a7! 14 ♙xc6
 – stalemate with a bricked-up
 bishop!

10 ... ♙g1 11 ♙d5 a6 12 ♜f3
 ♙d4! In the event of 12 ... ♙a7
 there is a win by 13 ♜e4, as it's
 Black to move. We'll come back
 again to this position.

13 ♜f4!! ♙a7 Otherwise he
 might fail.

14 ♜e4! It's Black's move, his
 plan doesn't work. Still, let's test
 it.

14 ... ♙b8 15 ♖c5+! ♜b6 On
 15 ... ♜a7 there's 16 ♙xc6 ♜b6
 17 ♜d5 – that's why the king is
 needed on e4.

16 ♖d7+ ♜b5 If we were in the
 old position, then simply 17 ♗e5.

17 a4+ ♜xa4 18 ♙xc6+ and
 19 ♖xb8.

Index of composers

- Adamson 235
Aleshin 236, 243
Amelung 249
Averbakh 212
Berger 213, 236, 242
Betins 244
Bianchetti 239
Bláthy 239
Carrera 244
Dawson 234
Duras 212
Fahrni 235
Federov 235
Feyter 246
Fritz 235
Gorgiev 240, 247
Gulyaev 248
Halberstadt 248
Havasi 238
Horwitz 239, 245, 248
Isenegger 238
Junkson 238
Karsted 245
Khazek 246
Khenkin 213
Kling 243, 245, 248
Klyatskin 161
Koenig 238
Kononov 244
Korsky 242
Kozlovsky 244
Kryuchkov 247
Kubbel 240, 241, 242, 246, 248
Levitt 211
Loyd 204, 232
Maizelis 211
Mandler 238
Matsukevich 127, 161
Matisons 241
Mendheim 245
Mesman 246
Murasov 236
V.Neistadt 237
Olmutsky 247
Petrov 240, 243
Pogosyants 234, 238
Réti 237
Rinck 126, 236, 237, 240, 241, 242,
243, 247, 249
Rudolf 126
Seleznev 245
Sevitov 236
Simkhovich 236
Smyslov 243
Somov-Nasimovich 236
Troitsky 241, 249
Wotawa 247
Zakhodyakin 128, 234, 249
Zakman 211

Index of players of games

Abt 156
Adams M. 123
Adams E. 192
Adamski 179
Akopian 198
Albin 220
Alburt 165
Alekhine 23, 32, 36, 54, 58, 95, 110, 111, 113, 119, 182, 187, 203, 207, 226
Amirkhanov 199
Anand 21, 141, 215
Anderssen 17, 181
Andersson 133
Antonsen 176
Aratovsky 200
Arlamowski 207
Aronson 168
Averbakh 27, 109
Balashov 148
Balogh 169
Barcza 38
Bauer 164
Beckman 175
Belyavksy 150
Benko 38, 215, 225
Benner 195
Berezin 180
Berger 215
Bernstein 184
Boden 14
Boensch 47
Bogolyubov 79
Boleslavsky 70
Borik 183
Borodin 163
Botvinnik 29, 58, 87, 88, 93, 99, 101, 115, 119, 156, 198
Brainin 194
Bronstein 38, 92, 93, 150, 162, 221
Butts 199
Canal 189
Capablanca 23, 37, 68, 75, 76, 95, 103, 115, 142, 143, 156, 228, 229
Caramé 206
Carls 174
Cehic 125
Chekhov 165
Cheremisin 180
Chigorin 43
Chikovani 223
Cohn 72
Colle 4, 42
Dagorov 175
Danailov 231
Deken 231
Delbaere 136
De Vries
Dieks 231
Dolgiy 191
Doroshkevich 125
Draisburg 195
Dreev 102
Drtina 197

- Dubinin 91
Edgar 190
Efremov 199
Eliskases 76
Elison 137
Englund 199
Epishin 197
Euwe 36, 41, 111, 186
Evenson 54
Fazekas 199
Feigin 32
Fleissig 190
Flohr 104
Fraser 198
Frohlich 215
Frois 37
Fuchs 39
Furman 52, 81, 134
Fuster 141, 169
Gaprindashvili 166, 189
Gausel 138
Gelfand 98
Geller 66, 130, 131, 132
Gibaud 206
Giterman 208
Gligoric 48
Gliksman 201
Golovko 162
Govashelishvili 168
Greco 9
Griffith 194
Grobler 179
Grosh 153
Grunfeld 42
Gulko 148
Guseinov 197
Halik 155
Hansen 174, 224
Hazai 40
Hechler 172
Heller 184
Hernandez 131, 146
Hoffman 137
Hort 157
Hug 27
Illis 201
Ilivitsky 89
Imanaliev 158
Inkol 156
Ionescu 125
Ioseliani 166
Ivanov 138
Ivkov 164
Izvozchikov 168
Jaffe 214
Jankowitz 215
Jansa 124
Jensen 172
Journoud 170
Kalnynysh 145
Karlsson 176
Karosz 214
Karpov 21, 47, 62, 86, 112, 133, 222, 230
Kasparov 47, 112, 231
Keres 41, 46, 49, 87, 116, 117, 207
Khalibeyli 152
Khalifman 114
Kieseritzky
Klaman 60
Klovan 81, 89
Kmooh 137
Knezevic 175
Kobaidze 145
Kolodzheychik 191
Konicek 154
Konstantinopolsky 71, 107
Kotkov 198

Index of players of games

Kottmauer 26
Kopylov 45
Korkenblad 215
Korolev 45
Korelov 145
Korotylev 102
Korsten 224
Kostin 200
Kotov 107, 119, 121, 193
Kramnik 25, 30
Kraus 200
Krejcik 184, 200
Krogius 200
Krutjansky 144
Kupchik 103
Kupreichik 109
Kurlyandchik 152
Kuzmin 61
Lanu 155
Larsen 48, 88
Larsson 199
Lasker 64, 68, 95, 186
Lazard 206
Leko 25, 30
Lenchiner 223
Levenfish 71, 91, 187, 215
Lilienthal 107
Lott 190
Lipnitsky 52
Loginov 152
Lundquist 216
Lutikov 144
Lysenko 201
Makarov 169
Makarchik 185
Makarychev 144
Malev 192
Manko 215
Marco 59
Maroczy 173
Marshall 42, 137
Matsukevich 82, 129, 163
Matto 206
Mechkarov 208
Mecking 130
Mikhalchishin 37
Miles 146, 230
Minogina 153
Mitchell 215
Morphy 14, 15, 16
Muller 59
Najdorf 117
Neisner 137
Nemet 175
Nezhmetdinov 81
Nielsen 172, 174
Nikolaevsky 223
Nimzowitsch 37, 105, 217, 226,
227, 228
Novak 183
Orlov 162
Oudheusden 216
Palau 183
Panov 188
Parma 43
Paulsen 16
Pedersen 176
Peresypkin 165
Petrosian T. 33, 58, 89, 157
Petrosian A. 40
Petrov 49, 170
Philidor 10
Phillips 216, 217
Pietzsch 39
Pillsbury 78
Pirc 84, 186
Pogacs 141
Poldauf 208

- Polugaevsky 40, 43, 53, 83, 89, 134
Popovic 201
Porat 162
Portisch 58
Pratt 215
Preiser 155
Pytlakowski 185
Rabinovich 215
Radulov 166
Ragozin 70
Ree 157
Regan 215
Reshevsky 101
Reti 110, 186, 200, 216
Ribli 147, 222
Riskoff 217
Robatsch 124
Rodzynski 182
Rogozin 137
Romanovsky 55, 94
Rovner 193
Rubenchik 202
Rubinstein 72, 79, 113, 205
Rudakovsky 90
Rukavina 61
Rusakov 175
Rusan 197
Salwe 75, 105
Samisch 227
Sapira 217
Saulson 217
Savon 165
Sawyer 215
Schlechter 190
Schulten 15
Schuster 174
Schuurmans 136
Serper 114
Servaty 189
Shekhodanov 169
Shirov 141
Shofman 157
Short 167
Showalter 51, 64, 78
Smorodsky 94
Smyslov 26, 39, 53, 90, 99, 116, 121, 132, 167
Sokolov 147
Sorokin 156
Spassky 33, 83, 86
Speelman 167
Spielmann 198
Spitzer 201
Steudtmann 208
Strautmanis 183
Stahlberg 46, 56
Stakhovich 172
Steel 195
Steiner 44, 156
Steinitz 17, 51
Suba 154
Sultan Khan 104
Suslov 202
Svobodova 155
Sylvan 176
Tabachnikov 144
Taimanov 29, 56, 81
Tal 29, 85, 128, 168, 225
Taranin 216
Tarrasch 95
Tartakower 42, 184, 216
Taubenhaus 198
Terpugov 92
Thomas 217
Tolush 167
Torre 123, 192
Treybal 229
Trifunovich 84

Index of players of games

Tsereteli 145
Tseshkovsky 157
Tukmakov 125
Uhlmann 29, 47
Unzicker 62
Ustinov 129
Vaganian 65, 85
Vajda 119
Van Wely 98
Vasyukov 39, 208, 223
Velimirovic 65, 66
Venert 208
Verlinsky 175
Vidmar 173
Vilner 55
Vogt 128
Volovich 152
Voronova 201
Vukceвич 188
Weigel 201
Westerinen 166
Wiesel 201
Winawer 220
Winter 142
Wood 107
Xuereb 158
Yates 42, 143
Yudovich 60
Yurkovich 136
Zaitsev A. 221
Zakharov 40, 82
Zhelyandinov 157
Zindel 136
Znosko Borovsky 43
Zubkov 216